

Comodo Client Security

Software Version 12.4

User Guide Guide Version 12.4.071020



Table of Contents

1. Introduction to Comodo Client Security	6
1.1.Special Features	10
1.2.System Requirements	12
1.3.Install Comodo Client Security	13
1.4.Start Comodo Client Security	23
1.5.The Main Interface	27
1.5.1.The Home Screen	
1.5.2.The Tasks Interface	35
1.5.3.The Widget	
1.5.4.The System Tray Icon	
1.6.Understand Security Alerts	40
1.7.Password Protection	62
2. General Tasks - Introduction	63
2.1.Scan and Clean Your Computer	64
2.1.1.Run a Quick Scan	66
2.1.2.Run a Full Computer Scan	68
2.1.3.Run a Rating Scan	72
2.1.4.Run a Custom Scan	76
2.1.4.1.Scan a Folder	
2.1.4.2.Scan a File	
2.1.4.3.Create, Schedule and Run a Custom Scan	
2.1.5. Automatically Scan Unrecognized and Quarantined Files	
2.2.Instantly Scan Files and Folders	
2.3.Process Infected Files	
2.4.Manage Virus Database Updates	
2.5.Manage Blocked Autoruns	
2.6.Manage Quarantined Items	
3. Firewall Tasks - Introduction	110
3.1.Configure internet access rights for applications	111
3.2.Stealth your Computer Ports	
3.3.Manage Network Connections	
3.4.Stop all Network Activities	
3.5.View Active Internet Connections	118
4. Containment Tasks - Introduction	121
4.1.Run an Application in the Container	
4.2.Reset the Container	
4.3.Identify and Kill Unsafe Running Processes	
4.4.Open Shared Space	130
4.5.The Virtual Desktop	131
4.5.1.Start the Virtual Desktop	133
4.5.2.The Main Interface	139

4.5.3.Run Browsers inside the Virtual Desktop	142
4.5.4.Open Files and Run Applications inside the Virtual Desktop	145
4.5.5.Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop	
4.5.6.Close the Virtual Desktop	152
4.6.Containment Statistics Analyzer	
5. DLP Tasks - Introduction	157
5.1.Run Data Loss Prevention Scans	157
5.2.Manage DLP Quarantined Files	
6.Advanced Tasks - Introduction	
6.1.Create a Rescue Disk	
6.1.1.Download and Burn Comodo Rescue Disk	
6.2.Remove Deeply Hidden Malware	171
6.3.Manage CCS Tasks	
6.4.View CCS Logs	176
6.4.1.Antivirus Logs	179
6.4.2.VirusScope Logs	
6.4.3.Firewall Logs	
6.4.4.HIPS Logs	
6.4.5.Containment Logs	
6.4.6.Website Filtering Logs	
6.4.7.Device Control Logs	
6.4.8.Autorun Event Logs	
6.4.9.Alert Logs	
6.4.10.CCS Tasks Logs	
6.4.11.File List Changes Logs	
6.4.12.Vendor List Changes Logs	
6.4.13.Configuration Change Logs	
6.4.14.Virtual Desktop Event Logs	
6.4.15.Data Loss Prevention Event Logs	
6.4.16.Search and Filter Logs	
6.5.Submit Files for Analysis to Comodo	
6.6.View Active Process List	
7. CCS Advanced Settings	
7.1.General Settings	
7.1.1.Customize User Interface	
7.1.2.Configure Virus Database Updates	
7.1.3.Log Settings	
7.1.4.Manage CCS Configurations.	
7.1.4.1.Comodo Preset Configurations	
7.1.4.2.Personal Configurations	
7.2.Antivirus Configuration	
7.2.1.Real-time Scanner Settings	
7.2.2.Scan Profiles	

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

7.3.Firewall Configuration	261
7.3.1.General Firewall Settings	
7.3.2.Application Rules	
7.3.3.Global Rules	
7.3.4.Firewall Rule Sets	
7.3.5.Network Zones	
7.3.5.1.Network Zones	
7.3.5.2.Blocked Zones	
7.3.6.Port Sets	
7.4.HIPS Configuration	
7.4.1.HIPS Settings	
7.4.2.Active HIPS Rules	
7.4.3.HIPS Rule Sets	
7.4.4.HIPS Groups	
7.4.4.1.Registry Groups	
7.4.4.2.COM Groups	
7.5.Protected Objects	
7.5.1.Protected Objects - HIPS	
7.5.1.1.Protected Files	
7.5.1.2.Blocked Files	
7.5.1.3.Protected Registry Keys	
7.5.1.4.Protected COM interfaces	
7.5.2.Protected Objects - Containment	356
7.5.2.1.Protected Files and Folders	
7.5.2.2.Protected Keys	
7.6.Data Loss Prevention	
7.6.1.DLP Monitoring Rules	
7.6.2.DLP Discovery Rules	
7.6.3.DLP Keyword Groups	
7.7.Containment Settings	
7.7.1.Containment Settings	
7.7.2.Auto-Containment Rules	
7.7.3.Virtual Desktop Settings	412
7.7.4.Containment - An Overview	
7.7.5.Unknown Files: The Scanning Processes	
7.8.File Rating Configuration	
7.8.1.File Rating Settings	
7.8.2.File Groups	
7.8.3.File List	
7.8.4.Submitted Files	
7.8.5.Vendor List	455
7.9.Advanced Protection	
7.9.1.VirusScope Settings	472

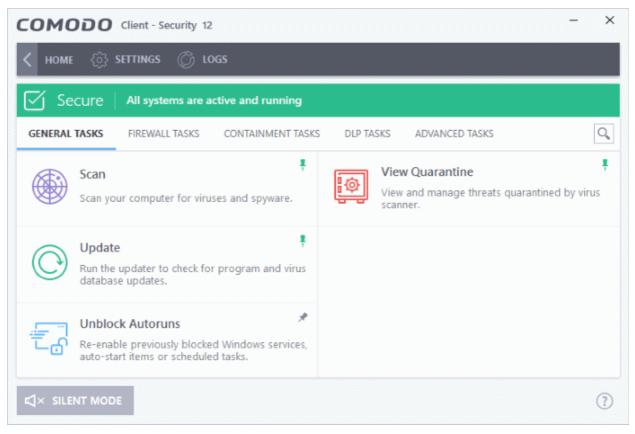
7.9.2.Scan Exclusions	475
7.9.3.Device Control Settings	491
7.9.4.Script Analysis Settings	
7.9.5.Miscellaneous Settings	505
7.10.Web Filter Settings	
7.10.1.Website Filtering Rules	511
7.10.2.Website Categories	519
Appendix 1 - CCS How to Tutorials	525
Enable / Disable AV, Firewall, Auto-Containment and VirusScope Easily	
Set up the Firewall For Maximum Security and Usability	528
Block Internet Access while Allowing Local Area Network (LAN) Access	535
Set up HIPS for Maximum Security and Usability	540
Create Rules to Auto-Contain Applications	542
Run an Instant Antivirus Scan on Selected Items	569
Create an Antivirus Scan Schedule	
Run Untrusted Programs inside the Container	578
Run Browsers Inside the Container	
Restore Incorrectly Quarantined Items	
Submit Quarantined Items to Comodo Valkyrie for Analysis	584
Enable File Sharing Applications like BitTorrent and Emule	
Block any Downloads of a Specific File Type	591
Disable Auto-Containment on a Per-application Basis	
Switch Off Automatic Antivirus Updates	598
Suppress CCS Alerts Temporarily	601
Control External Device Accessibility	602
Appendix 2 - Comodo Secure DNS Service	604
Router - Enable or Disable Comodo Secure DNS	605
Windows - Enable Comodo Secure DNS	606

1. Introduction to Comodo Client Security

Overview

Comodo Client Security (CCS) offers complete protection against internal and external threats by combining a powerful antivirus, an enterprise class packet filtering firewall and an advanced host intrusion prevention system (HIPS).

When used individually, each of these modules delivers superior protection against their specific threat challenge. When used together they provide a complete 'prevention, detection and cure' security system for your computer. Once installed on a Windows endpoint, CCS can be remotely configured and monitored from the Endpoint Manager console.



The software is designed to be secure 'out of the box' - so even the most inexperienced users need not have to deal with complex configuration issues after installation.

Comodo Client Security - Key Features:

- Antivirus Proactive antivirus engine that automatically detects and eliminates viruses, worms and other malware. Apart from the always-on virus monitor and scheduled scans, you can instantly check any file by right-clicking on it. The antivirus also scans any removable storage plugged-in to your computer.
- Firewall Highly configurable packet filtering firewall that constantly defends your system from inbound and outbound Internet attacks.
- Host Intrusion Protection (HIPS) A rules-based intrusion prevention system that monitors the activities of all applications and processes on your computer. HIPS blocks the activities of malicious programs by halting any action that could cause damage to your operating system, system-memory, registry keys or personal data.
- **Containment** Authenticates every executable and process running on your computer and prevents them from taking potentially damaging actions. Unrecognized processes and applications will be automatically

run inside a security hardened environment known as a container. Once inside, they will be strictly monitored, will not be able to access other processes and will write to a virtual file system and registry. This gives untrusted (but harmless) applications the freedom to operate while untrusted (and potentially malicious) applications are prevented from damaging your PC or data.

- Virtual Desktop A sandbox environment in which you can run programs and browse the internet without fear those activities will damage the host computer. Applications in the virtual desktop are isolated from the host operating system, write to a virtual file system, and cannot access user data.
- Data Loss Prevention (DLP) A scanner which lets you identify documents on your computer which contain sensitive data, including credit card numbers and social security numbers. You can move detected documents to another location, quarantine them, ban them from being copied to USB devices, and more.
- Advanced Protection A collection of prevention based security technologies designed to preserve the integrity, security and privacy of your operating system and user data.
 - Viruscope Monitors the activities of processes running on your computer and alerts you if they take actions that could potentially threaten your privacy and/or security. Using a system of behavior 'recognizers', Viruscope not only detects unauthorized actions but also allows you to completely undo them. Apart from representing another hi-tech layer of protection against malware, this also provides you with the granular power to reverse unwanted actions taken by legitimate software without blocking the software entirely.
- **Rescue Disk** Built-in wizard that allows you to burn a boot-disk which will run antivirus scans in a pre-Windows / pre-boot environment.
- Additional Utilities The advanced tasks section contains links that allow you to install other, free, Comodo security products - Comodo Cleaning Essentials and KillSwitch.

Guide Structure

This introduction is intended to provide an overview of the basics of Comodo Client Security and should be of interest to all users.

- Introduction
 - Special Features
 - System Requirements
 - Installation
- Start Comodo Client Security
- The Main Interface
- Understand Security Alerts

The remaining sections of the guide cover every aspect of the configuration of Comodo Client Security.

- General Tasks Introduction
 - Scan and Clean your Computer
 - Run a Quick Scan
 - Run a Full Computer Scan
 - Run a Rating Scan
 - Run a Custom Scan
 - Automatically Scan Unrecognized Files
 - Instantly Scan Files and Folders
 - Processing Infected Files
 - Manage Virus Database Updates
 - Manage Blocked Autoruns
 - Manage Quarantined Items
 - Run Data Loss Prevention Scans
- Firewall Tasks Introduction



- Configure internet access rights for applications
- Stealth your Computer Ports
- Manage Network Connections
- Stop all Network Activities
- View Active Internet Connections
- Containment Tasks Introduction
 - Run an Application in the Container
 - Reset the Container
 - Identify and Kill Unsafe Running Processes
 - Open Shared Space
 - The Virtual Desktop
 - Containment Statistics Analyzer
- Advanced Tasks An Introduction
 - Create a Rescue Disk
 - Remove Deeply Hidden Malware
 - Manage CCS Tasks
 - View CCS Logs
 - Submit Files for Analysis to Comodo
 - View Active Process List
- CCS Advanced Settings
 - General Settings
 - Customize User Interface
 - Configure Virus Database Updates
 - Log Settings

•

- Manage CCS Configurations
- Antivirus Configuration
 - Real-time Scanner Settings
 - Scan Profiles
- **Firewall Configuration**
 - General Firewall Settings
 - Application Rules
 - Global Rules
 - Firewall Rule Sets
 - Network Zones
 - Port Sets
- HIPS Configuration
 - HIPS Settings
 - Active HIPS Rules
 - HIPS Rule Sets
 - Protected Objects HIPS
 - HIPS Groups
- **Data Loss Prevention**
 - DLP Monitoring Rules
 - DLP Discovery Rules



- DLP Keyword Groups
- Containment Configuration
 - Containment Settings
 - Auto-Containment Rules
 - Protected Objects Containment
 - Virtual Desktop Settings
 - Containment An Overview
 - Unknown Files: The Scanning Processes
 - File Rating Configuration
 - File Rating Settings
 - File Groups
 - File List
 - Submitted Files
 - Vendor List
- Advanced Protection Configuration
 - VirusScope Settings
 - Scan Exclusions
 - Device Control Settings
 - Script Analysis Settings
 - Miscellaneous Settings
- Web Filter Settings
 - Web Filter Rules
 - Website Categories
- Appendix 1 CCS How to... Tutorials
 - Enable / Disable AV, Firewall, Auto-Containment and Viruscope Easily
 - Set up the Firewall For Maximum Security and Usability
 - Block Internet Access while Allowing Local Area Network (LAN) Access
 - Set up the HIPS for Maximum Security and Usability
 - Create Rules for Auto-Containing Applications
 - Run an Instant Antivirus Scan on Selected Items
 - Create an Antivirus Scanning Schedule
 - Run Untrusted Programs inside the Container
 - Run Browsers Inside the Container
 - Restore Incorrectly Quarantined Item(s)
 - Submit Quarantined Items to Comodo for Analysis
 - Enable File Sharing Applications like BitTorrent and Emule
 - Block any Downloads of a Specific File Type
 - Disable Auto-Containment on a Per-application Basis
 - Switch Off Automatic Antivirus and Software Updates
 - Suppress CCS Alerts Temporarily
 - Control External Device Accessibility
- Appendix 2 Comodo Secure DNS Service

1.1. Special Features

Auto-Containment

- Automatically runs unknown files inside a secure container which is isolated from the rest of your computer
- Contained programs cannot cause damage because they are denied access to the operating system, to the registry, and to user data
- This nullifies malware and ransomware by totally removing their ability to interact with the host computer
- Simultaneously, the file is analyzed by our cloud systems to establish the trust rating of the file

Viruscope

- Monitors the activities of processes running on your computer and alerts you if their actions could
 potentially threaten your privacy and/or security
- Ability to reverse potentially undesirable actions of software without necessarily blocking the software entirely

Host Intrusion Prevention System

- Bulletproof protection against root-kits, inter-process memory injections, key-loggers and more;
- Monitors the activities of all applications and processes on your computer and allows executables and processes to run if they comply with the prevailing security rules
- Blocks the activities of malicious programs by halting any action that could cause damage to your operating system, system-memory, registry keys or personal data.
- Enables advanced users to enhance their security measures by quickly creating custom policies and rulesets using the powerful rules interface.

Comprehensive Antivirus Protection

- Detects and eliminates viruses from desktops, laptops and workstations;
- Cloud based scans mean you still get 100% protection even if your database is outdated.
- Heuristic techniques identify previously unknown viruses and Trojans;
- Scans registry and system files for possible spyware infection and cleans them;
- Highly configurable on-demand scanner lets you run custom scans on any file, folder or drive;
- Daily, automatic updates of virus definitions;
- Automatically scans external devices when they are plugged in;
- Isolates suspicious files in quarantine preventing further infection;
- Built in scheduler allows you to run scans at a time that suits you;
- Simple to use install it and forget it Comodo AV protects you in the background.

Intuitive Graphical User Interface

- Summary screen gives an at-a-glance snapshot of your security settings;
- Easy and quick navigation between each modules;
- Simple point and click configuration no steep learning curves;
- New completely redesigned security rules interface you can quickly set granular access rights and privileges on a global or per application. The firewall also contains preset policies and wizards that help simplify the rule setting process.

Comodo Client Security - Extended Features

Highly Configurable Security Rules Interface

Comodo Client Security offers more control over security settings than ever before. Users can quickly set granular Internet access rights and privileges on a global or per application basis using the flexible and easy to understand GUI. This version also sees the introduction of preset security policies which allow you to deploy a sophisticated hierarchy of firewall rules with a couple of mouse clicks.



Application Behavior Analysis

Comodo Client Security features an advanced protocol driver level protection - essential for the defense of your PC against Trojans that run their own protocol drivers.

Cloud Based Behavior Analysis

Comodo Client Security features cloud based analysis of unrecognized files, in which any file that is not recognized and not in Comodo's white-list will be sent to Comodo Instant Malware Analysis (CIMA) server for behavior analysis. Each file is executed in a virtual environment on Comodo servers and tested to determine whether it behaves in a malicious manner. If yes, the file is then manually analyzed by Comodo technicians to confirm whether it is a malicious file or not. The results will be sent back to your computer in around 15 minutes.

Event logging

Comodo Client Security features a vastly improved log management module - allowing users to export records of Antivirus, Firewall and Advanced Protection activities according to several user-defined filters. Beginners and advanced users alike are greatly benefited from this essential troubleshooting feature.

Memory Firewall Integration

Comodo Client Security now includes the buffer-overflow protection original featured in Comodo Memory Firewall. This provides protection against drive-by-downloads, data theft, computer crashes and system damage.

'Training Mode' and 'Clean PC' Mode

These modes enable the firewall and host intrusion prevention systems to automatically create 'allow' rules for new components of applications you have decided to trust, so you won't receive pointless alerts for those programs you trust. The firewall learns how they work and only warn you when it detects truly suspicious behavior.

Application Recognition Database (Extensive and proprietary application safe list)

The Firewall includes an extensive white-list of safe executables called the 'Comodo Safe-List Database'. This database checks the integrity of every executable and the Firewall alerts you of potentially damaging applications before they are installed. This level of protection is new because traditionally firewalls only detect harmful applications from a blacklist of known malware - often-missing new forms of malware as might be launched in day zero attacks.

The Firewall is continually updated and currently over 1,000,000 applications are in Safe list, representing virtually one of the largest safe lists within the security industry.

Self Protection against Critical Process Termination

Viruses and Trojans often try to disable your computer's security applications so that they can operate without detection. CCS protects its own registry entries, system files and processes so malware can never shut it down or sabotage the installation.

Containment as a security feature

Comodo Client Security's 'Containment' is an isolated operating environment for unknown and untrusted applications. Because they are virtualized, applications running in the container cannot make permanent changes to other processes, programs or data on your 'real' system. Comodo have also integrated auto-containment directly into the security architecture of CCS to complement and strengthen the Firewall, Advanced Protection, Containment and Antivirus modules.

Submit Suspicious Files to Comodo

Are you the first victim of a brand new type of spyware? Users can help combat zero-hour threats by using the built in submit feature to send files to Comodo for analysis. Comodo then analyzes the files for any potential threats and update our database for all users.

Device Control

CCS allows you full control over which type of external devices, such as USB pen drives and hard drives, can be connected to endpoints. Allow selected device class or block them all.

Windows boot protection



CCS can identify untrusted DLLs, apps, portable executables (PE) and autoruns that launched before CCS started. These may expose the endpoint to danger if the items are malicious. These items can blocked at the next restart of the endpoint.

1.2. System Requirements

To ensure optimal performance of Comodo Client Security, please ensure that your PC complies with the minimum system requirements as stated below:

Windows Endpoints

Windows 10 (32-bit and 64-bit versions)	512 MB available RAM
Windows 8 / 8.1 (32-bit and 64-bit versions) Windows IoT	1 GB hard disk space for both 32-bit and 64-bit versions
	CPU with SSE2 support
	Internet Explorer version 11 or above

Windows XP / Vista

- CCS does not support Windows XP or Vista, period.
- The auto-containment and virtual desktop features simply do not work on XP / Vista, so you cannot take advantage of one of our core protection features.
- Comodo strongly recommends anybody still using XP or Vista to upgrade immediately. Microsoft ceased support for XP/Vista years ago and the number of serious vulnerabilities in these operating systems is almost innumerable. By using them you are exposing yourself to substantial risks which signature-based antivirus cannot protect you against.

Windows 7

- Microsoft ended general support for Windows 7 in January 2020. Devices running Windows 7 will only
 receive security updates if the user has purchased a 3 year extended security updates (ESU) package
 from Microsoft.
- Because of this, Windows 7 is no longer an officially supported operating system. Unpatched
 vulnerabilities introduced by the underlying OS can compromise the protection provided by CCS. For
 example, a weakness in a Microsoft API that CCS relies on can undermine the protection of CCS.
- Key points:
 - All CCS critical security features will continue to work on Windows 7, including auto-containment, antivirus, and firewall. Similarly, you can also manage Windows 7 devices from Endpoint Manager and deploy security profiles to Windows 7 devices.
 - We will also continue to fix critical and blocker issues for CCS on Windows 7.
 - However, future CCS releases may contain features that are not included/do not work on Windows 7.
- We understand that many customers have clients who still use Windows 7, and hope that this information helps you make an informed decision about transitioning those machines to Windows 10 / 8.1 / 8.

Windows Servers

- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2016
- Windows Server 2019

All operating systems



You also need to open some ports on your firewall to allow various services to function correctly:

- USA customers Click here for port information
- EU customers Click here for port information

1.3. Install Comodo Client Security

You can use the Endpoint Manager (EM) interface to deploy Comodo Client Security (CCS) to your endpoints. You can purchase EM as stand-alone application or as a part of the ITarian platform.

Please see the following links if you do not already have an EM license:

- ITarian Sign up for ITarian at https://www.itarian.com/signup/
 - After signup, login and click 'Applications > 'Endpoint Manager'
- Stand-alone Endpoint Manager
 - Visit https://secure.comodo.com/home/purchase.php?pid=98&license=try for the trial version, or https://secure.comodo.com/home/purchase.php?pid=98 for the full version.
 - You can access your EM instance at the URL provided during setup.

The following tutorial covers user and device enrollment before moving onto CCS installation:

- Step 1 Enroll Users
- Step 2 Enroll Devices

Step 1 - Enroll Users

You must enroll users before you can deploy CCS to your endpoints.

- ITarian MSP customers You can create multiple companies and enroll users to any of them.
- ITarian Enterprise, and stand-alone Endpoint Manager customers All users are enrolled to the default company.

Add a user

- Click 'Users' > 'User List' > click the 'Create User' button or
- Click the 'Add' button on the menu bar and choose 'Create User'.

Endpoint Manager	≡ User List	® _ A
DASHBOARD		Create User
DEVICES	्र 🖳 🖾	Enroll Device
(A USERS	Enroll Device Creat/Hyser Manage	
User List	NAME	
User Groups		
Role Management	johnsmith	

The 'Create new user' form will open.



Create New User	×
User Name*	
John	
Email*	
fiatliena@gmail.com	
Phone Number	
Phone Number	
Company*	
Star Inc.	•
Assign Role	
Users	٠
Submit	

- Type a login username (mandatory), email address (mandatory) and phone number for the user
- Company Choose the organization to which you want to enroll the user.
- Role

A 'role' determines user permissions within the Endpoint Manager console itself. Endpoint Manager ships with two default roles:

- Administrator Full privileges in the Endpoint Manager console. The permissions for this role are not editable.
- User In most cases, a user is simply an owner of a managed device. They should not require
 access to the Endpoint Manager console. Under default settings, users cannot login to Endpoint
 Manager.
- Click 'Submit' to add the user to Endpoint Manager.

A confirmation message is shown:

Create New User	×
You have created «John» user.	
Email: fiatliena@gmail.com	
Company: Star Inc.	
Role: Users	
Within a few minutes the user will get an email with instructions to proceed if his role supports it.	
Ok	

- Repeat the process to add more users.
- New users are added to the 'Users' interface (click 'Users' > 'User List')



Tip: You can also bulk import users from a .csv file. See https://community.itarian.com/help/topic-459-1-1005-14884-Import-Users-from-a-CSV-File.html for more details.

Step 2 - Enroll Devices

The next step is to add user devices so you can manage them with Endpoint Manager.

- Click 'Users' then 'User List'
- Select the users whose devices you want to add then click 'Enroll Device':

Or

Click the 'Add' button 🕒 on the menu bar and choose 'Enroll Device'.

Enroll Device Create User	Manage Profiles	Send Pa Recover
NAME		EMAIL
John		fiatliena@o
📋 🕚 queen@yopmail.	com	queen@wo



This starts step 1 of the device enrollment wizard:

Step 1 - Device Options

- **Current device** Enrolls the device you are currently using. You may disregard this option at this stage as we are adding multiple devices with the 'Other device' option.
- **Other device** Add devices owned by the users you selected previously. Those users should already be listed in the 'Specify User' box:



Enrollment Wizard	Supported Device Platforms Supported Device Platforms
 Device options Enrollment Options installation Summary Installation Instructions 	
	NCAL

- You can add additional, existing users by simply typing their email address in the box. Endpoint Manager will auto-suggest users that have already been created.
- **Create New User** Click if you want to add a new user to Endpoint Manager. You cannot add devices unless you have first added the users that own them.
- Click 'Next' to proceed to step 2.

Step 2 - Enrollment Options

Enrollment Type

Applies to Windows, Mac and Linux devices.

- Enroll and Protect Installs both the communication client and the security client.
- Just Enroll Installs only the communication client

Background. There are two types of client:

- **Communication Client** Connects the device to Endpoint Manager for central management. It is mandatory to install this client.
- Security Client This is the security software. Depending on the operating system, it includes antivirus, firewall, threat-containment, web-filtering, and more. It is optional to install this client.



Enrollment Wizard			0	Supported Device Platfor	ms Close
 Enrollment Wizard Device options Enrollment Options Installation Summary Installation Instructions 	Windows Windows Android Select Enrollm	ect require device reboot a	he Device MacOS	iOS	ms Close
	Windows x64				
	Use default Co	ommunication Client	version (Latest - 6.	.30)	
	Use default Co	omodo Client - Secur	ity version (Latest -	11.5.0.7737)	
	Additional options				

TLDR

- Click 'Not Specified' if you only want to install the communication client on target devices. The wizard will detect the target operating system and send the appropriate client to the device user.
- Click one of the operating system tiles if you also want to install the security client. Make sure the target devices use the operating system you selected.

Option 1 - Enroll + Protect - Single Operating System

- Choose this if you want to deploy both communication and security clients
 - Click the Windows OS box. Please make sure all your target devices use this operating system.
 - The wizard will send enrollment mails which only contain download links for the Windows clients.
 - You can customize enrollment options as required. You can configure items such as enrollment type, reboot policy, client version, configuration profile and device name.
 - Note Please uninstall any other antivirus products from target endpoints before proceeding. Failure to do so could cause conflicts that mean CCS does not function correctly.

Option 2 - Just Enroll - Multiple Operating Systems

- Choose this if you only want to deploy the communication client. If required, you can install the security client later after enrolling the endpoint.
 - Click 'Devices' > 'Device List'
 - Select the target devices
 - Click the 'Install or Update Package' button > Choose 'Install Comodo Client Security'.

Click 'Next' to skip to step 3 if you are happy with your choices thus far

OR



See the tables below for more information about the options on this page

Setting	Description
Choose platform	Select Window OS version. 64 bit, 32 bit, or hybrid.
	The hybrid package will auto-detect and install the correct version.
Use default Communication Client	This client enrolls the endpoint for central management.
version	• You can only change the CCC version if enabled in portal settings . If the option is not enabled then the 'Default version' is deployed.
Use default Communication Client Security version	This client installs security software such as antivirus, firewall and auto- containment.
	• You can only change the CCS version if enabled in portal settings . If the option is not enabled then the 'Default version' is deployed.
Additional options	AV Database - Choose whether to include the latest virus database with the installation package. This increases the size of the package.
	If disabled, the client will download the latest database anyway when you run the first virus scan.
Configuration Profile	A configuration profile is a collection of settings which specify a device's network access rights, security settings, antivirus scan schedule, and more.
	The default is 'Windows - Security Level 1' profile. Choose a different profile if required.
	 The default profile is recommended for most users and can always be changed later if required. If you want to change it, type the first few characters of a profile name and choose from the suggestions that appear.
	 You can view the settings in a profile at 'Configuration Templates' > 'Profiles'.
Set Reboot Options	Endpoints need to be restarted to complete CCS installation. You have the following restart options:
	• Force the reboot in Restart the endpoint a certain length of time after installation. Select the delay period from the drop-down. A warning message is shown to the user prior to the restart.
	• Suppress reboot - Endpoint is not auto-restarted. The installation is finalized when the user next restarts the endpoint.
	• Warn about reboot and let users postpone it - Shows a message to the user which tells them that the endpoint needs to be restarted. The user can choose when the restart happens.
	Optional. Type a custom message in the 'Reboot Message' field.
Device Name Options	Do Not Change - The device's existing name is used to identify the device in Endpoint Manager.
	Change - Enter a new device name. Note - You can restore the original name from the device list screen if required.

Click 'Next' to proceed to step 3



Step 3 - Installation Summary

Review your choices so far.

Enrollment Wizard		Supported Device Platforms Supported Device Platforms
Oevice options	Device Information	Change Configuration
C Enrollment Options	Enrollment type Enroll and protect	
3 Installation Summary	Operating system Windows	
Installation Instructions	Choose platform Windows x86	
	Use default Communication Client version (Latest - 6.30) Enabled	
	Use default Comodo Client - Security version (11.5.0.773 Enabled	7)
	Include initial Antivirus signature database (will apply on false	ly if a profile contains Antivirus section)
	Configuration Profile * Not set	
	Device Name Do Not Change	
	Reboot options Force the reboot in 5 minutes.	
	Reboot message * Your device will reboot in 5 minutes because it's required	by your administrator
	Back Next	

- Click 'Back' or 'Change Configuration' (top-right) to revise your choices.
- Click 'Next' to proceed to step 4

Step 4 - Installation Instructions

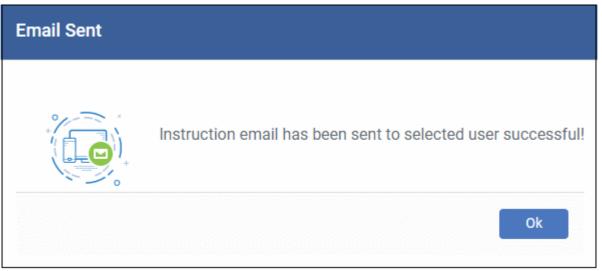
•

The final step is to send out the enrollment emails to the device owners:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

Enrollment Wizard	Supported Device Platforms Close
 Device options Enroliment Options Installation Summary Installation Instructions 	Encliment Link Send To Email What's next? Control Another Device
	Back Finish

• Send To Email - Click this to send enrollment mails to users with the settings you choose in steps 1 - 3.



- Enroll Another Device Takes you back to step 1
- Go to Bulk Installation Package Takes you to bulk installation package screen to configure and enroll users in bulk. See 'Bulk Enrollment of Devices'
- Click 'Finish' to close the window.

An example mail is shown below:



Endpoint Manager

Welcome to Endpoint Manager!

You are receiving this mail because your administrator wishes to enroll your smartphone, tablet, macOS, Linux or Windows device into the Endpoint Manager system. Doing so will make it easier and more secure to connect your personal devices to company networks. This mail explains how you can complete the enrollment process in a few short steps.

Note:

EM

 Make sure that you selected the operating system of the device that you want to enroll.
 This product allows the system administrator to collect device and application data, add/remove accounts and restrictions, list, install and manage apps, and remotely erase data on your device.

Device Enrollment:

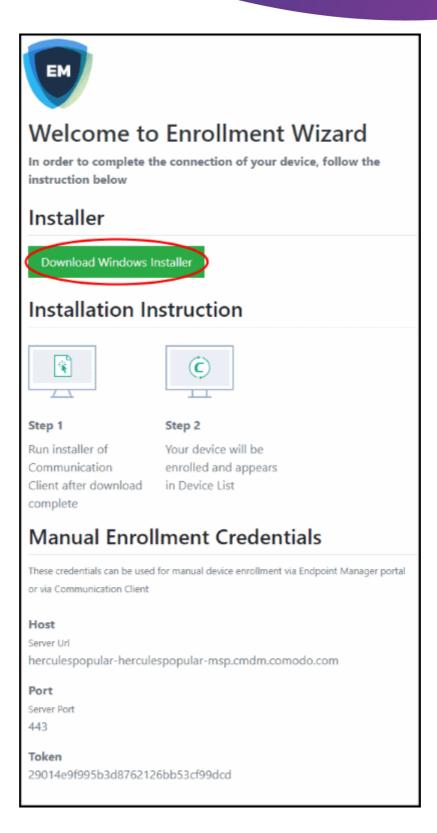
Click this link to enroll your device

Sincerely, Endpoint Manager team.

The user experience is as follows:

- User opens the email on the Windows endpoint you want to enroll.
- · Click the enrollment link in the email to open the device enrollment page
- Click the 'Download Windows Installer' button:





- The EM client setup file gets downloaded.
- Run the setup file to install the client on the endpoint.
- The device is automatically added to Endpoint Manager once installation is complete. The EM communication client icon rappears at the bottom-right of the endpoint screen.
- If the client is not automatically enrolled after installation, you can manually enroll the device at a later time. This might happen if, for example, there are connectivity issues.
- You will need to enter the host, port and token ID to manually enroll. You can find these items at the end of the device enrollment page.



• Protection is effective immediately after the computer restarts.

An Endpoint Manager (EM) security profile is applied to the device.

- If the user is already associated with a configuration profile in EM, then those profiles will be applied to the device. See Assign Configuration Profile(s) to User Devices and Assign Configuration Profiles to a User Group for more details.
- If no profiles are defined for the user then the default Windows profile(s) will be applied to the device. See Manage Default Profiles for more details.

The device can now be remotely managed from the EM console.

1.4. Start Comodo Client Security

After installation, Comodo Client Security automatically starts whenever you start Windows.

CCS has two modes:

- Normal Mode Allows you to access the entire CCS interface.
- Virtual Desktop Only Mode You can only open the Virtual Desktop and Virtual Desktop settings.

The mode available to you depends on the Endpoint Manager (EM) profile active on the device.

Normal Mode

There are 5 different ways to open CCS if it is in normal mode:

- Windows Start Menu
- Windows Desktop
- Widget
- System Tray Icon
- Windows Defender

Start Menu

Click Start and select All Apps > Comodo > Comodo Client Security

(Please note the start menu varies slightly for different Windows versions.)





Windows Desktop

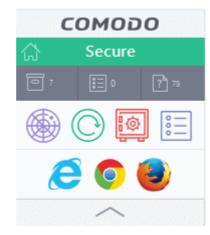
 Double-click the desktop shortcut to start Comodo Client Security. The shortcut is only visible if 'Show Desktop Shortcut' is enabled in the Endpoint Manager profile active on the endpoint.



Widget

• Click the information bar in the widget to start CCS. The shortcut is only visible if 'Show Widget' is enabled in the Endpoint Manager profile active on the endpoint.





The widget also contains other useful data and features. See 'The Widget' for more details.

CCS Tray Icon

• Double-click the shield icon to start the main interface.



You can also right-click on the tray icon and select 'Open...'.

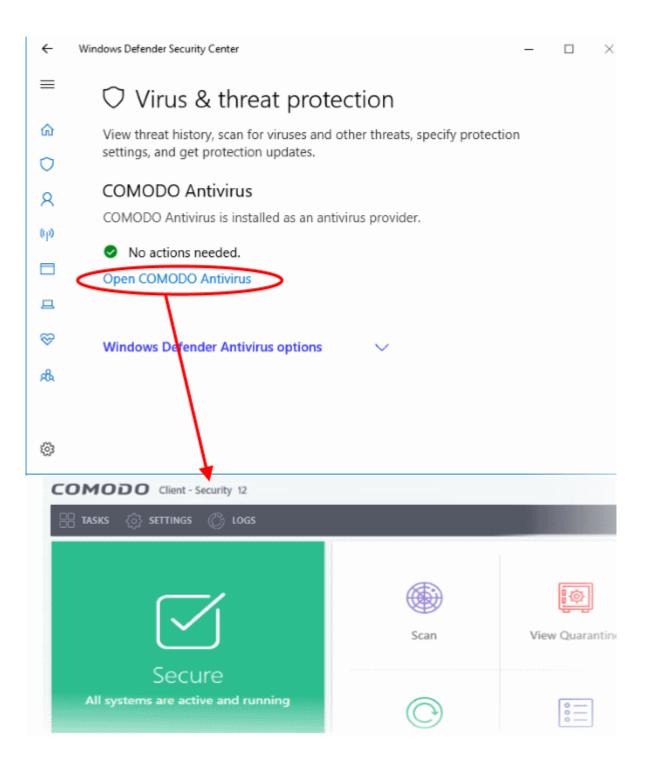
Windows Defender

- Double-click on the Windows Defender icon to open the application
 OR
- Right-click on the tray icon and select 'Open...'.



- Click the 'Virus & threat protection' tile
- Click 'Open COMODO Antivirus' to open the Comodo Client Security interface:





Virtual Desktop Only mode

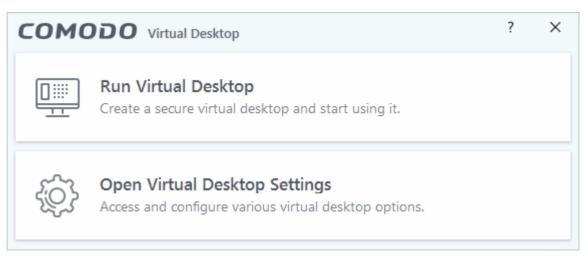
- This mode means you can only open the Virtual Desktop and access Virtual Desktop settings. You cannot
 access any other areas of the CCS interface.
 - Endpoint Manager admins You can enable or disable this setting in the 'UI Settings' section of a profile.
 - See https://community.itarian.com/help/topic-459-1-1005-14932-Communication-Client-and-Comodo-Client---Security-Application-UI-Settings.html if you want to read more on this.

In 'Virtual Desktop Only' mode:

• The system tray icon and the desktop widget are hidden



The CCS desktop shortcut and Windows start menu entry lead to the following menu:



- Run Virtual Desktop Opens the virtual desktop. See The Virtual Desktop for more help on this.
- **Open Virtual Desktop Settings** Opens the virtual desktop settings area in CCS. See **Virtual Desktop Settings** for help with these settings.

End-users cannot access any other area of CCS.

What is an Endpoint Manager profile?

- Endpoint Manager (EM) is a product which allows admins to manage Comodo Client Security on network endpoints.
- An EM profile is a template which contains all the security settings and privileges that the admin wants to implement on the endpoint.
- Admins can allow local changes to CCS by activating 'Enable local user to override profile configuration'. See https://community.itarian.com/help/topic-459-1-1005-14934-Client-Access-Control.html for help with this.

1.5. The Main Interface

The CCS interface is designed to be as clean and informative as possible while letting you carry out tasks with the minimum of fuss. Each tile on the home screen contains important security and update information and lets you quickly delve further into areas of interest.

- Click the 'Home/Tasks' button at the upper-left to switch between the 'home screen' and the 'tasks' interface.
- Switch on 'Silent Mode' to make sure nothing interrupts you while you are on an important task.
- The tiles on the right give you one-click access to important features, including the antivirus scanner, updates, task manager and more.



Toggle between 'Home' and 'Tasks' screens Open the 'Advanced Set and 'Logs' interfaces	tings'	
COMODO Client - Security 12		- ×
음 tasks <ỗ settings (⑦ logs		
	Scan	لی View Quarantine
Secure All systems are active and running	Update	Open Task Manager
MANAGE PROTECTION		
		0
Switch to Shortcut to manage Security st silent mode protection settings informati		Get help and support information

Click the following links for more information:

- The Home Screen
- The Tasks Interface
- The Widget
- The System Tray Icon

1.5.1. The Home Screen

You can switch between the home and tasks screens by clicking the 'Home/Tasks' button at the top-left of the interface:



- The home screen has an easy to use interface that lets you quickly run common tasks and manage program settings.
- The large 'security information' tile on the left shows your overall security level and lets you quickly deal with



any threats.

• The 'Manage Protection' button lets you turn security components on or off and open advanced settings.

Toggle between 'Home' and 'Tasks' screens Open the 'Advanced Sett and 'Logs' interfaces	tings'	
COMODO Client - Security 12		- ×
品 tasks 《ŷ settings 《 logs		
	Scan	View Quarantine
Secure All systems are active and running	Update) Open Task Manager
		 (7)
Switch to Shortcut to manage Security st silent mode protection settings		Get help and support information

The security information tile on the left will inform you if any component is disabled or if other problems are found:





You can easily rectify the issue by clicking the 'FIX IT' button. 'Silent Mode' and 'Help Window' are common to both home and tasks screen.

From the home screen you can:

- Add shortcuts tasks
- Manage protection settings
- Set CCS to silent mode
- View the help options

Add tasks to the home screen

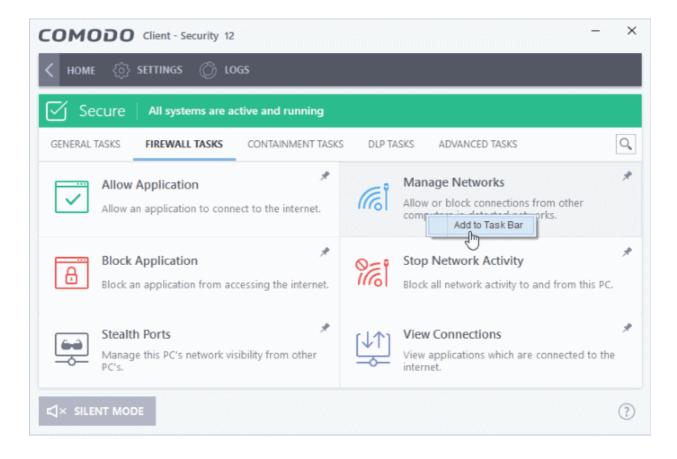
The tasks pane on the right contains a set of shortcuts which will launch common tasks with a single click. The handles at the right and left allow you to scroll through the tasks pane.

	0	Scan	View Quarantine	
ining	0	©	0 0	
		Update	Open Task Manager	
				?

You can add tasks to this pane as follows:

- Open the 'Tasks' interface (click the button at top left to switch between the tasks and home screens).
- Click any of the 'General', 'Firewall', 'Containment' or 'Advanced' tabs
- Right-click on the task you wish to add then click 'Add to Task Bar':

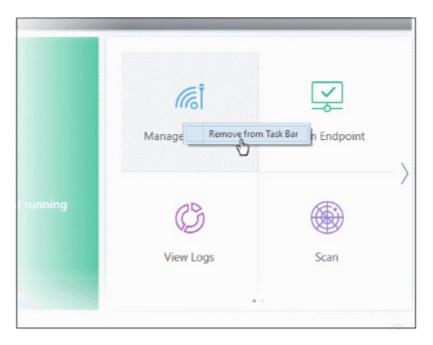
Comodo Client Security - User Guide



- Alternatively, you can add task shortcuts to the home screen by clicking the 'pin' button at the top-right of any tile.
- The selected task will be added to the tasks pane.

	ری Manage Networks	Clean Endpoint	_
9	(C)		\rightarrow
	View Logs	Scan	

• To remove a task shortcut from the pane, right click on it and choose 'Remove from Task Bar'.



Manage Protection Settings

- Click the 'Manage Protection' button on the home screen to enable or disable various security components.
- Click on any component name to open its dedicated settings screen.

COMODO Client - Security 12		– ×
음 tasks (ô) settings (⑦ logs		
MANAGE PROTECTION X		
🐼 Antivirus		10
Firewall		
Auto-Containment	Scan	View Quarantine
HIPS		>
-@- VirusScope	Ô	© —
√ Website Filtering	Update	Open Task Manager
DLP Monitoring		
⊄X SILENT MODE		?
MANAGE PROTECTION	Update •	Open Task Manager
⊄]× SILENT MODE		?

See the following sections for more details about each of the protection settings:

- Antivirus Configuration
- Firewall Configuration
- Auto-Containment
- HIPS Configuration
- VirusScope Configuration
- Website Filtering
- DLP Monitoring

Silent mode

Silent mode lets you use your computer without interruptions from CCS. Operations that could interfere with your work are either suppressed or postponed.

In silent mode:

- All protection components remain 100% active
- HIPS/Firewall alerts are suppressed.
- AV updates and scheduled scans are postponed

Switch to Silent mode

• Click the 'Silent Mode' button at the bottom-left of the home screen

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

	NG /		
	View Logs	Scan	
MANAGE PROTECTION		•	
			?
COMODO Client - Security 12		-	×
TASKS 《ŷ SETTINGS 《》 LOGS			
۲Ţ	ر المعالم Manage Networks	Clean Endpoint	
Silent Mode All systems are in silent mode	View Logs	Scan	>
MANAGE PROTECTION		•	
			?

Deactivate 'Silent Mode' to resume alerts and notifications.

Help Options

•

The 'Help' button lets you view our online help guide, run a diagnostics test on your installation, and view the product version.



- Online Help Opens Comodo Client Security's online help guide.
- Diagnostics Helps to identify any problems with your installation.
- About Contains version details and legal information:



обомоз	About		?	
	COMODO Client - Security 12			
	Product Version:	12.2.0.8107		
	Database Version:	32335 Import Virus Database		
	File Rating Database Version:	1571313602		
	Valkyrie:	Activated Show		
Patents Pending.		VirusScope Details		
Copyright © 2005-	2020 COMODO.			
All third party traden suggest sponsorship	narks and logos are property of their re or endorsement by the trademark owr	spective owners. Any use is for identification only an ner.	d does not	
			ОК	

- **Product Version** The CCS version number.
- **Database Version** The version of the virus database you currently have installed. Click 'Import Virus Database' to replace the current version with a locally stored database.
- File Rating Database Version The version of the file rating database used by Endpoint Manager. Click 'Security Sub-Systems' > 'Application Control' in Endpoint Manager to view the file rating interface.
- Valkyrie Indicates whether or not Valkyrie is enabled. Click 'Show' to view your Valkyrie account activation number.
- Websites Database The version number of website filtering database. The database contains list of
 websites categorized such as malicious, phishing, suspicious and so on and used by CCS to apply
 web filter rules. Click 'Settings' > 'Website Filtering' to configure web filter rules.
- Click VirusScope Details to view the VirusScope recognizers that are active on your system. See 'VirusScope Settings' for more details.

1.5.2. The Tasks Interface

- Click 'Tasks' on the top-left of the home screen
- The tasks area lets you configure every aspect of Comodo Client Security.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

		ctive and running			
GENERAL		CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS	ADVANCED TASKS	(
	Scan Scan your computer for viru	ses and spyware.	l al	v Quarantine and manage threats quaran ner.	tined by virus
0	Update Run the updater to check fo database updates.	r program and virus			
	Unblock Autoruns Re-enable previously blocke auto-start items or schedule	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓			

Tasks are broken down into four main sections. Click the following links for more details on each:

- **General Tasks** Run antivirus scans, update the virus database, run data loss prevention scans and more. See '**General Tasks**' for more details.
- Firewall Tasks Allow or block internet access for specific applications, manage networks, view active connections, and more. See 'Firewall Tasks' for more details.
- **Containment Tasks** Run applications in a secure virtual environment, start the virtual desktop, view active processes, and more. See 'Containment Tasks' for more details.
- DLP Tasks Run data loss prevention scans and manage quarantined files. See DLP Tasks
- Advanced Tasks Create a boot disk to clean highly infected systems, submit files to Comodo for analysis, install other Comodo security software, and more. See 'Advanced Tasks' for more details.

1.5.3. The Widget

- The CCS widget is a handy control that lets you launch key tasks, view your security status, and more.
- The widget is disabled by default but can be enabled from the 'System Tray Icon' or the 'User Interface' settings screen.
- Right-click on the widget to enable or disable CCS components and configure various settings. The menu is similar to the one available if you right-click on the system tray icon. See 'The System Tray Icon' for more details.



сомодо		сомодо		сомодо		сомодо					
ជ	Secure		ŵ	At Risk		ŵ	Silent M	ode	ු Ne	eds Atte	ntion
٥	0	ہ آج	٥O		? ° 0	٥		ہ (ج	0	1	ہ آج
B	¥		G	¥	0	Ø	¥		B	¥	
e	0 🥘	9	e	0	9	e	0	90	e	0	90
	\sim			\sim			\sim			\sim	

- The color-coded bar at the top of the widget shows your current security status.
 - Double-click on 'At Risk' or 'Needs Attention' statuses to view the recommended fixes.
- The second row tells you about various CCS processes:
 - The first button shows the number of programs/processes that are currently running in the container.
 - Click the button to view a list of all processes running in the container.
 - See View Active Process List and Identify and Kill Unsafe Processes for more details.
 - The second button shows the number of CCS tasks that are currently running. Click the button to open the 'Task Manager' interface.
 - The third button shows how many unrecognized files have been added to the file list and are pending submission to Comodo. Click the button to view a list of these files.

The status pane is disabled by default. Right-click on the tray icon then select 'Widget' > 'Show Status Pane' to enable it.

- The third row contains shortcuts for the common tasks you see on the CCS home screen.
 - Click a shortcut on the widget to run the task.
 - The common tasks row is disabled by default. Right-click on the tray icon then select 'Widget' > 'Common Tasks' to enable it.
- The fourth row shows browsers installed on your computer.
 - Click a browser icon to run the browser in the container. You can tell the browser is running in the container because it has a green border around it. See 'Run an application inside the container' if you want to read more on this.
 - The browsers row is disabled by default. Right-click on the tray icon then select 'Widget' > 'Show Browsers Pane' to enable it.
- You can expand or collapse the widget by clicking the arrow at the bottom.

1.5.4. The System Tray Icon

- Double-click the tray icon so to quickly open the CCS interface
- Right-click on the tray icon to enable or disable various security settings.



Antivirus	>
Firewall	>
Auto-Containment	>
HIPS	>
VirusScope	>
Website Filtering	>
DLP Monitoring	>
Silent Mode	
Widget	>
View Logs	
Open	123
Exit	
ENG 4:19	PM

- Antivirus Enable or disable the real-time virus monitor.
- Firewall Enable or disable the firewall.
- Auto-Containment Enable or disable auto-containment. See 'Auto-Containment Rules' for more details.
- HIPS Enable or disable the host intrusion protection system.
- VirusScope Enable or disable VirusScope.
- Website Filtering Enable or disable website filtering

The security panel and the widget will turn red if you disable any of the security components listed above. You will also see a pop-up which lets you specify how long to keep the feature disabled:

COMODO Client - Security	? ×
Turn Off You have just turned off a realtime security	y component.
Disabling a security component reduces the pro- computer.	tection on this
How long should it stay disabled?	
15 minutes	•
ОК	CANCEL

Select the period and click 'OK'.

Unless you select 'Permanently', the security component will be re-enabled after the set time period. You can manually re-enable the component at any time by right-clicking the tray icon and selecting 'Enable'.

Silent Mode - Disables CCS alerts and activities that could potentially interrupt your work.

In silent mode:

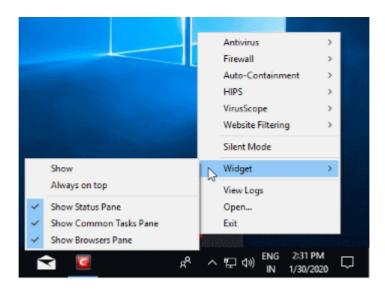
• All security and protection technologies remain fully active



- HIPS/Firewall alerts are suppressed
- AV updates and scheduled scans are postponed

Deactivate silent mode to resume alerts and scheduled scans.

Widget - Select whether or not the Widget is shown, and configure widget elements:



- Show: Toggle widget visibility. (Default = Disabled)
- Always on top: Shows the widget on top of all windows currently running on your computer. (*Default = Disabled*)
- Show Status Pane: Show overall security status in the widget (Default = Disabled)
- Show Common Tasks Pane: Show shortcuts to common CCS tasks in the widget. (*Default* = *Enabled*)
- Show Browsers Pane: Show shortcuts to browsers in the widget. (Default = Enabled)
- View Logs Opens the CCS log viewer module. The log viewer contains a history of events from various CCS security modules. See View CCS Logs for more details.
- **Open** Opens the CCS interface.
- Exit Closes the CCS application.



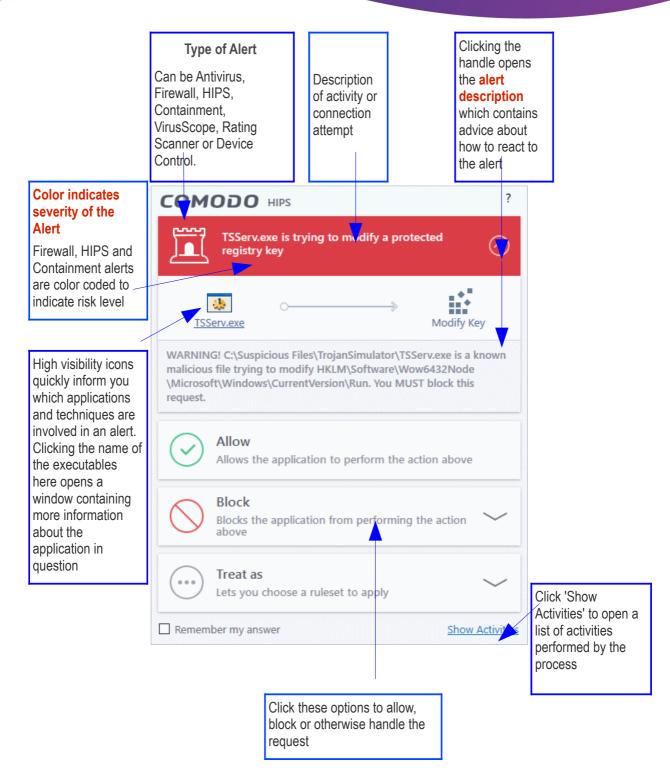
1.6. Understand Security Alerts

- Alerts Overview
 - Alert Types
 - Severity Levels
 - Descriptions
- Antivirus Alerts
- Auto-Scan Alerts
- Firewall Alerts
- HIPS Alerts
 - Device Driver Installation and Physical Memory Access Alerts
 - Protected Registry Key Alerts
 - Protected File Alerts
- Containment Alerts
 - Containment Notification
 - Elevated Privilege Alerts
- File Rating Alerts
- VirusScope Alerts
- Device Control Notifications

Alerts Overview

- CCS alerts warn you about security related activities at the moment they occur.
- Each alert contains information about a particular issue so you can make an informed decision about whether to allow or block it.
- Alerts also let you specify how CCS should behave in future when it encounters activities of the same type.
- The following screenshot shows the basic layout of a CCS alert:





Alert Types

The type of alert you see depends on the security module which generated the alert. Click the links below to find out more about each alert type.

- Antivirus Alerts Shown whenever virus or virus-like activity is detected. AV alerts are shown if the antivirus is enabled and 'Do not show antivirus alerts' is disabled in Real-time Scanner Settings.
- Auto-Scan Alerts Shown when you connect an external storage device to your computer. Auto-scan alerts are shown if antivirus is enabled and 'Do not show auto-scan alerts' is disabled in Real-time Scanner Settings.
- Firewall Alerts Shown whenever a process attempts unauthorized network activity. Firewall alerts will be displayed only if firewall is enabled and the option 'Do not show popup alerts' is disabled in Firewall Settings.

- HIPS Alerts Shown when a process attempts an unauthorized action or tries to access protected areas. HIPS alerts are shown if HIPS is enabled and Do NOT show popup alerts is disabled.
- Containment Alerts (including Elevated Privilege Alerts) Shown when CCS automatically contains an file. This usually happens if the file has an 'unknown' trust-rating. If privilege elevation alerts are enabled in Containment Settings, you will also see this type of alert if a program requires admin privileges to run.
- VirusScope Alerts Shown when a running process tries to perform a suspicious action. VirusScope alerts let you quarantine the process & reverse its changes, or let the process go ahead. Be especially wary if a VirusScope alert appears 'out-of-the-blue' when you have not made any recent changes to your computer. VirusScope alerts are generated if VirusScope is enabled in advanced settings.
- **Device Control Notifications** Shown when an external device that is blocked by the admin is connected to your system. These alerts are shown if 'Device Control' and 'Show notifications when devices...' are both enabled in **Device Control Settings**.

Alerts may contain very important security warnings, or may simply occur because you are running a certain application for the first time. Your reaction should depend on the information in he alert.

Note: This section is concerned with alerts generated by CCS security modules (antivirus, firewall, HIPS etc). See **Message Center notifications**, **Notification Messages** and **Information Messages** for other types of alert.

Severity Level

The color of the alert shows the risk level of the reported activity.

- Yellow Low Severity In most cases, you can safely approve these requests. The 'Remember my answer'
 option is automatically pre-selected for safe requests
- Orange Medium Severity Read the information in the alert description area before making a decision. These alerts could be the result of harmless activity by program you trust, but could also indicate malicious activity. If you know the application to be safe, then it is usually okay to allow the request. If you do not recognize the application or connection request then you should block it.
- **Red** High Severity Known malware discovered, or highly suspicious behavior by an application/process. Carefully read the information provided when deciding whether to allow it to proceed.

Note: Antivirus alerts are not ranked in this way. They always appear with a red bar.

Alert Description

The description is a summary of the nature of the alert and can be revealed by clicking the handle as shown:



СОМОДО НІРЅ	?			
unit.exe is trying to modify a protected file or directory	\bigcirc			
unit.exe Installer or	Jpdater			
unit.exe is a safe application signed by Comodo Security Solutions, Inc. It is about to modify the contents of C:\ProgramData\Comodo \lps4\lps-ca\vt.db-journal. This usually happens when you try to install or update an application. If you are not performing any of these operations, you may consider blocking this request.				

The description tells you the name of the software/executable that caused the alert; the action that it is attempting to perform and how that action could potentially affect your system. You can also find helpful advice about how you should respond.

Now that we have outlined the basic construction of an alert, let's look at how you should react to them.

Answer an Antivirus Alert

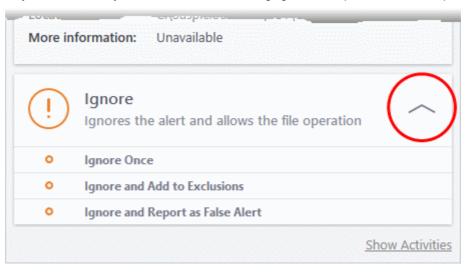
Comodo Client Security generates an antivirus alert whenever a virus or virus-like activity is detected on your computer. The alert contains the name of the virus detected and the location of the file or application infected by it. Within the alert, you are also presented with response-options such as 'Clean' or 'Ignore'.

Note: Antivirus alerts will be displayed only if the option 'Do not show antivirus alerts' is disabled. If this setting is enabled, only **antivirus notifications** are shown. This option is found under 'Settings > Antivirus > Realtime Scan'. See **Real-time Scan Settings** for more details.

COMODO Antivirus Alert	?
(A) Malware@#3bei506xtafzg	
Location:C:\Program Files (x86)\As\Dawes2.exeMore information:Unavailable	
Clean (Recommended) Quarantines the file	
Ignore Ignores the alert and allows the file operation	-
Show Activ	<u>vities</u>

The following response-options are available:

- Clean Disinfects the file if a disinfection routine exists. If no routine exists for the file then it will be moved to quarantine, an isolated storage in which the item is encrypted and stored. Files in the quarantine cannot be executed. If desired, you can submit the file/application to Comodo for analysis from the Quarantine interface. See Manage Quarantined Items for more details on quarantined files.
- Ignore Allows the process to run and does not attempt to clean the file or move it to quarantine. Only click 'Ignore' if you are absolutely sure the file is safe. Clicking 'Ignore' will open three further options:



- Ignore Once -The file is allowed to run this time only. If the file attempts to execute on future
 occasions, another antivirus alert is displayed.
- Ignore and Add to Exclusions The file is allowed to run and is moved to the Exclusions list effectively making this the 'Ignore Permanently' choice. No alert is generated if the same application
 runs again.
- Ignore and Report as a False Alert If you are sure that the file is safe, select 'Ignore and Report as a
 False Alert'. CCS will then submit this file to Comodo for analysis. If the false-positive is verified (and
 the file is trustworthy), it will be added to the safe list.

Antivirus Notification

If you have chosen to not to show Antivirus Alerts through **Settings > Realtime Scanner Settings** by leaving the option 'Do not show antivirus alerts' enabled (*default=enabled*) and If CCS identifies a virus or other malware in real time, it will immediately block malware and provide you with instant on-screen notification:

8	1alware@#3bei506xtafzg
C	:\Program Files (x86)\Astronomy
C	alculators V2\Calculators\Dawes2.exe

Answer Auto-Scan Alert

Auto-scan alerts appear when you plug a removable device into your computer (USB stick, portable HDD, etc). The alert asks you whether you want to scan the device for viruses.

These alerts are only shown if 'Do not show auto-scan alerts' is disabled in 'Settings > Antivirus > Realtime Scan'. See **Real-time Scan Settings** if you want to read more.

сом	ODO Antivirus ?	
	We've just detected that new removable media device has been connected (D:\). We recommended to scan it.	
\bigcirc	Scan Scan the device to make sure it's not infected.	
(!)	Ignore Skip the scan. Note: malware undetected now may harm your and other computers later.	
Remember my answer		

- Scan CCS checks the device for viruses using the settings in the 'Manual Scan' profile. If this is not available then the scan uses the settings in the 'Full Scan' profile.
- Ignore The device is not scanned
 - Remember my answer CCS will automatically carry out your choice of scan or ignore when the device is connected in future. This only applies to the specific device. You will still see an alert if you connect a different device.

Answer Firewall Alerts

CCS generates a firewall alert when it detects unauthorized network connection attempts or when traffic runs contrary to one of your application or global rules. Each firewall alert allows you to set a default response that CCS should automatically implement if the same activity is detected in future. The followings steps will help you answer a Firewall alert:

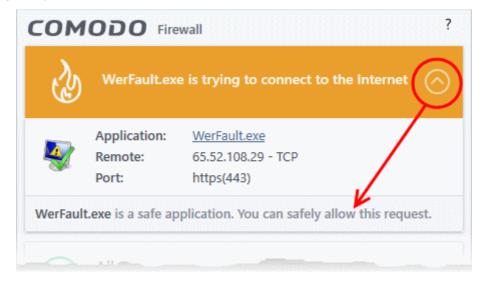


COMODO Firewall ?			
Ś	WerFault.exe	is trying to connect to the Interne	t ⊘
V	Application: Remote: Port:	<u>WerFault.exe</u> 65.52.108.29 - TCP https(443)	
\bigcirc	Allow Allows the con	nection request	
\bigcirc	Block Blocks the con	nection request	\sim
••••	Treat as Lets you choos	se a ruleset to apply	\sim
Remem	Remember my answer Show Activities		

Tip: Click 'Show Activities' to view actions performed by the process in question. This link is only shown if VirusScope is enabled in **Settings** > **VirusScope**.

The 'Show Activities' link is grayed-out if the process had not started before the alert was generated.

Carefully read the information displayed in clicking the down arrow in the alert description area. The Firewall
can recognize thousands of safe applications. (For example, Internet Explorer and Outlook are safe
applications). If the application is known to be safe - it is written directly in the security considerations
section along with advice that it is safe to proceed. Similarly, if the application is unknown and cannot be
recognized you are informed of this.



If it is one of your everyday applications and you want to allow it Internet access to then you should select **Allow**.

In all cases, clicking on the name of the application opens a properties window that can help you determine whether



or not to proceed:

Y WerFault P	roperties X	COMODO Firewall ?
Security General	Details Previous Versions Comodo Digital Signatures	WerFault.exe is trying to connect to the Internet 📀
Type of file: Description:	Application (.exe) Windows Problem Reporting	Application: WerFault.exe Remote: 65.52.108.29 - TCP Port: https(443)
Location: Size: Size on disk:	C:\Windows\SysWOW64 254 KB (260,960 bytes) 256 KB (262,144 bytes)	Allow Allows the connection request
Created: Modified:	Friday, July 10, 2015, 4:00:34 AM Friday, July 10, 2015, 4:00:34 AM	Block Blocks the connection request
Accessed: Attributes:	Friday, July 10, 2015, 4:00:34 AM	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply
		Remember my answer Show Activities

If you don't recognize the application then we recommend you **Block** the application. By clicking the handle to expand the alert, you can choose to 'Block' the connection (connection is not allowed to proceed), 'Block and Terminate' (connection is not allowed to proceed and the process/application that made the request is shut down) or 'Block, Terminate and Reverse' (connection is not allowed to proceed, the process/application that made the request is shut down and the changes made by the process/application to other files/processes in the system will be rolled back).



COMODO Firewall ?				
Ì	WerFault.exe	e is trying to connect to the Interne	t ⊘	
V	Application: Remote: Port:	<u>WerFault.exe</u> 65.52.108.29 - TCP https(443)		
\bigcirc	Block Blocks the con	nection request	\bigcirc	
0	Block Only			
0	Block and Term	inate		
0	Block, Terminat	e and Reverse		
	Treat as Lets you choo	se a ruleset to apply	\sim	
Remem	Remember my answer Show Activities			

Note: 'Block, Terminate and Reverse':

- This option is only available if VirusScope is enabled in **Settings > VirusScope**.
- The option is only shown if the process in question has actually started by the time the alert was generated.
- 2. If you are sure that it is one of your everyday application, try to use the 'Treat As' option as much as possible. This allows you to deploy a predefined firewall ruleset on the target application. For example, you may choose to apply the policy Web Browser to the known and trusted applications like 'Comodo Dragon', 'Firefox' and 'Google Chrome'. Each predefined ruleset has been specifically designed to optimize the security level of a certain type of application.



сом	COMODO Firewall ?				
Ì	COT.exe is trying to connect to the Interne	et 🕟			
Ş	Application:COT.exeRemote:74.52.245.98 - ICMPv4				
	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	\bigcirc			
0	Web Browser				
0	Ftp Client				
0	Allowed Application				
0	Blocked Application				
0	Outgoing Only				
Remem	Remember my answer Show Activities				

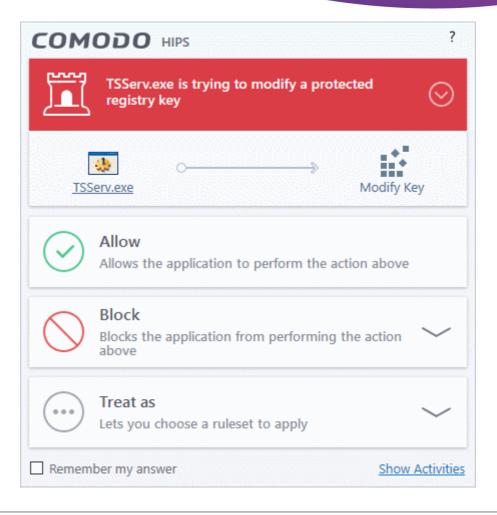
Remember to check the box 'Remember My Answer' for the ruleset to be applied in future.

3. If the Firewall alert reports a behavior, consistent with that of a malware in the security considerations section, then you should block the request AND select **Remember My Answer** to make the setting permanent.

Answer HIPS Alerts

Comodo Client Security generates a HIPS alert based on the behavior of applications and processes running on your system. Please read the following advice before answering a HIPS alert:

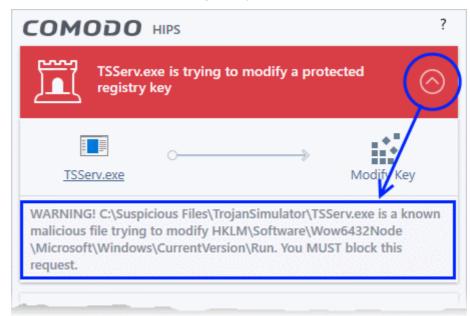




Tip: Click 'Show Activities' to view actions performed by the process in question. This link is only shown if VirusScope is enabled in **Settings** > **VirusScope**.

The 'Show Activities' link is grayed-out if the process had not started before the alert was generated.

 Carefully read the information displayed after clicking the handle under the alert description. Comodo Client Security can recognize thousands of safe applications. If the application is known to be safe - it is written directly in the security considerations section along with advice that it is safe to proceed. Similarly, if the application is unknown and cannot be recognized, you are informed of this.



If it is one of your everyday applications and you simply want it to be allowed to continue then you should select **Allow**.

If you don't recognize the application then we recommend you select **Block** the application. By clicking the handle to expand the alert, you can choose to

- 'Block' The application is not allowed to run
- 'Block and Terminate' The application is not allowed to run and the processes generated by it are terminated thereby shutting down the application
- 'Block, Terminate and Reverse' The application is not allowed to run, the processes generated by it are terminated and the changes made by the processes/application to other files/processes in the system will be rolled back.

сом	ODO HIPS ?
	TSServ.exe is trying to modify a protected of the second s
[<u>TSS</u>	Serv.exe Modify Key
\bigcirc	Block Blocks the application from performing the action
0	Block Only
0	Block and Terminate
0	Block, Terminate and Reverse
	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply
Remem	ber my answer Show Activities

Note: 'Block, Terminate and Reverse' is only shown if VirusScope is enabled in Settings > VirusScope.

2. If you are sure that it is one of your everyday applications and want to enforce a security policy (ruleset) to it, please use the 'Treat As' option. This applies a **predefined HIPS ruleset** to the target application and allows the application to run with access rights and protection settings as dictated by the chosen ruleset.

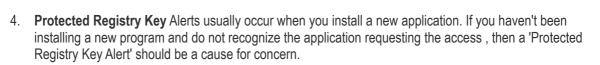


сом	ODO HIPS	?
	TSServ.exe is trying to modify a protec registry key	ted 😔
	Serv.exe	Modify Key
	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	\bigcirc
0	Installer or Updater	^
0	Allowed Application	
0	Windows System Application	
0	Isolated Application	
0	Limited Application	v
Remem	ber my answer	Show Activities

Avoid using the **Installer or Updater** ruleset if you are not installing an application. This is because treating an application as an 'Installer or Updater' grants maximum possible privileges onto to an application - something that is not required by most 'already installed' applications. If you select 'Installer or Updater', you may consider using it temporarily with **Remember My Answer** left unchecked.

3. Pay special attention to **Device Driver Installation** and **Physical Memory Access** alerts. Again, not many legitimate applications would cause such an alert and this is usually a good indicator of malware / rootkit like behavior. Unless you know for a fact that the application performing the activity is legitimate, then we recommend blocking these requests.

СОМОДО НІРЅ ?	СОМОДО НІРЗ ?
drvinst.exe is trying to modify a protected file or directory	TSServ.exe is trying to access TSServ.exe in memory
drvinst.exe	ISServ.exe
Allow Allows the application to perform the action above	Allow Allows the application to perform the action above
Block Blocks the application from performing the action	Block Blocks the application from performing the action
Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply
Remember my answer Show Activities	Remember my answer Show Activities



СОМОДО НІРЗ	?
TSServ.exe is trying to modify a protected registry key	\odot
TSServ.exe Modify	Key
Allow Allows the application to perform the action above	e
Blocks the application from performing the action above	\sim
•••• Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	\sim
Remember my answer Sho	w Activities

5. **Protected File Alerts** usually occur when you try to download or copy files or when you update an already installed application.

COMODO HIPS ?	СОМОДО НІРЅ ?
unit.exe is trying to modify a protected file or directory	taskhostw.exe is trying to access a protected COM interface
unit.exe Installer or Updater	taskhostw.exe Access COM Interface
Allow Allows the application to perform the action above	Allow Allows the application to perform the action above
Block Blocks the application from performing the action	Blocks the application from performing the action
Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply
Remember my answer Show Activities	Remember my answer Show Activities

Were you installing new software or trying to download an application from the Internet? If you are

downloading a file from the 'net, select **Allow**, without selecting **Remember my answe**r option to cut down on the creation of unnecessary rules within the firewall.

If an application is trying to create an executable file in the Windows directory (or any of its sub-directories) then pay special attention. The Windows directory is a favorite target of malware applications. If you are not installing any new applications or updating Windows then make sure you recognize the application in question. If you don't, then click **Block** and choose **Block Only** from the options, without selecting **Remember My answer** option.

If an application is trying to create a new file with a random file name e.g. "hughbasd.dll" then it is probably a virus and you should block it permanently by clicking **Treat As** and choosing **'Isolated Application'** from the options.

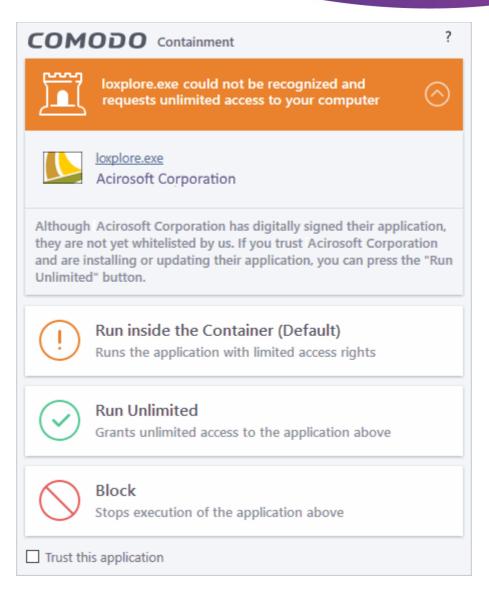
- If a HIPS alert reports a malware behavior in the security considerations area then you should Block the request permanently by selecting Remember My Answer option. As this is probably a virus, you should also submit the application in question, to Comodo for analysis.
- 7. Unrecognized applications are not always bad. Your best loved applications may very well be safe but not yet included in the Comodo certified application database. If the security considerations section says "If xxx is one of your everyday applications, you can allow this request", you may allow the request permanently if you are sure it is not a virus. You may report it to Comodo for further analysis and inclusion in the certified application database.
- If HIPS is in 'Paranoid' mode, you probably are seeing the alerts for any new applications introduced to the system - but not for the ones you have already installed. If required, you may review files with 'Unrecognized' rating in the 'File List' interface and remove them from the list.
- 9. Avoid using Trusted Application or Windows System Application policies for you email clients, web browsers, IM or P2P applications. These applications do not need such powerful access rights.

Answer a Containment Alert

Comodo Client Security generates a containment alert if an application or a process tries to perform certain modifications to the operating system, its related files or critical areas like Windows Registry and when it automatically contained an unknown application.

Please read the following advice before answering a Containment alert:





• Carefully read the information displayed after clicking the handle under the alert description. Comodo Client Security can recognize thousands of safe applications. If the application is known to be safe - it is written directly in the security considerations section along with advice that it is safe to proceed. Similarly, if the application is unknown and cannot be recognized, you are informed of this.



COMODO Containment	?	
loxplore.exe could not be recognized and requests unlimited access to your computer	\bigcirc	
Acirosoft Corporation		
Although Acirosoft Corporation has digitally signed their application, they are not yet whitelisted by us. If you trust Acirosoft Corporation and are installing or updating their application, you can press the "Run Unlimited" button.		
Run inside the Container (Default)		

 If you are sure that the application is authentic and safe and you simply want it to be allowed to continue then you should select **Run Unlimited**. If you want the application not to be monitored in future, select 'Trust this application' checkbox. The application will be added to **Trusted Files** list.

	nstalling or updating their application, you can press the -kun d" button.
(!)	Run inside the Container (Default) Runs the application with limited access rights
\bigcirc	Run Unlimited Grants unlimited access to the application above
\bigcirc	Block Stops execution of the application above
Trust th	nis application

- If you are unsure of the safety of the software, then We recommend that you run it with limited privileges and access to your system resources by clicking the 'Run Isolated' button. See Unknown Files: The Scanning process for more explanations on applications run with limited privileges.
- If you don't recognize the application then we recommend you select to 'Block' the application.

Run with Elevated Privileges Alert

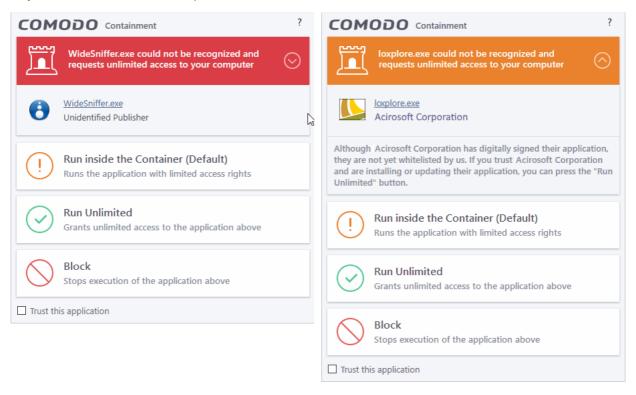
The container will display this kind of alert when the installer of an unknown application requires administrator, or elevated, privileges to run. An installer that is allowed to run with elevated privileges is permitted to make changes to important areas of your computer such as the registry.

If you have good reason to trust the publisher of the software then you can click the 'Run Unlimited' button. This will grant the elevated privilege request and allow the installer to run.

- If you are unsure of the safety of the software, then We recommend that you run it with restricted access to your system resources by clicking the 'Run Isolated' button.
- If this alert is unexpected then you should abort the installation by clicking the 'Block' button (for example, you have not proactively started to install an application and the executable does not belong to an updater program that you recognize)
- If you select 'Trust this application' then CCS will include this to Trusted Files list and no future alerts will be generated when you run the same application.

Note: You will see this type of alert only if you have enabled the 'Detect programs which require elevated privileges e.g. installers or updaters' option and disabled the 'Do not show privilege elevation alerts' option in containment settings. See **Containment Settings** for more details.

There are two versions of this alert - one for unknown installers that are not digitally signed and the second for unknown installers that are digitally signed but the publisher of the software has *not yet* been white-listed (they are not yet a 'Trusted Software Vendor').



Unknown and not digitally signed

Unknown and digitally signed but the publisher not yet whitelisted (Not yet a 'Trusted Vendor')

- Unknown and unsigned installers should be either isolated or blocked.
- Unknown but signed installers can be allowed to run if you trust the publisher, or may be isolated if you would like to evaluate the behavior of the application.

Also see:

- 'Unknown Files: The Scanning Processes' to understand process behind how CCS scans files.
- 'Vendors List' for an explanation of digitally signed files and trusted software vendors.

Containment Notification

CCS shows a notification when it run an application inside the container. This usually happens if the application has an 'unknown' trust-rating.





Hide These Alerts

Application Contained LogTable.exe

has been Run Virtually

COMODO Internet Security Premium

Don't Isolate It Again

- Hide These Alerts CCS will not show an alert if the same app is auto-contained in future.
- **Don't Isolate It Again** The application will not be auto-contained in future. An 'Ignore' rule is created for the application in auto-containment rules. See **Auto-Containment Rules** for more on this.

Answer File Rating Alerts

CCS checks a file's trust rating on our cloud severs as part of a real-time scan. The software can generate alerts when it finds a file with 'Malicious' rating.

You will see these alerts if you have *disabled* 'Do not show popup alerts' in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Rating Settings'.

An example alert is shown below:

COMODO Rating Scanner Alert	?
Policy.User@F@1	
Location:C:\Suspicious\AntiTest\AntiTest.exeMore information:Unavailable	
Clean (Recommended) Quarantines the file	
Ignore Ignores the alert and allows the file operation	\sim
Sho	ow Activities

You can choose from these actions:

- Clean The program is blocked and quarantined
- **Ignore** Allows the file to run. Does not attempt to clean the file or move it to quarantine. Only click 'Ignore' if you are absolutely sure the file is safe. Clicking 'Ignore' will open three further options:

(!)	Ignore Ignores the alert and allows the file operation	
0	Ignore Once	
0	Ignore and Add to Exclusions	
0	Ignore and Report as False Alert	
	Show Activitie	5

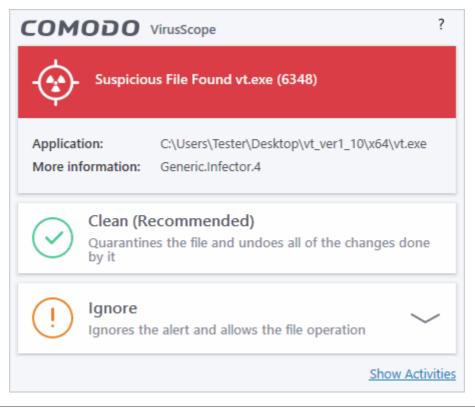
- **Ignore Once** The file is allowed to run this time, but it will still be flagged as a threat by future scans.
- Ignore and Add to Exclusions The file is allowed to run this time, and will not be flagged as
 a threat in future scans. The file is placed on the Exclusions list, meaning it is ignored
 permanently by the scanner.
- **Ignore and Report as a False Alert** The file is allowed to run this time, and submitted to Comodo for analysis. Select this option if you think the file is safe, and that CCS was wrong to flag it as a threat. Comodo will re-examine the file.

Answer a VirusScope Alert

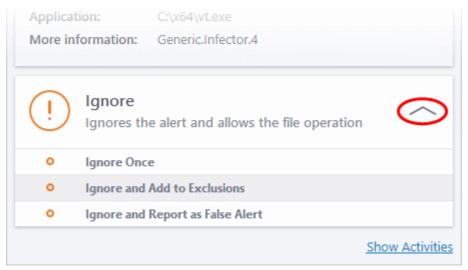
Comodo Client Security generates a VirusScope alert if a running process performs an action that might represent a threat to your privacy and/or security. Please note that VirusScope alerts are not always definitive proof that malicious activity has taken place. Rather, they are an indication that a process has taken actions that you ought to review and confirm because they have the potential to be malicious. You can review all actions taken by clicking the 'Show Activities' link.

Please read the following advice before answering a VirusScope alert:

1. Carefully read the information displayed in the alert. The 'More Information' section provides you the nature of the suspicious action.



- If you are not sure on the authenticity of the parent application indicated in the 'Application' field, you can safely reverse the changes effected by the process and move the parent application to quarantine by clicking 'Clean'.
- If it is a trusted application, you can allow the process to run, by clicking 'Ignore' and selecting the option from the drop-down.



- **Ignore Once** The process is allowed to run this time only. Another alert is shown if the process attempts to execute on future occasions.
- **Ignore and Add to Exclusions** The file is allowed to run and will not be contained in the future. See **Auto-Containment Rules** for help to configure which types of files should be auto-contained.
- **Ignore and Report as False Alert** Select this if you think the file is trustworthy and CCS is wrong to block it. CCS will submit the file to Comodo for analysis. If the false-positive is verified (and the file is trustworthy), it will be added to the safe list.
- Click the 'Show Activities' link to view the actions of the process:

Application Activities	PID	Data	
📧 🖂 vt.exe	5576		
Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\guard64.dll	
🖸 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\imm32.dll	
🦸 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\version.dll	
🦸 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\oleaut32.dll	
🥵 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\fltLib.dll	
🧩 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\cmdvrt64.dll	
🥵 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\KernelBase.dll	

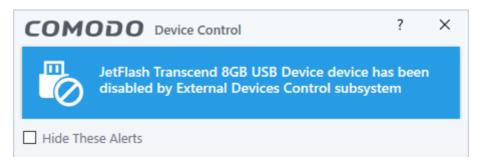
- Application Activities The action executed by each of the processes run by the parent application.
 - 📄 File actions: The process performed a file-system operation (create\modify\rename\delete file) which you might not be aware of.
 - III Registry: The process performed a registry operation (created/modified a registry key) which might not be authorized.
 - Process: The process created a child process which you may not have authorized or have been aware of.
 - 료 Network: The process attempted to establish a network connection that you may not have been aware of.
 - If the process has been terminated, the activities will be indicated with gray text and will appear in the list until you view the 'Process Activities List' interface. If you close the interface and reopen the list within five minutes, the activities will appear in the list. Else, the terminated activities will not be shown in the list.
- PID The process identification number.
- Data The file affected by the action.

Device Control Notifications

These notifications are shown when you connect an external device to your computer (USB stick, external HDD etc). The alert indicates whether the device is allowed or blocked.

You can add blocked devices in 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'





• See Device Control Settings to find out more.

1.7. Password Protection

- In a corporate setup, CCS settings are determined by the Endpoint Manager profile applied to the endpoint.
- One of these settings is the ability to password protect access to the client interfaces. This stops unauthorized users from opening the local clients and making potentially damaging changes.
- Password protection blocks access to the settings area, the various 'Tasks' areas, and the right-click options of the CCS tray icon.
- Local users can, however, still run certain tasks. See Exceptions at the end of this section for more details.

There are two password options you can set in Endpoint Manager:

- Computer administrator CCS requires a local admin password to access the settings area.
 - Admins that are already logged-in can access the settings area without a password.
 - All other users need to enter the admin username/password.
- Custom password An unique key which is set in the Endpoint Manager profile.
- See https://community.itarian.com/help/topic-459-1-1005-14934-Client-Access-Control.html for details on the difference between these passwords.
- CCS will request a password if a user tries to access a protected area:

COMODO Enter password	?	×
Please enter your credentials in order to continue:		
 Computer administrator (a Windows account with administrative privileges) 		
Domain:		
Login:		
Password:		
 Remote access 		
Password:		
ОК С/	ANCEL	



Exceptions

Users can run the following tasks even if password protection is enabled in the Endpoint Manager profile:

On-demand antivirus scans

- Click 'Scan' on the CCS home screen and choose a scan option.
- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > Choose a scan option.
- Right-click on an item and choose 'Scan with COMODO antivirus'.
- See Scan and Clean Your Computer and Instantly Scan Files and Folders for more details

Virus signature database updates

- Click Tasks > 'General Tasks' > 'Update'.
- See Manage Virus Database Updates for more details.

Manually run programs inside the container

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual'.
- Right-click on an item and choose 'Run in COMODO container'.
- See Run an Application in the Container for more details

Run Virtual Desktop

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'.
- See Start the Virtual Desktop for more details.

Create Comodo Rescue Disk

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Create Rescue Disk'.
- See Create a Rescue Disk for more details.

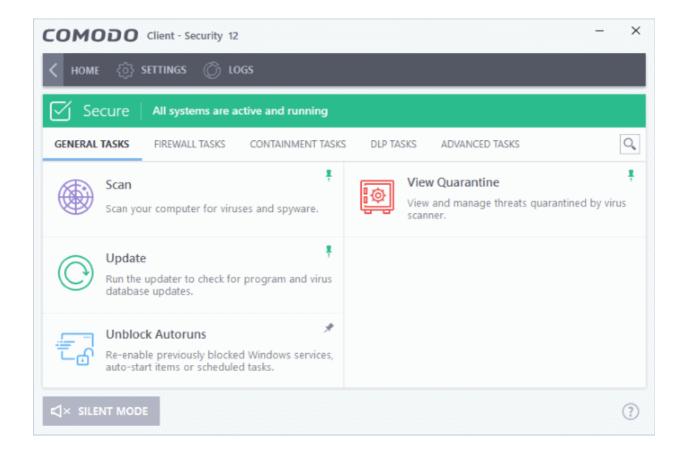
2. General Tasks - Introduction

Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks'

The general tasks area lets you:

- Quickly run antivirus scans
- Update the virus database
- View and manage items moved to quarantine
- Manage blocked autorun items, Windows services and scheduled tasks.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



See the following sections for help with each area:

- Scan and Clean your Computer
- Instantly Scan Files and Folders
- Process Infected Files
- Manage Virus Database Updates
- Manage Blocked Autoruns
- Manage Quarantined Items

You might need to enter a password to access these tasks if so configured in the Endpoint Manager profile. See 'Password Protection' for more details."

2.1. Scan and Clean Your Computer

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan'
- CCS leverages multiple technologies, including real-time monitoring and on-demand scans, to keep endpoints totally free of malware
- You can schedule a scan to run at a specific time, and also create your own scan profiles to check specific files, folders and drives.

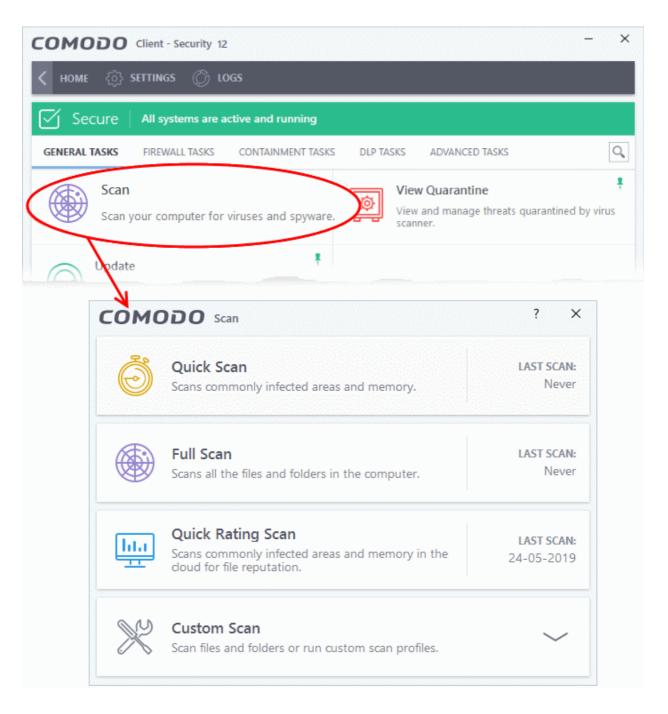
Run an on-demand virus scan

Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen

OR

Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan'

TVSIVVI



- Quick scan Checks important and commonly infected areas
- Full scan Checks your entire computer
- **Rating scan** Searches for unknown files on your computer. Assigns a trust rating to your files where possible.
- Custom scan You choose specific areas to scan.

The following sections explain more about each scan type:

- Run a Quick Scan
- Run a Full Computer Scan
- Run a Rating Scan
- Run a Custom Scan
 - Scan a Folder



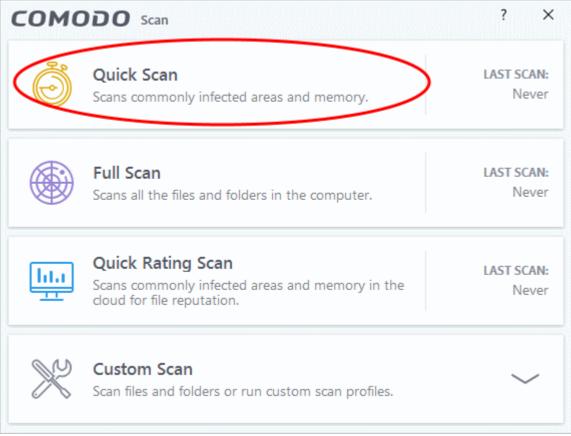
- Scan a File
- Create Schedule and Run a Custom Scan

2.1.1. Run a Quick Scan

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Quick Scan'
- The quick scan profile scans important areas of your computer which are most prone to attack.
- This includes system files, auto-run entries, hidden services, boot sectors, and important registry keys.
- These areas are of great importance to the health of your computer, so it is essential to keep them free of infection.
 - Note You can change the settings of a quick scan in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'. See Antivirus Configuration > Scan Profiles for help with this.

Run a Quick Scan

- Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen
- Select 'Quick Scan' from the 'Scan' interface



The scanner will start and first check whether your virus database is up-to-date:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

COMODO Scan		?			×
\bigcirc	TASK: Check for signature updates STATUS: Virus Database Update (5.0%): Checking for updates ELAPSED TIME: 00:00:47				
THREAT(S) FOUND:	0 SKIPPED FILES: 0				
Threat Name					
Turn off this comp	Turn off this computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan				
🔳 STOP		SEND T	O BACI	KGROUN	ID

• The scans starts after any updates have been installed:

	ican	?	-		×
65%	TASK: Quick Scan STATUS: C:\Windows\System32\rdpclip.exe ELAPSED TIME: 00:08:59				
THREAT(S) FOUND	D:1 () SKIPPED FILES: 0				
Threat Name					
C:\Windows\System32 Malware@#13tm1ukr					
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the scan				
STOP PAU	JSE	SEND	ТО ВАС	KGROUI	ND

Note - CCS skips files which are larger than the max. size, and those that take longer to scan than the max time allowed. Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans' to view these thresholds.



- You can pause, resume or stop the scan by clicking the appropriate button.
- Send to Background Runs the scan as a background process which consumes fewer resources. You can still keep track of the scan in the task manager 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Open Task Manager'.

Scan results are shown when the scan finishes:

				?	-		×
100%	TASK: Quick Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:13:11						
THREAT(S) FOUND	9:2 SKIPPED FILES: 0						
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean			•	
🗏 Malware@ (#13tm1	ukrdwdg0, #3fxg8e8df3its)						
– 📄 C:\Windows\/	System32\poison2	🗸 Cle	an			▼	
C:\Windows\	System32\venom	🗸 Cle	an			•	
Turn off this com CLOSE	puter if no threats are found at the end of the so	an	АРГ	PLY SI	ELECTE	ο Αςτιο	NS
CLOSE			APH	LT SI	ELECTER	JACHO	NS

The results window contains two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.
- Skipped Files: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (default = 9 mins).

Note: You will only see the drop-down menus if 'Automatically clean threats' is disabled for quick scans in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'. See **Scan Profiles** for help with this.

2.1.2. Run a Full Computer Scan

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Full Scan'
- A full scan checks every file, folder and drive on your computer. USB and other external drives are also scanned.
 - Note You can change the settings of a quick scan in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'. See Antivirus Configuration > Scan Profiles for help with this.

Run a Full Computer Scan

• Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen



Select 'Full Scan':

сомо	? ×	
Ö	Quick Scan Scans commonly infected areas and memory.	LAST SCAN: Never
	Full Scan Scans all the files and folders in the computer.	LAST SCAN: Never
<u>lıl.ı</u>	Quick Rating Scan Scans commonly infected areas and memory in the cloud for file reputation.	LAST SCAN: Never
X	Custom Scan Scan files and folders or run custom scan profiles.	\sim

• The scanner will start and first check whether your virus database is up-to-date:

COMODO Scan		?			×	
\bigcirc	TASK: Check for signature updates STATUS: Virus Database Update (5.0%): Checking for updates ELAPSED TIME: 00:00:47					
THREAT(S) FOUND:	0 🕑 SKIPPED FILES: 0					
Threat Name	Threat Name					
Turn off this computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan						
STOP		SEND T	O BACH	GROUN	ND	



• The scans starts after any updates have been installed:

COMODO Scan		?			×	
\bigcirc	TASK: Full Scan STATUS: C:\Program Files\WindowsApps\king.com.CandyCrusl ELAPSED TIME: 00:07:14	hFriends_1	I.13.5.0_x	86kgq	vn	
THREAT(S) FOUND	0 SKIPPED FILES: 0					
Threat Name						
Turn off this computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan						
STOP PAU	SE	SEND	TO BAC	KGROUI	ND	

Note - CCS skips files which are larger than the max. size, and those that take longer to scan than the max time allowed. Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans' to view these thresholds.

- You can pause, resume or stop the scan by clicking the appropriate button.
- Send to Background Runs the scan as a background process which consumes fewer resources. You can still keep track of the scan in the task manager 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Open Task Manager'.

сомо	DDO Send To Background	×
i	What is a Background Task? A task which runs in the background without interferi your normal PC activities.	ing with
scanning going to t	Background action, where available, makes the task suc or updating continue running in the background. These take longer to complete but resource usage of the com be minimal.	e tasks are
Please use	e Task Manager in order to access them later.	
Do not s	show this message again	ОК

• You can keep still track of scan progress in 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Open Task Manager'. Scan results are shown when the scan finishes:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

COMODO Scan				? —		×
100%	TASK: Full Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 03:03:06					
THREAT(S) FOUND	2:8 🕑 SKIPPED FILES: 18					
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean		•	^
🗏 Malware@ (#vigyao	klh7gw, #jgft8m0jxmvk, #3bqdlv583lryf, #2hr					
– 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
– 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	~
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the	scan				
CLOSE			APPL	Y SELECT	ED ACT	IONS

The results window contains two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.

Note: You will only see the drop-down menus if 'Automatically clean threats' is disabled for full scans in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'. See **Scan Profiles** for help with this.

• **Skipped Files**: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (default = 9 mins).

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

COMODO Scan		?	-		×	
100%	TASK: Full Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 03:03:06					
THREAT(S) FOUND	: 8 🛞 SKIPPED FILES: 18					
Path					^	
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe					
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe					
C:\Share\em_iSTjHX5f_installer.msi						
C:\Share\em_iSTjHX5f_	installer.msi					
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.10.Install.exe						
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.10.Install.exe						
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.10.Install.exe						
C:\Share\paint.net.4.1.5.install.exe					~	
Turn off this computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan						
CLOSE		APPLY	SELECTE	Ο ΑCTIO	NS	

2.1.3. Run a Rating Scan

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Rating Scan'
- A rating scan checks the trust-rating of files on your computer.
- Trust ratings are as follows:
 - Trusted The file is safe to run.
 - **Malicious** The file is malware. Depending on your settings, CCS will either quarantine the file immediately or present you with disinfection options.
 - **Unrecognized** Comodo does not currently have a trust rating for the file. Unrecognized files should be run in the container to prevent them potentially attacking your computer. You can simultaneously submit them to Comodo for a trust-rating analysis.

Run a Rating scan

- Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen (click here for alternative ways to open the scan interface)
- Select 'Ratings Scan':

COMODO scan ?						
õ	Quick Scan Scans commonly infected areas and memory.	LAST SCAN: 10/10/2018				
	Full Scan Scans all the files and folders in the computer.	LAST SCAN: 10/10/2018				
<u>hi.</u>	Quick Rating Scan Scans commonly infected areas and memory in the cloud for file reputation.	LAST SCAN: 10/10/2018				
X	Custom Scan Scan files and folders or run custom scan profiles.	\sim				

CCS will analyze all files on your computer and assign them a trust rating. File ratings are shown in the results table at the end of the scan:

COMODO Quick Rating Scan	? – 🗆 X						
TRUST LEVEL: Trusted File 99.72% Unrecogniz Malicious F	zed Files: 3		🔅 Aut	ining Files orun Files: rage File 4		15	
SHOW All Files							
File Name Q	Rating	Age	Autorun	Action	No Action	•	^
shell32.dll	 Trusted 	1 day	•				
1 Narrator.exe	✓ Trusted	12 months	٠				
i guartz.dll	🗸 Trusted	2 months	•				
rdpclip.exe	✓ Trusted	2 months	٥				
Cofiredm.dll	✓ Trusted	12 months	•				
userinit.exe	✓ Trusted	12 months	٥				
 Turn off this computer if no threats a 	are found at t	he end of the	scan				v
CLOSE				APPI	LY SELECTED	Ο ΑCTIO	NS

Rating Scan Results Table - Column Descriptions						
Column Header	Description					
File Name	The label of the scanned item					
Rating	 The trust level of the file as per the cloud based analysis. The possible values are: Trusted Unrecognized Malicious 					
Age	The length of time the item has been on your computer					
Auto-run	Whether or not the file automatically runs without user intervention.					
Action	Select how you want to deal with the listed item. See the explanations given below:					

The drop-down menus on the right let you handle unrecognized and malicious items:



SHOW Malicious Files					
File Name	Q	Rating	Age	Autorun	Action No Action 🔻
mshta.exe		() Malici	12 months		Clean Clean No Action
					Trust

- **Clean** Available only for malicious items. The threat is placed in quarantine for your review. Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine' to open this area. You can restore or permanently delete files from quarantine as required. See **Manage Quarantined Items** for more details.
- **No Action** Ignores the warning this time only. The file not placed in quarantine. Use this option with caution. The file will be caught again by the next rating scan you run.
- **Trust** The file is awarded trusted status in the **File List** ('Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List'). The file will be excluded from any future rating scans. Only select this option if you are sure the item is trustworthy.
- CCS logs all actions taken in the results screen. You can view the logs at 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'View Logs'. See File List Changes Logs for more details.
- Use the drop-down in the 'Action' column header to apply your choice to all listed files:

ile Name Q	Rating	Age	Autorun	Action	Clean	•
mshta.exe	(!) Malici	12 months		Clean	Clean 🔥 No Action	
AlterHostsFile.exe	() Malici	1 month		Clean	Trust	
cpil.exe	(!) Malici	4 months		Clean	•	•
CPIL2.dll	() Malici	4 months		Clean	•	•
CPIL3.dll	() Malici	4 months		Clean		•
mshta.exe	() Malici	12 months		Clean		•



2.1.4. Run a Custom Scan

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Custom Scan'
- A custom scan lets you check specific files, folders, drives and areas on your computer.

Run a custom scan

- Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen
- Select 'Custom Scan':

сомо	DO Scan	? ×
Ö	Quick Scan Scans commonly infected areas and memory.	LAST SCAN: 03-05-2019
R	Custom Scan Scan files and folders or ruft⊾custom scan profiles.	
	Folder Scan Select and scan a folder.	
	File Scan Select and scan a file.	
	More Scan Options Run custom scan profiles.	

You now have the following options:

- Folder Scan scan individual folders
- File Scan scan an individual file
- More Scan Options create a custom scan profile

2.1.4.1. Scan a Folder

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Custom Scan' > 'Folder Scan'
- Folder scans let you check specific folders on your hard drive, CD/DVD, or external device.

Tip: Alternatively, simply right-click on a folder then select 'Scan with COMODO Antivirus'.

Scan a specific folder

- Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen
- Select 'Custom Scan' > 'Folder Scan'
- Browse to the folder you want to check then click 'OK':



сомо	DDO Scan	? ×
Ö	Quick Scan Scans commonly infected areas and memory.	LAST SCAN: 03-05-2019
X	Custom Scan Scan files and folders or run custom scan profiles.	^
	Folder Scan Select and scan a folder	
	Browse For Folder ×	
	Astrolog Bistone CIS Federal Bank Statements Old Man Apps old man files	
The 000 e	Make New Folder OK Cancel	

• The CCS starts scanning the items in the folder.

Note - CCS skips files which are larger than the max. size, and those that take longer to scan than the max time allowed. Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans' to view these thresholds.

• Scan results are shown when the scan finishes:

	can		?			×
100%	TASK: C:\Old Man Apps STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:04:33					
THREAT(S) FOUND	: 1 🕖 SKIPPED FILES: 0					
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean		•	
🗏 🗋 C:\Old Man App	s\uTorrent.exe	✓ Cle	an		•	
Malware@#brsxp	pal1o5hg					
C:\Old Man Apps	s\uTorrent.exe Unsfx WizardPages.dll					
Turn off this complete	puter if no threats are found at the end of the so	an				
CLOSE			APPLY	SELECTE	D ACTIO	NS

The results window has two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.
- **Skipped Files**: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (default = 9 mins).

2.1.4.2. Scan a File

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Custom Scan' > 'File Scan'
- File scans let you check specific files on your hard drive, CD/DVD, or external device.
- For example, you might have downloaded a file from the internet which you want to scan before running.

Tip: Alternatively, right-click on file then select 'Scan with COMODO Antivirus'.

Scan a specific file

- Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen
- Select 'Custom Scan' > 'File Scan'
- Browse to the file you want to scan and click 'Open'.



сомо	DO Scan				? ×
Ö	Quick Scan Scans common	nly infected areas a	nd memory.		LAST SCAN: 3-05-2019
R	Custom Sca Scan files and f	n folders or run custo	om scan profi	les.	^
	Folder Scan Select and scar	n a folder.			
	File Scan Select and sca	ma file.	>		
	More Scan O	ptions	1999 - Maria Ma		9000
C Open	•		1	- • · · =	×
Look i Quick access Desktop	Name	n	~	Compare the second s	Type BIN File
Libraries					
This PC	< File name: Files of type:	hazard All Files (*.*)		~	> Open Cancel

Note - CCS skips files which are larger than the max. size, and those that take longer to scan than the max time allowed in 'Full Scan' profile. Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans' to view these thresholds.

• Scan results are shown when the scan finishes:

	can				?	—		×
100%	TASK: C:\Old Man Apps\poison1\hazard.bin STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:00:07							
THREAT(S) FOUND	e: 1 🛞 SKIPPED FILES: 0							
Threat Name		Q	Action	Clean			Ţ	
Malware@#3fxg8e8	df3its							
C:\Old Man A		✓ Clean 🔹						
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the	e sc	an					
CLOSE				APP	PLY S	ELECTE	Ο ΑCTIO	NS

The results window has two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.
- **Skipped Files**: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (default = 9 mins).

2.1.4.3. Create, Schedule and Run a Custom Scan

Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Custom Scan' > 'More Scan Options'

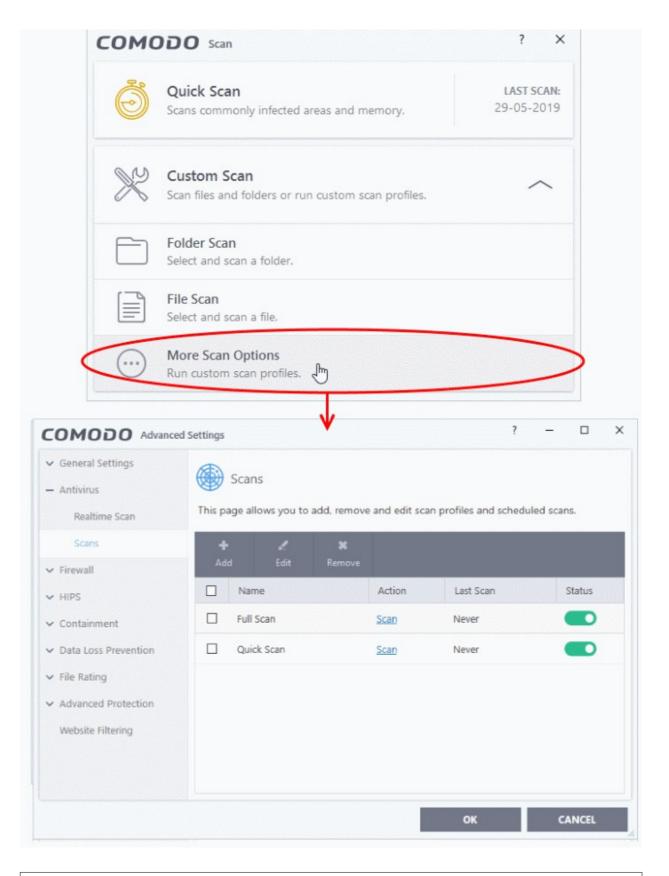
- A custom scan profile lets you configure your own malware scan with your own settings.
- You can define exactly which files and folders to scan, what time they should be scanned, and other settings.
- Once saved, you can select and run your custom scan at any time
- See the following for more help:
 - Create a Scan Profile
 - Run a custom scan

Create a custom profile

- Click the 'Scan' tile on the CCS home screen
- Select 'Custom Scan' then 'More Scan Options'

The scans page shows pre-defined and user created scan profiles. You can create and manage new profiles in this page:





Tip: You can also get to this screen by clicking 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'.

• Click 'Add' to create a new custom scan profile.



сомо	DO Scan						?		×
Scan Name:	Old man do	ocuments							
Define items	to be scanned	d, scanning op	tions and run	ning schedule					
ITEMS	OPTIONS	SCHEDULE							
C ∔ Add Files	Add Folder	🖾 Add Area	X Remove						
State of the state	ofile		Kemove	24	_	_			
<u> </u>									
						ОК	C	ANCEL	/_

First, create a name for the profile. The next steps are:

- Select items to scan
- Configure scan options for the profile (optional)
- Configure a scan schedule (optional)

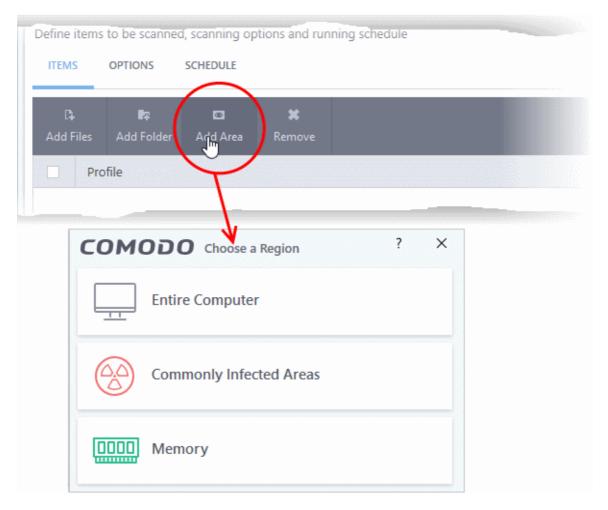
Select items to scan

• Click the 'Items' button at the top of the scan interface.

You can add items as follows:

- Add File Pick individual files that you want to scan.
- Add Folder Add entire folders to the profile. All files in the folder are covered by the scan.
- Add Area Scan a computer region. The choices are 'Full Computer', 'Commonly Infected Areas' and 'System Memory'. See screenshot below:





• Repeat the process to add more items to the profile. You can mix-and-match files, folders and areas in your custom scan.

Configure Scan Options

• Click 'Options' at the top of the scan interface



COMODO scan ? 🗆 X
Scan Name:
Define items to be scanned, scanning options and running schedule
ITEMS OPTIONS SCHEDULE
Decompress and scan compressed files
This option allows scanner to decompress archive files e.gzip, .rar, etc. during scanning
Use cloud while scanning
This option allows scanner to connect to cloud to query file ratings
Automatically clean threats Quarantine Threats
When the threats are identified, perform the selected action automatically
Show scan results window
This option enables to view results of scans launched as per schedule or from the management portal, as well as removable media scans.
☑ Use heuristics scanning Low ▼
Use the selected level of sensitivity while scanning heuristically
✓ Limit maximum file size to 40 MB While scanning, if a file size is larger than specified, it is not scanned
Run this scan with Background
Priority of scanner determines how much of the computer resources are used among other tasks
☑ Update virus database before running
This option makes sure the database is updated before running the scan
Detect potentially unwanted applications Potentially unwanted applications are programs that are unwanted despite the possibility that users consented to download them.
Apply this action to suspicious autorun processes Terminate and Disable 🔻
The selected action will be automatically applied if unrecognized Windows services, autostart entries or scheduled tasks are detected.
Limit scan time of a single file to 9 🚔 min(s) When the set time limit is reached, the file will be skipped and antivirus will proceed scanning other files.
OK CANCEL

Decompress and scan compressed files - The scan will include archive files such as .ZIP and .RAR files. Supported formats include RAR, WinRAR, ZIP, WinZIP ARJ, WinARJ and CAB archives (**Default = Enabled**).

Use cloud while scanning - Improves accuracy by augmenting the local scan with an online look-up of Comodo's latest virus database. This means CCS can detect the latest malware even if your virus database is out-dated. (*Default = Disabled*).

Automatically clean threats - Select whether or not CCS should automatically remove any malware found by the scan. (*Default = Enabled*).



- Disabled = Results are shown at the end of the scan with a list of any identified threats. You can manually
 deal with each threat in the results screen. See Process Infected Files for guidance on manually handling
 detected threats.
- **Enabled** = Threats are handled automatically. Choose the action that CCS should automatically take:
 - **Quarantine Threats** Malicious items will be moved to quarantine. You can review quarantined items and delete them permanently or restore them. See 'Manage Quarantined Items' for more details.
 - **Disinfect Threats** If a disinfection routine exists, CCS will remove the virus and keep the original file. If not, the file will be quarantined. (*Default*)

Show scan results window - You will see a summary of results at the end of the scan. This includes the number of objects scanned and the number of threats found.

Use heuristic scanning - Select whether or not heuristic techniques should be used in scans on this profile. You can also set the heuristic sensitivity level. (*Default = Enabled*).

Background. Heuristics is a technology that analyzes a file to see if it contains code typical of a virus. It is about detecting 'virus-like' attributes rather than looking for a signature which exactly matches a signature on the blacklist. This means CCS can detect brand new threats that are not even in the virus database.

If enabled, please select a sensitivity level. The sensitivity level determines how likely it is that heuristics will decide a file is malware:

• Low - Least likely to decide that an unknown file is malware. Generates the fewest alerts.

Despite the name, this setting combines a very high level of protection with a low rate of false positives. We recommend this setting for most users. (Default)

- **Medium** Detects unknown threats with greater sensitivity than the low setting, but with a corresponding rise in possible false positives.
- **High** Highest sensitivity to detecting unknown threats. This also raises the possibility of more alerts and false positives.

Limit maximum file size to - Specify the largest file size that the antivirus should scan. CCS will not scan files bigger than the size specified here. (*Default = 40 MB*).

Run this scan with - If enabled, you can set the priority of scans on this profile The available options are:

- High
- Normal
- Low
- Background

If you disable this option then the scan runs in the background (Default)

Update virus database before running - CCS checks for and downloads the latest virus signatures before starting a scan. (*Default* = *Enabled*).

Detect potentially unwanted applications - The antivirus also scans for applications that (i) a user may or may not be aware is installed on their computer and (ii) may contain functionality and objectives that are not clear to the user. Example PUA's include adware and browser toolbars. PUA's are often bundled as an additional utility when installing another piece of software. Unlike malware, many PUA's are legitimate pieces of software with their own EULA agreements. However, the true functionality of the utility might not have been made clear to the end-user at the time of installation. For example, a browser toolbar may also contain code that tracks your activity on the internet. (*Default = Enabled*).

Apply this action to suspicious autorun processes - Specify how CCS should handle unrecognized auto-run items, Windows services, and scheduled tasks.

- Ignore The item is allowed to run (*Default*)
- **Terminate** CCS stops the process / service
- Terminate and Disable Auto-run processes are stopped and the corresponding auto-run entry removed.



In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.

• **Quarantine and Disable** - Auto-run processes are quarantined and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.

Note 1 - This setting only protects the registry during the on-demand scan itself. To monitor the registry at all times, go to 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous'.

See Miscellaneous Settings for more details

Note 2 - CCS runs script analysis on certain applications to protect their registry records. You can manage these applications in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis' > 'Autorun Scans'.

See 'Autorun Scans' in Script Analysis Settings for more details

Limit scan time of a single file to - Set the maximum time allowed to scan an individual file. CCS will skip files that take longer to scan than the specified time. Omitted files are shown in the 'Skipped Files' tab in the results screen.

Schedule the scan

Click 'Schedule' at the top of the 'Scan' interface

COMODO Scan	?		×
Scan Name:			
Define items to be scanned, scanning options and running schedule			
ITEMS OPTIONS SCHEDULE			
Frequency:			^
O not schedule this task			
O Every few hours			
O Every Day			
O Every Week			
O Every Month			
O Monthly (chosen days of week)			
Additional Options			_
			~
ОК		CANCEL	

Do not schedule this task - The scan profile is created but not run automatically. The profile will be available for ondemand scans.

Every few hours - Run the scan at the frequency set in 'Repeat scan every NN hour(s)'

Every Day - Run the scan every day at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field.

Every Week - Run the scan on the days specified in 'Days of the Week', at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field. You can select the days of the week by clicking on them.

Every Month - Run the scan on the dates specified in 'Days of the month', at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field. You can select the dates of the month by clicking on them.

Monthly (chosen days of the week) - Run the scan on a specific week, or weeks, in a month. Select the weeks in from the menus.

Additional Options

- **Run only when computer is not running on battery** The scan only runs when the computer is plugged into the power supply. This is useful when you are using a laptop or other mobile device.
- **Run only when computer is IDLE** The scan only runs if the computer is in an idle state at the scheduled time. Select this option if you do not want the scan to disturb you while you are using your computer.
- **Turn off computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan** Will turn off your computer if no threats are found during the scan. This is useful when you are scheduling scans to run at nights.
- Run during Windows Automatic Maintenance Only available for Windows 8 and later. Select this option if you want the scan to run when Windows enters into automatic maintenance mode. The scan will run at maintenance time in addition to the configured schedule.
- The option 'Run during Windows Maintenance' will be available only if 'Automatically Clean Threats' is enabled for the scan profile under the 'Options' tab. See **Automatically Clean Threats**.

Note: Scheduled scans will only run if the profile is enabled. Use the switch in the 'Status' column to turn the profile on or off.

• Click 'OK' to save the profile.

The profile will be available for deployment in future.

Run a custom scan

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan'
- Click 'Custom Scan' from the 'Scans' interface
- Click 'More Scan Options' from the 'Custom Scan' pane

The 'Advanced Settings' interface will open at the 'Scans' panel.

• Click 'Scan' beside the required scan profile.

COMODO Advance	d Settings			?	- 🗆 X
 General Settings Antivirus Realtime Scan 	Scans This page allow	vs you to add, re	move and edit sca	an profiles and schedu	led scans.
Scans	+ Add	🗶 🔰 Edit Rem	love		
✓ HIPS	Name		Action	Last Scan	Status
✓ Containment	Full Sca	in	Scan	Never	
 Data Loss Prevention 	Quick S	can	Scan	Never	
 File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Shared	Folder Scan	S	Never	
				ОК	CANCEL

The scan will start immediately. Results are displayed afterwards:

	can		?	-		×
100%	TASK: Shared Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:48					
THREAT(S) FOUND	SKIPPED FILES: 24					
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean		•	^
🗏 Malware@ (#vigyao	oklh7gw, #jgft8m0jxmvk, #3bqdlv583lryf, #2hr					
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	~
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the	scan				
CLOSE			APPLY	SELECTE	D ACTIC	ONS

The results window contains two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.

Note: You will only see the drop-down menus if 'Automatically clean threats' is disabled for the selected scan profile in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'. See **Scan Profiles** for help with this.

• **Skipped Files**: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (*default* = 9 *mins*).

	can			?	_		×
100%	TASK: Shared Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:48						
THREAT(S) FOUND	: 8 🛞 SKIPPED FILES: 24						
Path							^
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe						
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe						
C:\Share\icedragonset	nb'exe						
C:\Share\icedragonset	nb'exe						
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe						
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.	10.Install.exe						
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.	10.Install.exe						
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.	10.Install.exe						~
Turn off this compared to the second seco	outer if no threats are found	at the end of the	scan				
CLOSE				APPLY S	ELECTED	ACTION	S

2.1.5. Automatically Scan Unrecognized and Quarantined Files

- Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Rating Settings'
- CCS can periodically re-scan unknown and quarantined files to check whether a new trust rating is available for them.
- This area lets you specify a schedule and settings for these scans.

File Rating

- CCS checks files whenever they are opened and rates them as 'trusted', 'malicious' or 'unrecognized'.
- The rating is obtained by checking the file's reputation on our master whitelist and blacklist.
- If no rating is available then CCS checks the trust rating of the software vendor
 - CCS will apply the vendor's reputation to the file if one exists. CCS first checks the vendor's local reputation in the 'Vendor List'. If no local rating is available then it checks the file lookup service.

There are two ways a file can get an 'unrecognized' rating:

1. Because there is no rating for the file on Comodo's black or whitelists, and no user has assigned a malicious/trusted rating to the file.

OR

2. Because an admin, user or Comodo specifically assigned an 'unrecognized' rating to the file.

To view the rating:

- Go to 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List' > select an unrecognized file > Click 'File Details'
- Click the 'File Rating' tab

The following examples show files with and without ratings:

• The interface lists 3 ra user (you), the admin	tings, one each from the and Comodo.	 A colored icon in the file r it has been rated. 	ating column indicate
 Unknown files with no gray ? Icon. 	rating are shown with a	Yellow - UnrecognizeGreen - Trusted	d
COMODO File Details	? ×	Red - Malicious	
OVERVIEW	FILE RATING	COMODO File Details	? ×
Final Rating:	Unrecognized	OVERVIEW	FILE RATING
Provider Date	File Rating	Final Rating:	Unrecognized
Administrator	? Unrecognized	Provider Date	File Rating
User	? Rate Now	Administrator	? Unrecognized
Comodo	? Unrecognized	User	? Rate Now
		Comodo Valkyrie 10/10/2018 8:23:09 PI	M ? Unrecognized
	OK CANCEL		
 You can assign a local Now' 	rating by clicking 'Rate	ок	CANCEL

CCS will handle unrecognized files differently depending on whether the rating was proactively applied or not:

- Files awarded an unrecognized rating by admin, user or Comodo are not uploaded to Valkyrie.
- All other unrecognized files are uploaded to Valkyrie when executed or discovered by a **rating scan**. You can also submit them manually.

Regardless of the above, all unrecognized files are run in the container by default. If required, you can change autocontainment rules in 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Auto-Containment'. See 'Auto-Containment Rules' for more information.

Quarantined Files

- The antivirus scanner moves threats to quarantine to prevent them from infecting your system.
- All files in quarantine are encrypted, so they cannot run or cause harm.
- You can also manually move suspicious items to quarantine. See Manage Quarantined Items for more details.

Configure scan settings for unrecognized and quarantined files

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File Rating Settings'



COMODO Advanced	Settings ? - 🗆 X
 General Settings Antivirus 	File Rating Settings
✓ Firewall	Enable Cloud Lookup (Recommended)
✓ HIPS	Analyze unknown files in the cloud by uploading them for instant analysis (Privacy Policy)
✓ Containment	Upload metadata of unknown files to the cloud
✓ Data Loss Prevention	☑ Do not show popup alerts
File Rating	This option, when enabled, automatically terminates and quarantines malware detected by rating scan.
File Rating Settings	Rate applications according to their <u>vendor rating</u>
	Trust files installed by trusted installers
File List	Detect potentially unwanted applications
Submitted Files	Automatically purge the file list from invalid records every 4 🐳 hour(s) 💌
Vendor List	The file list will be cleaned from records on files no longer existing on this computer. It
 Advanced Protection 	will not affect records on quarantined files and files rated by administrators.
Website Filtering	Use proxy when performing Cloud Lookup
	Automatically scan unrecognized files at equal intervals Edit scan options
	Automatically re-evaluate quarantined files at equal intervals Edit scan options
	OK CANCEL

- Automatically scan unrecognized files at equal intervals CCS will check Comodo's master database to see if a new trust rating is available for unrecognized files. (*Default = Enabled and set for every 4 hours*)
- Automatically re-evaluate quarantined files at equal intervals CCS will check Comodo's master database to see if a new trust rating is available for quarantined files. (*Default = Enabled and set for once everyday*)
- Click 'Edit scan options' to open the unrecognized / quarantined scan profile:



Unrecognized Files Scan

Quarantined Files Scan

сомо	DO Scan	7 🗆	×	COMODO Scan	7		×
Scan Name:	Unrecognized Files Scan			Scan Name: Quarantined Files Scan			
Define items	to be scanned, scanning options and running schedule			Define items to be scanned, scanning options and running schedule			
ITEMS	OPTIONS SCHEDULE			ITEMS SCHEDULE			
D a Add Files	Ref C X Add Folder Add Area Remove			D , By ⊡ ≱X Add Files Add Falder Add Anes Remove			
Pro	fie			Profile			
Une Une	ecognized Files			Quarantined Files			
	ок	CANCEL		ок	CA	NCEL	

- Scan Name The label of the scan. This is pre-configured and cannot be edited.
- **Items** The files that are scanned by the profile. 'Unrecognized' and 'Quarantined' files are the defaults. You cannot edit or add files to this profile.
- Scan Options (unrecognized files scan only) Configure scan technologies, how to handle threats, and more. See Configure scan options for the profile in the previous section for help with this.
- Schedule Specify the frequency of the scans. See Configure a scan schedule in the previous section if you need help with this. (*Default = Every 4 hours for unrecognized files scan and once in a day for quarantined files scan*).
- Click 'OK' to save your changes
- Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' screen for your settings to take effect.

2.2. Instantly Scan Files and Folders

- You can scan individual files, folders or drives to instantly to check whether they contain threats.
- For example, this is useful if you are wary about an item you have copied from an external source or downloaded from the internet.

Instantly scan an item

• Right-click on the item and select 'Scan with Comodo Antivirus' from the menu:

I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I						
A Cut Copy Paste Clipboard		🖌 Move to ▾ [Copy to ▾ Orga	X Delete ▼ ■ Rename nize	New folder	Prop	erties • Open
← → × ↑ 📙 > This PC > I	Local Dis	k (C:) → Suspici	ous → poison1		ڻ <i>ب</i>	Searc
Name		^		Date modifie	d	Тур
📌 Quick access	zard.bin			26-05-20171	0:54	BIN
 Downloads Documents 		Open with 7-Zip CRC SHA		>		
E Pictures *		Scan with COMO Run in COMODO		\rightarrow	>	
	1000	Share Restore previous	versions			
	:	Send to		>		
	100 E M 20	Cut Copy				
	Value	Create shortcut Delete				
		Rename				
		Properties				

The item will be scanned immediately.

Note - CCS skips files which are larger than the max. size, and those that take longer to scan than the max time allowed.

Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans', then open the 'Full Scan' profile to view these thresholds.

• Scan results are shown when the scan finishes:

	can			?	,	—		×
100%	TASK: C:\Old Man Apps\po STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:00:07	ison1\hazard.bin						
THREAT(S) FOUND	:1 🕑 SKIPPED FILES: 0							
Threat Name		۵	Action	Clean			•	
Malware@#3fxg8e8	df3its							
C:\Old Man A	pps\poison1\hazard.bin		🗸 Cle	an			•	
Turn off this complete the second	puter if no threats are found	d at the end of the s	can					
CLOSE				APPLY	Y SELE	CTED	Ο ΑCTIO	NS

The results window has two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.
- **Skipped Files**: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (*default* = 9 *mins*).

2.3. Process Infected Files

The results screen at the end of a scan lets you clean, quarantine or ignore any detected threats. The screen contains two tabs:

- **Threats Found**: Number of malicious items discovered by the scan. You can clean, quarantine or ignore the threats.
- Skipped Files: Files that were omitted because they took longer to scan than the time limit.

View identified threats and take actions

• Click the 'Threats Found' tab (if it is not already open)

	can		?	-		×
100%	TASK: Shared Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:48					
THREAT(S) FOUND	D: 8 🕑 SKIPPED FILES: 24					
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean		•	^
🗏 Malware@ (#vigyao	oklh7gw, #jgft8m0jxmvk, #3bqdlv583lryf, #2hr					
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
– 🗋 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
– 🗋 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
– 🗋 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
– 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	J
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the	scan				1000
CLOSE			APPLY	SELECTE	D ACTIO	NS

• Use the drop-down menus to apply actions to individual files:

	can		?	- 0	×
100%	TASK: Share Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:06				
THREAT(S) FOUND	8 SKIPPED FILES: 18				
Threat Name	klh7gw, #jgft8m0jxmvk, #3bqdlv583lryf, #2hr.	Q Action	Clean		^
— 🗋 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	t → lg t + A () R		t	

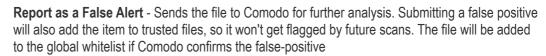
• Or use the 'Action' drop-down at top-right to apply your choice to all threats at once.

	can		?	-		×
100%	TASK: Share Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:06					
	9:8 🛞 SKIPPED FILES: 18					
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean		•	^
Alware@ (#vigvag			Clean			
	, - <u></u>		Ignore Once			
- C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	Add to Trusted	Files		
			Report as a Fal	se Alert		
			Add to Exclusion	ons		

Available actions are:

- Clean The virus is removed from the file if a disinfection routine is available. The cleaned file is
 left in its original location. If no routine exists, the file is quarantined. Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced
 Tasks' > 'View Quarantine' to view this area. You can restore or permanently delete files from
 quarantine as required. See Manage Quarantined Items for more details.
- **Ignore Once** Allows the file to run this time only. The file will still get flagged as a threat by future antivirus scans.
- Add to Trusted Files Creates an exception for the file by giving it a 'Trusted' rating in the File
 List ('Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List'). The AV scanner will not detect the file as a threat in
 future scans. Only select this option if you are sure the file is trustworthy.

•



- Add to Exclusions Creates an exception for the file so it won't get flagged by future virus scans. You can review exclusions at 'Settings > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'. The file's trust rating does not change.
- Click 'Apply Selected Actions'. The result is shown in the 'Actions' column:

COMODO s	can			?	—		×
100%	TASK: Shared Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:48						
THREAT(S) FOUND	e: 8 🕑 SKIPPED FILES: 24						
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean			¥	^
ApplicUnwnt@#2bz	coprs4rq6r6						
C:\Share\Wo	orkingTimeManagerSetup.exe	Cleaned					
🗏 Malware@ (#vigyao	klh7gw, #jgft8m0jxmvk, #3bqdlv583lryf, #2hrwdh						
— 🗸 C:\Share\Ma	lware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-master\	Cleaned					
— 🗸 C:\Share\Ma	lware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-master\	Cleaned					
— 🗸 C:\Share\Ma	lware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-master\	Cleaned					
— 🗸 C:\Share\Ma	Ilware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-master\	Cleaned					
<							> ~
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the so	an					
CLOSE			API	PLY SI	ELECTED	O ACTIO	NS

View skipped files

Click the 'Skipped Files' tab

	can	?			×
100%	TASK: Share Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:06				
THREAT(S) FOUND	: 8 SKIPPED FILES: 18				
Path					^
C:\Share\patch_manag	ement_agent.msi				
C:\Share\TeamViewer_	Setup.exe				
C:\Share\TeamViewer_	Setup.exe				
C:\Share\TeamViewer_	Setup.exe				
C:\Share\Silverlight.exe	2				
C:\Share\Silverlight.exe	2				
C:\Share\Silverlight.exe	2				
C:\Share\Silverlight.exe	2				~
Turn off this complete	puter if no threats are found at the end of the scan				
CLOSE		APPLY S	ELECTED A	CTIONS	

The 'Skipped Files' tab shows files that were omitted from the scan. These files took longer than the max. time allowed to scan a single file. The max. time allowed depends on the profile used for the scan. To view the max. scan time

- Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'
- Open the profile used by the scan
- View/edit the max. scan time as required.

Note - The skipped files tab does not show excluded files, or files that were skipped because they exceeded the maximum file size. It only shows files skipped because they exceeded the max. scan time.

2.4. Manage Virus Database Updates

• Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Update'

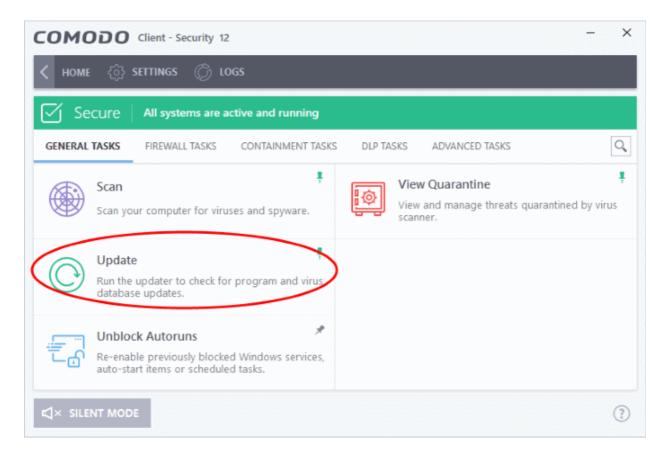
In order to guarantee continued and effective antivirus protection, it is imperative that your virus database is kept up to date. Updates can be downloaded **manually** or **automatically**

Prerequisite - You must be connected to the internet to download updates.

Manually check for the latest virus and program updates



- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks'
- Click the 'Update' tile:



Signature updates are downloaded first if they are available:

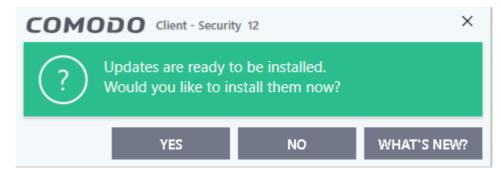
соморо	Jpdate		?	-		×
18%	TASK: Install signatures STATUS: Finalizing					
TASK		STATUS				
Check for sign	nature updates	Completed	ł			
Oownload sig	natures	Completed	ł			
🔿 Install signat	ures	In Progres	is (90.	0%)		
					<u>View l</u>	<u>ogs</u>
PAUSE STOP			SEND	TO BAC	KGROUN	ID

The updater then checks for web filter, VirusScope, and program updates:



соморо	Jpdate	? —	o x
80%	TASK: Check for program updates STATUS:		
TASK		STATUS	
Check for sign	nature updates	Completed	
Ownload sign	natures	Completed	
🔗 Install signatu	res	Completed	
Check for web	osites database updates	Completed	
Check for reco	ognizer updates	Up to date	
Check for pro	ogram updates	In Progress	
			<u>View Logs</u>
PAUSE STOP		SEND TO BACK	GROUND

CCS will ask you to confirm the update at the following dialog:



• Click 'Yes' to begin installation:

You need to restart the computer to complete the update process. You can restart immediately or postpone the restart until later:

COMODO Client - Security 12	?
$\frac{1}{2}$ Restart Computer Your computer needs to be restarted to complete the process	5.
You may choose to restart it now or postpone this to a later time.	
Remind me in:	
30 minutes	
RESTART NOW POSTPON	

Automatic Updates

By default, CCS automatically checks for and downloads database updates. You can modify these settings in **Settings > General Settings > Updates.**

COMODO Advanced	I Settings ? - \Box ×
 General Settings User Interface 	O Updates
Updates	Check for database updates every
Logging	Options
Configuration	Do not check for updates if I am using <u>these connections</u>
✓ Antivirus	Do not check for updates if running on battery
✓ Firewall	Check for updates during Windows Automatic Maintenance
✓ HIPS	Send requests to COMODO online services only if internet connection is present
✓ Containment	Proxy and Host Settings
✓ File Rating	
✓ Advanced Protection	
	0V
	OK CANCEL

You can also configure Comodo Antivirus to download updates automatically before any on-demand scan. See 'Scan Profiles' for more details.



2.5. Manage Blocked Autoruns

Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Unblock Autoruns'

- The 'Unblock Autoruns' area shows applications that were blocked by the boot protection feature of CCS.
- The feature monitors attempted changes to the registry records of Windows services, auto-start entries and scheduled tasks. The feature can be managed in the following locations:
 - **Realtime Scans** Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous' > ' Apply the selected action to unrecognized autorun entries to new/modified registry items'
 - **On-Demand Scans** Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus Settings' > 'Scans' > 'select the scan profile' > 'Options' > 'Apply this action to suspicious auto-run processes'
- CCS will disable apps that attempt to modify protected registry items if 'Terminate and Disable' is chosen for 'Apply this action to suspicious auto-run processes'
- You can also unblock applications that you think are safe.

View and manage blocked autorun items

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks'
- Click the 'Unblock Autoruns' tile
- The interface shows all auto-run items blocked by CCS:

	ecure All	systems are at	tive and running				
GENERAL	TASKS FIR	EWALL TASKS	CONTAINMENT TASK	S DLP TASKS	ADVANCED T	ASKS	
۲	Scan Scan your cor	mputer for virus	es and spyware.	10		hreats quarant	ined by viru:
0	Update Run the upda database upd	ter to check for lates.	F program and virus				
	Unblock Au Re-enable pro auto-start iter		X d Windows services, d tasks.	>			
J× SILE	Re-enable pro	eviously blocked	A Windows services, d tasks.	>			(
	Re-enable pro auto-start iter	eviously blocked	d Windows services, d tasks.	>		? -	
омо	Re-enable pri auto-start iter	eviously blocked ms or scheduled	d Windows services, d tasks. autorun items. You c	an unblock any of t	hem, if you a		
омо	Re-enable pro auto-start iter	eviously blocked ms or scheduled	d tasks.	an unblock any of t	them, if you a		
OM elow is t	Re-enable pro auto-start iter	eviously blocked ms or scheduled lock Autoruns ently disabled a	d tasks.	an unblock any of t			
OM(elow is t Unblock	Re-enable pro auto-start iter ENT MODE	eviously blocked ms or scheduled lock Autoruns ently disabled a Delete All	d tasks. autorun items. You c		Action Y	are sure they a	are safe.

	Unblock Autoruns - Column Descriptions		
Column Header Description			
Name	The label of the blocked item.		
Туре	The category of item. For example, 'Autorun File', 'Scheduled Task' or 'Windows Service'.		
Detected By	The security module which identified the threat.		
Date/Time	When the item was detected.		



Action	The response to the threat. The possible actions are:
	• Ignore
	Terminate
	Terminate and Disable
	Quarantine and Disable
Location	Path of the identified application.

Restore blocked autorun items

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Unblock Autoruns'
- Select the items you want to release
- Click the 'Unblock' button:

сомо	Unb	lock Autoruns				?	- 0	×
Below is t	he list of curre	ntly disabled a	utorun items. You c	an unblock any of	them, if you a	are sure the	y are safe.	
Vnblock	⊘ Delete	⊘ Delete All						
	lame Q	Type 🍸	▲ Detected By ▼	Date/Time	Action 🝸	Location		Q
n n	uWIRE	Autorun File	Autoruns Scanner	1/10/2019 11:06:5	i Disabled	C:\Pro	gram Files (x	86)
	pplication R	Autorun File	Autoruns Scanner	1/11/2019 2:41:54	I Disabled	™ C:\Pro	gram Files (x	86),
	сом	ODO Clie	ent - Security		×			
	(!)	Would you excluded fi	like to add these f les too?	īles to your antīv	irus			
			YE	ES	NO			
					REFR	ESH	CLOSE	

You will be asked if you want to add the file to the Scan Exclusions list.

- Click 'Yes' to add the item to exclusions. It will be restored to its original location and won't be flagged as dangerous by future scans.
- Click 'No' to ignore the item once. It will be restored to its original location, but will still be flagged as a threat by the next scan.

Delete blocked autoruns entries

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Unblock Autoruns'
- Select the items you want to remove
- Click the 'Delete' button

The item will be removed from your computer.



2.6. Manage Quarantined Items

Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'

- The quarantine area shows malicious files which CCS has isolated to prevent them from infecting your system.
- All files in quarantine are encrypted so they cannot run or cause harm.
- Items are usually quarantined by the antivirus scanner, but it is also possible to manually quarantine items.
 See 'General Tasks' > 'Scan and Clean Your Computer' if you want to learn about the AV scanner.

Open the 'Quarantine' interface

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'

\leq	Secure All systems are activ	e and running	
GENER	TAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS C	CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	
	Scan Scan your computer for viruses	and spyware.	/irus
	Update Run the updater to check for produced database updates.	ogram and virus ? — □	>
+ Ad		O V Delete All Submit	
	Item Q	Location Q Date/Time	ť
	Malware@#jgft8m0jxmvk	C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:15 PM	
	Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw	C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:07 PM	
	Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw	C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:02 PM	
	Malware@#1ienpeuxrw2dy	C:\Suspicious\8200755cbedd6f15eec 5/29/2019 3:57:40 PM	
	Malware@#3dno8l4kcvjrs	C:\Suspicious\AntiTest\AntiTest.exe 5/29/2019 3:54:06 PM	
		C:\Users\giri1\AppData\Local\Google 5/29/2019 3:52:56 PM	
	Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw		

- Item The name of the malicious component
- Location The file path of the item
- **Date/Time** When the item was moved to quarantine.

The interface lets you review quarantined files and take the following main actions:

- Permanently delete the file
- Restore the file to its original location
- Submit the file to Comodo Valkyrie for analysis
- Manually add files to quarantine

Search and filter options:

• Click any column header to sort items in alphabetical order of that column.

- Click the search icon in the 'Item' column to search for a file by name.
- Click the search icon in the 'Location' column to search by file-path.
- Click the icon in the 'Date/Time' column to filter results by time period.

+ Add	⊘ I Delete	C Restore	⊘ Delete All	√ Submi	
	Item	Q	Location		Q 🔻 Date/Time
	Malware@#1ljgilj Backdoor.Win32.f		_	cious\po cious\po	 (No filtering) Within last Except last hour(s)
				Géneralmin	 Today Current week Current month Within the period of 05/02/2019 * - 05/02/2019 *

Manually add files to quarantine

Files or folders that you are suspicious of can be manually moved to quarantine:

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'
- Click the 'Add' button at the top
- Navigate to the file you want to add to the quarantine and click 'Open'.



JM	ODO Quar	antine				? —	
+ Add	⊘ Delete	C Restore	⊘ Delete All	Submit			
Y	Item	۹	Location		Q -	Date/Time	
	alware@#1ljgil	p93a2m7	C:\Susp	cious\poison2\s	mb-id9dl67p 5/	2/2019 11:08	:43 A
E 6	Backdoor.Win32.	Rbot.~gen	C:\Susp	cious\poison1\s	mb-b_8ti77 4/	30/2019 2:43	
	Application Wind	A.F.V.GANTOST. A	. CASUSD				
	Dpen						×
	Look in	: opison2			v 🕝 🌶 📂 🛙		
		Name	~	04001244 04001244 04001244 0400	Date modified	Туре	(2092)
		venom			13-10-2014 19:		atic
	Quick access						
	Desktop						
	Libraries						
							a familie
	This PC						and a second
	This PC						
	1	<					>
	Network	File name:	venom			Open	

The file will be added to 'Quarantine'. You can even send the file for analysis to Comodo Valkyrie, for inclusion in the white list or black list, by clicking the 'Submit' button.

Remove a quarantined item

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'
- Select the items in the quarantine interface and click the 'Delete' button at the top.
- Click the 'Delete All' button if you want to permanently remove all quarantined items.
- The files will be deleted from your computer

Restore a quarantined item

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'
- Select the items to be moved back to their original locations and click the 'Restore' button at the top.

COMODO Quarantine		?	-	
+ ⊗ C Add Delete Rest	t ore Delete All Submit			
🔽 Item	Q Location	Q Date,	/Time	Ť
Generic.Infector.4	C:\Users Desktop\x86\vt.exe	4/10/	2017 6:20	:16 AM
		_		
сомор	×			
	Would you like to add these files to your antivirus excluded files too?			
	YES	NO		
	R	EFRESH	c	LOSE

You will be asked if you want to add the item to the Scan Exclusions list:

- 'Yes' The file will be restored to its original location. It will not be flagged as dangerous nor quarantined by future antivirus scans.
- 'No' The file will be restored to its original location. If the file contains malware it will be re-quarantined by the next antivirus scan.

Submit selected quarantined items to Valkyrie for analysis

Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdicting system. After submitting your files, Valkyrie will analyze them with a range of static and dynamic tests to determine the file's trust rating.

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'
- Select the items you want to submit. You can send several files at once.
- Click 'Submit' > 'Submit to Valkyrie' in the top-menu. The files will be immediately sent to Valkyrie for analysis.

Tip: Alternatively, right click an item then choose 'Submit to Valkyrie' from the menu.

 All submitted files are analyzed at Valkyrie. If they are found to be trustworthy, they will be added to the safe list (white-listed). Conversely, if they are found to be malicious then they will be added to the database of virus signatures (blacklisted).

3. Firewall Tasks - Introduction

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- The firewall offers the following main benefits:
 - Monitors all network traffic to protect your computer against inbound and outbound threats
 - Hides your computer's ports from hackers
 - Blocks malicious software from transmitting your confidential data over the internet.
- The firewall tasks area lets you configure internet access rights per-application, stealth your computer ports, view active connections, and even block all traffic in-and-out of your computer.
 - In addition to this tasks screen, you can also configure advanced firewall settings at 'Settings' >



'Firewall'.

COMODO Client - Security 12	- >
K HOME 🔅 SETTINGS 🖒 LOGS	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
Allow Application *	Allow or block connections from other computers in detected networks.
Block Application & Block an application from accessing the internet.	Stop Network Activity Block all network activity to and from this PC.
Stealth Ports Manage this PC's network visibility from other PC's.	View Connections View applications which are connected to the internet.
PC's. ⊄X SILENT MODE	internet.

See the following sections for help with each area:

- · Configure internet access rights for applications
- Stealth your computer ports
- Manage network connections
- Stop all network activity
- View active Internet connections

You might need to enter a password to access these tasks if so configured in the Endpoint Manager profile. See 'Password Protection' for more details."

3.1. Configure internet access rights for applications

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks' > 'Allow Application' or 'Block Application'
- The firewall tasks screen lets you quickly allow or block applications from accessing the internet.

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP	TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
Allow Application Allow an application to connect to the internet.	Manage Networks Allow or block connections from other computers in detected networks.
Block Application Block an application from accessing the internet.	Stop Network Activity Block all network activity to and from this PC.
Stealth Ports Manage this PC's network visibility from other PC's.	View Connections View applications which are connected to the internet.
r⊈× silent mode	(?

Allow an application to connect to the internet

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- Click 'Allow Application'
- Browse to the main executable file of the application
- Click 'Open'
- This will create an 'Allow Request' rule for the application in 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Application Rules'

Block an application's Internet access rights

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- Click 'Block Application'
- Browse to the main executable file of the application
- Click 'Open'.
- This will create a 'Block Request' rule for the application in 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Application Rules'

See 'Application Rules' for more info about creating internet access rules.

Tip: If you plan to regularly allow/block applications, right-click on the appropriate tile then select 'Add to Task Bar'. You can then quickly access the action on the CCS home screen and the widget:



	 Image: A start of the start of	Allow Application Allow an application to co	onnect to the interne	🖈 et.
	8	Block Application		net.
COMODO Client - Secur Client - Secure Secure All systems are active as MANAGE PROTECT) toos	Block Application		

3.2. Stealth your Computer Ports

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks' > 'Stealth Ports'
- Port stealthing is a security feature which hides your ports to the outside world, providing no response to port scanners.

What is a port? Your computer sends and receives data through an interface called a 'port'. There are over 65,000 numbered ports on every computer - with certain ports being traditionally reserved for certain services. For example, your machine almost definitely connects to the internet using ports 80 and 443. Your email application connects to your mail server through port 25. A 'port scanning' attack consists of sending a message to each of your computer ports, one at a time. This information is used by hackers to find out which ports are open, and which ports are being used by services on your machine. With this knowledge, a hacker can determine which attacks are likely to work against your machine.

- Stealthing a port effectively makes your computer invisible to a port scan. This differs from simply 'closing' a port as NO response is given to any connection attempt. A closed port responds with a 'closed' reply, which reveals that there is a PC in existence.
- If a hacker or automated scanner cannot 'see' your computer then they will move on to other targets. You can still connect to the internet and transfer information as usual, but remain invisible to outside threats.

Stealth ports on your computer

• Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'

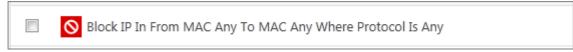


Click 'Stealth Ports'

	COMODO Stealth Ports ? X
	Ports allow your computer to communicate with other computers in a network. By stealthing them, you may configure this computer's visibility to others.
GENERAL TASKS FIREWA	Block Incoming Connections Block all incoming connections and make this PC invisible to all computers
Block Applicat	Alert Incoming Connections Lets you decide when to make this PC invisible on a case basis by showing popup alerts
Block an applicat	on from coessing the internet. Block all network activity to and
Stealth Ports	View Connections
Manage this P PC's.	C's network visibility from other

Block incoming connections - Your computer's ports are invisible to all networks, regardless of whether
you trust them or not. The average home user (using a single computer that is not part of a home LAN) will
find this option the most convenient and secure. You are not alerted when the incoming connection is
blocked, but the rule adds an entry to the firewall event log file. Specifically, this option adds the following
rule in the 'Global Rules' interface:

Block And Log| IP | In| From Any IP Address| To Any IP Address | Where Protocol is Any



If you would like more information on the meaning and construction of rules, please click here.

 Alert incoming connections - You will see a firewall alert every time there is a request for an incoming connection. The alert asks your permission on whether or not you want the connection to proceed. This can be useful for peer-to-peer and remote desktop applications which need to access your ports in order to connect. Specifically, this option adds the following rules in the 'Global Rules' interface:

Block ICMPv4 In From <Any IP Address> To <Any IP Address> Where Message is <Message>



S Block ICMPv4 Out From MAC Any To MAC Any Where ICMP Message Is PROTOCOL UNREACHABLE
Block ICMPv4 In From MAC Any To MAC Any Where ICMP Message Is 17.0
S Block ICMPv4 In From MAC Any To MAC Any Where ICMP Message Is 15.0
S Block ICMPv4 In From MAC Any To MAC Any Where ICMP Message Is 13.0
S Block ICMPv4 In From MAC Any To MAC Any Where ICMP Message Is ECHO REQUEST

If you would like more information on the meaning and construction of rules, please click here.

3.3. Manage Network Connections

Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks' > 'Manage Networks'

- The manage connections interface lets you quickly view all wired and wireless networks to which your computer is connected.
- The lower half of the panel show each network's name, IP address and gateway.
- You can choose to allow or block a connection from this interface

View all network connections

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- Click 'Manage Networks'

12 OMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
Home (ô) settings (Ô) logs	
Secure All systems are active and running	
NERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
Allow Application Allow an application to connect to the interne	Allow or block connections from other combers in detected networks.
Block Application	Stop Network Activity
	? × F9QT (This Computer)
Work #1	Work #2
✓ TRUST NETWORK × BLOCK NETWORK	✓ TRUST NETWORK × BLOCK NETWORK
REFRESH	OK CANCEL

- Use the handles (< >) to scroll through all available networks or computers
- **Trust Network and Block Network** You can allow or ban a network by clicking the appropriate button under the network in question. You will not receive any inbound or outbound traffic from blocked networks.
- **Refresh** Reloads the list with the latest network connections. Click this button if you have recently made network changes that are not yet visible in the interface.
- To view, create or block Network Zones, click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'

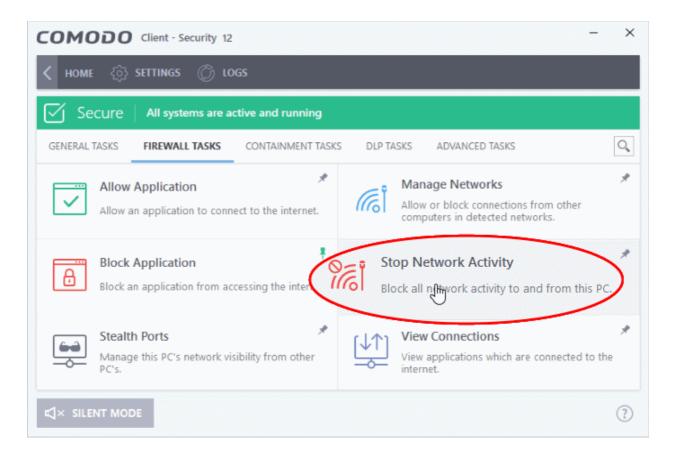
3.4. Stop all Network Activities

Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks' > 'Manage Networks'

- The 'Stop Network Activity' feature terminates all inbound/outbound communication between your computer and outside networks (including the internet).
- Connections will remain closed until you re-enable them by clicking 'Restore Network Activity'.



This lets you quickly take your computer offline without having to delve into Windows network settings, and without unplugging cables.



Manage network activities from your computer:

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- · Click 'Stop Network Activity' to disconnect your computer from all networks
- Click 'Restore Network Activity' to re-enable connectivity



- Restoring activity just re-enables your existing firewall rules. Therefore, any networks that you have previously blocked in 'Manage Network Connections' or 'Network Zones' will remain blocked
- · You can assign networks to network zones in the 'Network Zones' area
- · You can configure rules per network zone in the 'Global Rules' area
- You can view all network connections and enable/disable connectivity on a per-network basis in the 'Manage Network Connections' area



3.5. View Active Internet Connections

Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks' > 'View Connections'

- View connections shows which applications and services currently have an active internet connection.
- You can view the individual connections that each application is responsible for, the direction of the traffic, the source IP/port, and the destination IP/port.
- You can also see the total amount of traffic that has passed in and out of your system over each connection. The list is updated in real time whenever an application opens or drops a connection.
- 'View Connections' is extremely useful when testing firewall configurations or troubleshooting firewall policies and rules. You can also use it to terminate unwanted connections.

View active internet connections on your computer

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- Click 'View Connections'

Tip: You can also get to this screen by clicking the number below 'Inbound' or 'Outbound' in the home screen (advanced view).

Protocol	Source	Destination	Bytes In	Bytes Out
📰 🗏 smartscreer	n.exe [3752]			
	10.108.51.194:57606	23.101.182.153:443	7.5 KB {5.7 K	2.6 KB {2.0
😡 🗏 MyWeather	.exe [7160]			
- TCP OUT	10.108.51.194:57616	23.203.134.90:443	436.0 KB {68	9.8 KB {14
- TCP OUT	10.108.51.194:57623	185.53.178.8:80	0 B	198 B
_ TCP OUT	10.108.51.194:57636	185.53.178.8:80	0 B	198 B {14
🗐 🗏 Evernote.ex	e [1984]			
- TCP OUT	10.108.51.194:57617	35.186.213.138:443	66 B	66 B
- TCP OUT	10.108.51.194:57619	35.186.213.138:443	66 B	66 B

- Protocol The application that is making the connection, the protocol it is using, and the direction of the traffic. Each application may have more than one connection at any time. Click + to expand the list of connections.
- **Source (IP : Port)** The IP address and port number of the origin of the traffic. If the application is waiting for communication and the port is open, it is described as 'Listening'.
- **Destination (IP : Port)** The IP address and port number of the target. This is blank if the 'Source' column is 'Listening'.



- **Bytes In** The total bytes of incoming data since the session started.
- Bytes Out The total bytes of outgoing data since the session started.

Context Sensitive Menu

• Right-click on an item to open the context sensitive menu:

	Source		Destination
ITSMService.e	xe [1664]		
- TCP OUT	10.0.2.15:4	49162	69.4.89.243:4 43
- TCP OUT	10.0.2.	Show Full Path Terminate Connection	5.157.49.4:443
System [4]		Jump to Folder	

- 'Show Full Path' view the location of the application
- 'Terminate Connection' close the application's connection
- · 'Jump to Folder' Open the folder containing the application executable

Identify and kill unsafe network connections

KillSwitch is an advanced system monitoring tool that allows users to quickly identify, monitor and terminate unsafe processes and network connections that are running on their computer. Apart from offering unparalleled insight and control over computer processes and connections, KillSwitch provides you with yet another powerful layer of protection for Windows computers.

Comodo KillSwitch can show *ALL* running processes in granular detail - exposing even those that were invisible or very deeply hidden. You can simultaneously shut down every unsafe process with a single click and can even trace the process back to the parent malware.

Click the 'More' button in the 'View Connections' to directly access Comodo KillSwitch

- TCP OUT	10.0.2.15:49304	54.88.32.157:80	60 B	66 B	
_ TCP OUT	10.0.2.15:49305	178.18.231.91:80	60 B	66 B	

If Comodo KillSwitch is already installed in your computer, clicking 'More' will open the application. If not, CCS will download and install Comodo Killswitch. Once installed, clicking this button in future will open the Killswitch interface.



COMODO Client - Security 12		– ×
Install Required Packages The feature requires installation of ac	dditional packages.	
Package Name	License Agreement	Size
COMODO KillSwitch	View License Agreement	8 MB
By pressing "Agree and Install", you agree with us	er license agreements for all the pa	ckages listed above.
		AGREE AND INSTALL

- Click 'View License Agreement' to read the license agreement
- Click 'Agree and Install' to download and install the application.

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
Install Required Packages The feature requires installation of additional packages.	
Installing COMODO KillSwitch	99 %
	CANCEL

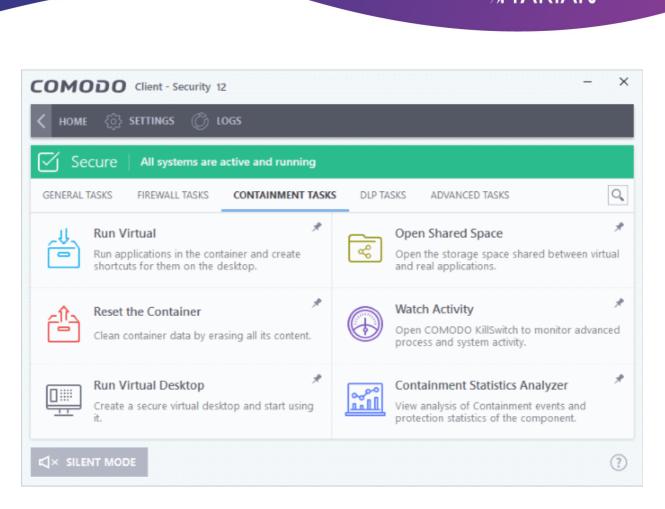
• KillSwitch will open when installation finishes:

Network Connections (54)			😯 <u>Show netw</u>	ork traffic	25	00% (K: 17.00%, U: 8.0
Protocol	Local Address	Local Port Remote Address	Remote Port State	Owner		
🖃 💷 svchost.exe(824)						
– тср	jbvm2	135 jbvm2	Listen	RpcSs		a da da sa A
L TCP6	jbvm2	135 jbvm2	Listen	RpcSs		5556 ⁻ 6777 b
🖃 💽 System(4)						
- тср	jbvm2	139 jbvm2	Listen		~I/O	
- ТСР	jbvm2	49155 192.168.70.39	445 Establis		Rt	0: 122,37 KB, W: 0
- ТСР	jbvm2	445 jbvm2	Listen			
– тср	jbvm2	5357 jbvm2	Listen			
– тср6	jbvm2	445 jbvm2	Listen			
— ТСР6	jbvm2	5357 jbvm2	Listen			
- UDP	jbvm2	137				
L _{UDP}	jbvm2	138				
ITSMService.exe(1664)					Phy	sical Memory
- тср	jbvm2	20777 jbvm2	Listen		48	2.46 MB
- тср	, localhost.cmdm	20777 localhost.cmdm.comodo.net	49173 Establis			
- тср	jbvm2	49162 243.89.4.69.in-addr.arpa	443 Establis			
- тср	jbvm2	49291 ec2-35-157-49-4.eu-central	443 Establis			
- TCP	ibvm2	21185 jbvm2	Listen			
 TCP6 	jbvm2	21185 jbvm2	Listen			
LTCP	jbvm2	49454 ec2-52-59-11-165.eu-centra	443 Establis			
wininit.exe(480)	,				Net	NORK
- тср	ibvm2	49152 jbvm2	Listen		-10	683 B, Out 346 B
L TCP6	jbvm2	49152 jbvm2	Listen			
svchost.exe(984)	,	,				
,,,,,,						
		III				يتركي ويواويه
Network Utilization						

4. Containment Tasks - Introduction

Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks'

- The container is a secure, virtual environment in which you can run unknown, untrusted, and suspicious applications.
- Applications in the container are isolated from the rest of your computer. They are denied access to other processes, write to a virtual file system and registry, and cannot access your personal data.
- This makes it an ideal environment for surfing the internet, because nothing you download can spread to your host system.
- You can run applications in the container on an ad-hoc basis, and you can also create desktop shortcuts to always launch a program in the container.



Note: Containment is not supported on Windows XP or Windows Server 2003

Containment tasks has the following areas:

- Run Virtual Run individual applications in the container.
- Open Shared Space Shared space is a folder which you can access from both your real desktop and the virtual desktop. When in the virtual desktop, save your files in shared space if you want to open them on your host computer.

Background. Applications in the container write to a virtual file system and not your local drive. This prevents them from making potentially malicious changes to your files and folders.

The one exception to this is a folder called 'Shared Space'. This folder can be accessed by both your host operating system and contained programs. Use the folder to share files between your computer and the container.

The folder is located at 'C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Shared Space'.

- Reset Containment Clears all data written by programs inside the container.
- Watch Activity Open Comodo KillSwitch to identify unsafe processes and manage system activity.
- Run Virtual Desktop Start the virtual desktop environment.
- Containment Statistics Analyzer Detailed information about the processes running on your computer. Processes are split into contained and non-contained processes.

You might need to enter a password to access these tasks if so configured in the Endpoint Manager profile. See 'Password Protection' for more details."



4.1. Run an Application in the Container

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual'
- Choose the program you want to run
- Click 'Open'

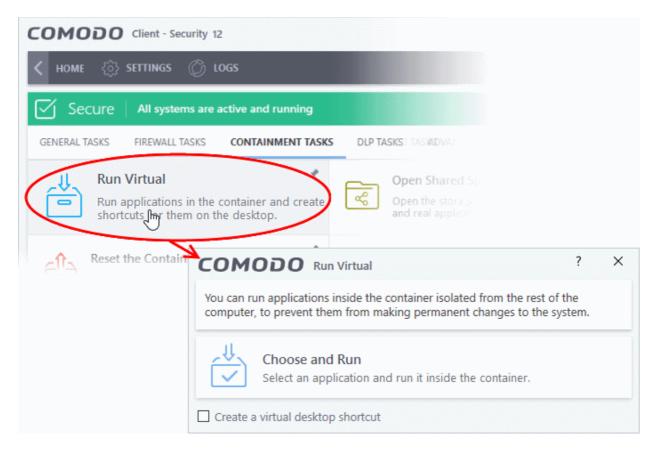
This method above will run the application in the container one-time only. On subsequent executions it will not run in the container. You need to create an **auto-containment rule** if you want it to always run in the container.

You can also create desktop shortcuts to always launch an application in the container:



Run an application in the Container

- Click 'Tasks'> 'Containment Tasks'
- Click 'Run Virtual':

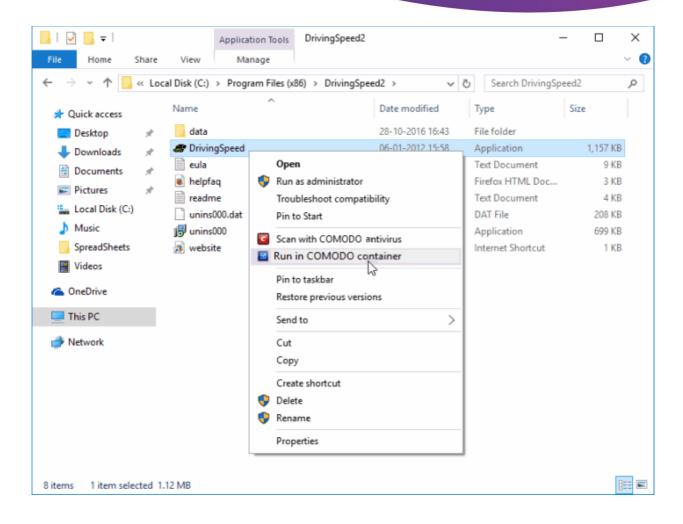


- Click 'Choose and Run', browse to your application then click 'Open'.
- The contained application will have a green border around it. Enable 'Create a virtual desktop shortcut' if you plan to run the application in the container in future.



· -> · · •	, « Pro	gra > DrivingSp	oeed2 →	ٽ ~	Search DrivingSpeed2	م
Drganize 🔻 🛛 N	lew folde					
Quick access	^	Name	^		Date modified	Туре
Desktop	*	data			28-10-2016 16:43	File fold
Downloads	*	🛷 DrivingSpee	ed		06-01-2012 15:58	Applica
Documents		🛃 unins000			28-10-2016 16:42	Applica
Pictures	*	🔊 website			26-08-2007 15:13	Internet
🏪 Local Disk (0	C:)					
👌 Music						
SpreadSheet	ts					
📑 Videos						
🗥 OneDrive						
💻 This PC		<				
		-			-	
		me: DrivingSpee	4	~	Applications (*.exe)	\sim

You can also run an applications in the container from the right-click menu:



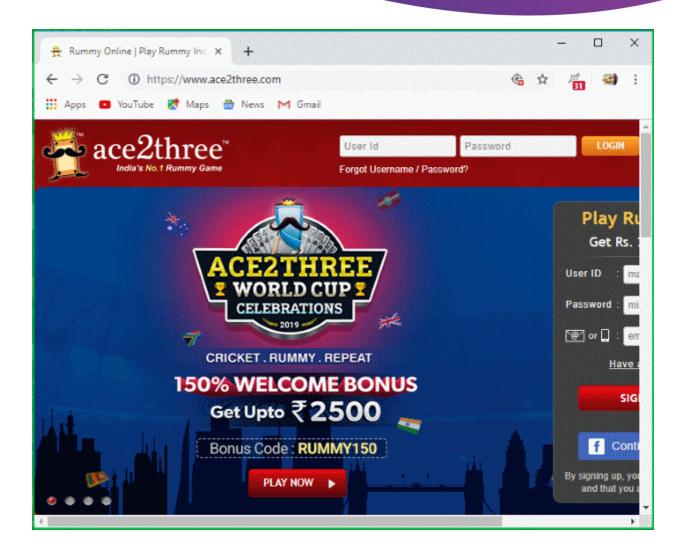
Choose 'Run in Comodo container' from the context sensitive menu

Run browsers in the container

The CCS widget contains shortcuts to run your browsers in the container:



• The green border indicates that the browser is in the container:



Tip: Running a browser in the container deletes all traces of your activities. This includes your browsing history, cookies, and offline data stored by the websites you visit. Virtualization protects your computer from anything malicious that is downloaded. See **The Virtual Desktop** for more details.

Note. You may see an error if an app on the host tries to update itself at the same time as that app is updating itself in the container. This is a classic Windows sharing violation which is shown when an app attempts to write to a file that is already in use. Please shut down the contained version of the app then run the update on the locally hosted version. The contained version will function correctly once the update to the local version is complete.

4.2. Reset the Container

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Reset the Container'
- Programs in the container write all data and system changes to a virtual file system. This means the program cannot harm your computer or sensitive data.
- Files saved in the container could contain malware downloaded from websites, or private data in your browsing history.
- Periodically resetting the container will clear all this data and help protect your privacy and security. If data has accumulated over a long period of time, then a reset will also help the container operate more smoothly.
- The 'Reset the Container' option lets you delete all items saved in the container.



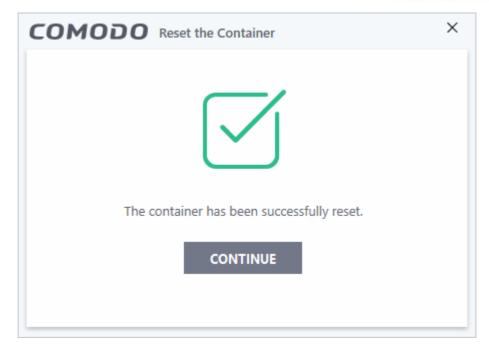
Clear the container

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks'
- Click 'Reset the Container'
- Click 'Erase Changes':

COMODO Client - Security 12	
K HOME දිා SETTINGS 🖉 LOGS	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DL	LP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
Run Virtual Run applications in the container and create shortcuts for them on the desktop.	Open Shared Space Open the storage space shared between write- and real applications.
Clean container data by erasing all its content	Watch Activity Open COMODO KillSwitch to monitor advances process and system activity.
Run Virtual Desictop Create a secure virtual desktop and start using it.	View analysis of Containment events a protection statistics of the
You may reset the container to eradicate all the chapplications.	? ×
Cleans all data saved by the containm	nent module

The contents in the container will be deleted immediately.





• Click 'Continue' to close the dialog.

4.3. Identify and Kill Unsafe Running Processes

• Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Watch Activity'

KillSwitch is an advanced system monitor that lets you identify and terminate any unsafe processes on your computer. Apart from offering unparalleled insight and control over computer processes, KillSwitch provides another powerful layer of protection for Windows computers.

KillSwitch can even show processes that were invisible or very deeply hidden. You can identify all unsafe processes with a single click then quickly shut them down. You can also trace back to the software that generated the process.

Open KillSwitch

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks'
- Click the 'Watch Activity' tile

ျမား ကို settings ကြို logs		
Secure The virus signature datab	ase is NOT up-to-date	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAI	NMENT TASKS DLP TASK	S ADVANCED TASKS
Run Virtual Run applications in the container and shortcuts for them on the desktop.	create 😵 O	Open Shared Space Open the storage space shared between virtua nd real applications.
Clean container data by erasing all its		Vatch Activity Open COMODO KillSwitch to monitor advanced rocess and system activity.
Create a secure virtual desktop and s	tart using	Containment Statistics Analyzer iew analysis of Containment events and rotection statistics of the component.
		1

• If Comodo KillSwitch is already installed in your computer, clicking 'Watch Activity' will open the application. If not, CCS will download and install KillSwitch.

	- ×				
dditional packages.					
License Agreement	Size				
View License Agreement	8 MB				
By pressing "Agree and Install", you agree with user license agreements for all the packages listed above.					
	AGREE AND INSTALL				
	View License Agreement				

- Click 'View License Agreement' to read the license agreement
- Click 'Agree and Install' to download and install the application.

сомо	Client - Security 12		
J	Install Required Packages The feature requires installation of additional packages.		
Installi	ing COMODO KillSwitch	99 %	
		CANCEL	

KillSwitch will open when the installation is over:

•

Processes (57)					<u>.</u>		796, U: 4.68
lame	PID 🔺 Rating	Restriction	Virtualizati	CPU	Working Set User Name		
System Idle Process	0			85.93	4 KB		
 Interrupts 						بوحددي	وينع
III DPCs						a half had at	
L System	4	None	Disabled		132 KB LOCAL_SYSTEM	Processory of the second	MINE Y
 smss.exe 	340 Trusted	None	Disabled		968 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.	c1/0	
Memory Compression	2032				191,372 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.	R+0: 12.55 K8	W: 0
CSTSS.exe	444 Trusted	None	Disabled		3,728 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.		
🗉 💽 wininit.exe	508 Trusted	None	Disabled		4,280 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.	الكلال والالي ا	ويوي
- services.exe	592 Trusted	None	Disabled	3.12	8,324 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.		
svchost.exe	228 Trusted	None	Disabled		68,268 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.		
 WUDFHost.exe 	1164 Trusted	None	Disabled		7,640 KB NT AUTHORITY\LO		کوروک
🖾 💷 TabTip.exe	4924 Trusted	None	Disabled		14,924 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN\		
TabTip32.exe *32	4984 Trusted	None	Disabled		5,892 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN\	Physical Memory	
svchost.exe	716 Trusted	None	Disabled		20,732 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.	13668	
 SearchUllexe 	1788 Trusted	None	Disabled		85,016 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN		
 — #WmiPrvSE.exe *32 	2700 Trusted	None	Disabled		34,092 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.	and the second	
 RuntimeBroker.exe 	3964 Trusted	None	Disabled		19,208 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN\		
 ShellExperienceHost.exe 	4184 Trusted	None	Disabled		54,420 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN\	a service and a	
 — #WmiPrvSE.exe 	4444 Trusted	None	Disabled		9,760 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.		
 ApplicationFrameHost.exe 	4760 Trusted	None	Disabled		20,628 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN\	Lana	
 SystemSettings.exe 	5380 Trusted	None	Disabled		38,952 KB DESKTOP-HI950BN\	Network	
Cavwp.exe	6096 Trusted	None	Disabled		51,888 KB NT AUTHORITY\SY.	15 2.03 KB, Out	108 8
 svchost.exe 	764 Trusted	None	Disabled		11,628 KB NT AUTHORITY\NE		
 svchost.exe 	964 Trusted	None	Disabled		19,880 KB NT AUTHORITY\NE 👻	المتحد المتحد الم	ومحدد
<u> </u>							
Applications (8)					\odot		
						all a second	hannes
Services (558)					(?)	[Later data data data data data data data dat	

• See the KillSwitch guide for help to use the product - http://help.comodo.com/topic-119-1-328-3529-The-Main-Interface.html.

4.4. Open Shared Space

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Open Shared Space'
- Applications in the container are not allowed to write to your local drive for security reasons. Instead, they



write all data, and save all files, to a special folder called 'Shared Space'.

- Files in shared space can also be accessed by non-contained applications (those running as normal on your computer).
- If you want to access files in the container from your local system, then you should download them to shared space.
- The default location of shared space is 'C:/Program Data/Shared Space'

Open shared space

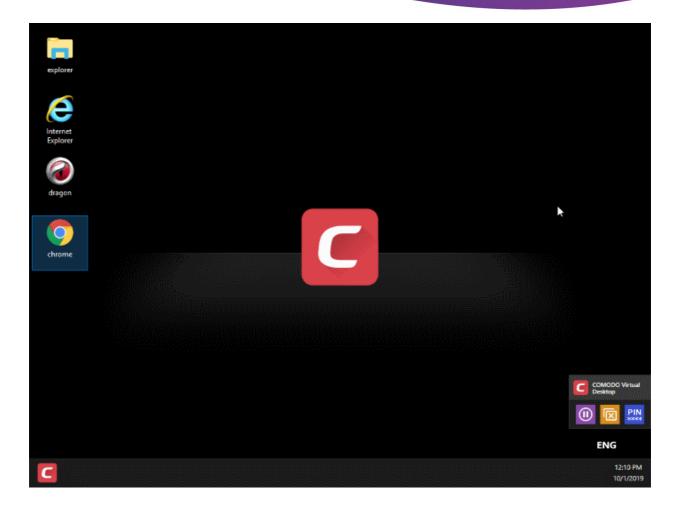
• Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Open Shared Space':

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
K HOME 🔅 SETTINGS 🛞 LOGS	
Secure The virus signature database is NOT up-to-date	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	Q
Run applications in the container and create shortcuts for them on the desktop.	etween virtual
Reset the Container Clean container data by erasing all its content. Watch Activity Open COMODO KillSwitch to more process and system activity.	🖈
Run Virtual Desktop Run Virtual Desktop Create a secure virtual desktop and start using it. Containment Statistics Analy View analysis of Containment ever protection statistics of the components of the comp	nts and
K↓× SILENT MODE	?

4.5. The Virtual Desktop

- Go to 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'
- The virtual desktop is a sandbox environment in which you can run programs and browse the internet without fear those activities will damage your computer.
- Applications in the virtual desktop are isolated from the rest of your computer, write to a virtual file system, and cannot access your personal data.
- This makes it ideal for risk-free internet surfing and for testing out beta/unstable software.





Virtual Desktop at a glance:

- The virtual desktop can run any program that you normally run in Windows. It is ideal for running untested, unknown and beta software. You can also use it to visit websites that you are not sure about.
- Any changes made to files and settings in the virtual desktop will not affect the originals on your host system. Similarly, any changes made by malicious programs or unstable beta software will not damage your real computer.
- Use the 'Shared Space' folder to save any files you want to access from Windows. This folder is the only place that the virtual desktop can write to on the host file system.
- You can also configure virtual desktop to access removable storage devices like USB sticks and external hard disk drives to store data from it.
- The virtual keyboard lets you securely enter confidential passwords without fear of key-logging software.
- The virtual desktop is also ideal for public computers such as those in a library or classroom. Any actions taken by users cannot damage the host computer. The virtual desktop can be reset and all changes cleared at the end of every session.
- The virtual desktop can be password-protected and configured to start automatically at user logon.
- You can create shortcuts on the host desktop to launch applications in the virtual environment.
- You can white-label the virtual desktop with your own company logos in the Endpoint Manager console.
 - See https://community.itarian.com/help/topic-459-1-1005-14932-Communication-Client-and-Comodo-Client---Security-Application-UI-Settings.html for more on this

See the following sections for more help:

- Start the Virtual Desktop
- The Main Interface



- Run Browsers inside Virtual Desktop
- Open Files and Run Applications inside Virtual Desktop
- Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop
- Close the Virtual Desktop

4.5.1. Start the Virtual Desktop

- Click 'Tasks' on the home screen
- Click 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'

You can start the virtual desktop from the home-screen shortcut, from the widget, or from the 'Containment Tasks' screen. You can also configure the virtual desktop to start automatically after you login to Windows.

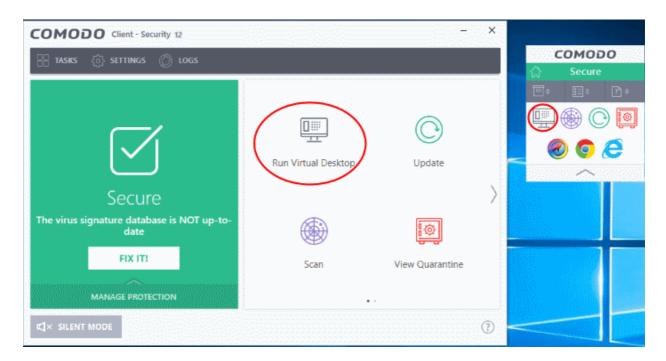
Note. If CCS is in Virtual Desktop mode, you can start the application by simply clicking the desktop shortcut.

See the following sections for more help:

- Open the virtual desktop from CSS or the widget
- Launch the virtual desktop at user logon
- Start the virtual desktop from the containment tasks screen

Start the virtual desktop from CCS or the widget

• Click the virtual desktop icon on the CCS home screen, or on the CCS widget:



Note: The home screen and widget shortcuts are only available if you have added the 'Virtual Desktop' shortcut:

- Click 'Tasks' on the home screen
- Click 'Containment Tasks'
- Right-click on the virtual desktop tile
- Select 'Add to Task Bar'

See 'Add tasks to the home screen' if you need more help with this.



The virtual desktop opens at the **session selection screen**.

Launch the virtual desktop at user logon

- You can configure the virtual desktop to start automatically whenever certain users login to Windows.
- This means the virtual desktop becomes the default operating environment for those users.

Add users

- Click 'Settings' on the home screen
- Click 'Containment ' > 'Virtual Desktop'
- Select the 'Users' tab
- Click 'Add'

	Litermination	T	min(s)
otainment	APPLICATIONS USERS		
d Objects			
	Users for whom Virtual Desktop will be launched as a primary	y working enviror	nment:
	Add Add Memove Reset to Default		
rotection	User or Group	Q Enable	
	Guests		
	Alice		
		v	CANCEL
	0	K	CANCEL
	Select User or Group	×	
	Select this object type:		
	User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types	
	From this location:	_	
	DESKTOP-BGTT5H7	Locations	
	Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):		
		Check Names	
	Advanced OK	Cancel	

- Select the users or groups to whom you want the rule to apply.
 - Type the names of users or groups in the format <domain name>\<user/group name> or

•



<user/group name>@<domain name>.

- Alternatively, click 'Advanced' then 'Find Now' to locate specific users/ groups.
- Click 'OK' to confirm.

-				000000	
-	h				
	User, Group, or Built-in security principal				
From this location:					
DESKTOP-BGTT5	Locations				
Inter the object name	ne to select (<u>examples</u>):		Check Name		
			Check Walle	<u> </u>	
Advanced)	ОК	Cancel		
elect User or Grou	чр			>	
Select this object ty	pe:				
User, Group, or Bui	It-in security principal		Object 1	Types	
From this location:					
DESKTOP-BGTT5	H7		Locati	ons	
Common Queries					
Name: Si	tarts with \sim			Columns	
Description: Si	tarts with 🖂		2	Find Now	
Disabled acc	ounts			Stop	
Non expiring	password				
Days since last l	ogon: 🗸 🗸			\$ 7	
Search results: 🛩			OK	Cancel	
ame	In Folder				
Access Contr	DESKTOP-BGT				
Administrator	DESKTOP-BGT				
Administrators Alice	DESKTOP-BGT DESKTOP-BGT				
Backup Oper	DESKTOP-BGT				
Bob	DESKTOP-BGT				
Cryptographic	DESKTOP-BGT				
DefaultAccount	DESKTOP-BGT				
Device Owners	DESKTOP-BGT DESKTOP-BGT				

The user / user group will be added to the list.

it Settings	Lermination	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
ainment	APPLICATIONS USERS	
Objects		
	Users for whom Virtual Desktop will be launch	ed as a primary working environment:
tection	User or Group	Q Enable
	Guests	
	Alice	
	Bob	
		OK CANCEL

- Repeat the process to add more users.
- Click 'OK' to save your settings
- Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' dialog for your changes to take effect
 - See 'Virtual Desktop Settings' if you need more help with this

The virtual desktop opens at the session selection screen when the selected users log-in.

Start the virtual desktop from the containment tasks screen

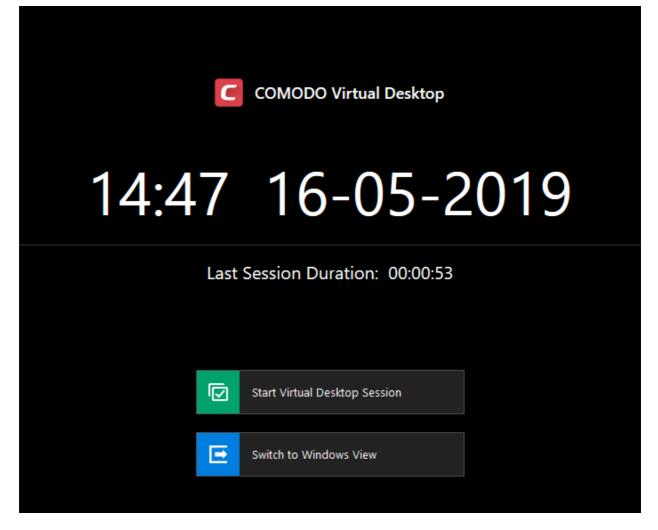
• Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'



COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
🗙 HOME {្រ្ទំ SETTINGS 🕜 LOGS	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
Run Applications in the container and create shortcuts for them on the desktop.	Copen Shared Space * Open the storage space shared between virtual and real applications.
Reset the Container Clean container data by erasing all its content.	Watch Activity Open COMODO KillSwitch to monitor advanced process and system activity.
Run Virtual Desktop Create a secure virtual desktop and start using it.	Containment Statistics Analyzer View analysis of Containment events and protection statistics of the component.
	0

The virtual desktop opens at the **session selection screen**.





- Click the 'Start Virtual Desktop Session' button
- Click 'Accept' at the disclaimer screen to open the virtual desktop.

C Virtual Desktop - Disc	aimer		×
You are about to laun before you continue.	ch new Virtual Desktop s	ession. Please read the f	ollowing carefully
<insert disclai<="" td=""><td>mer text here></td><td></td><td></td></insert>	mer text here>		
	Accept	Decline	

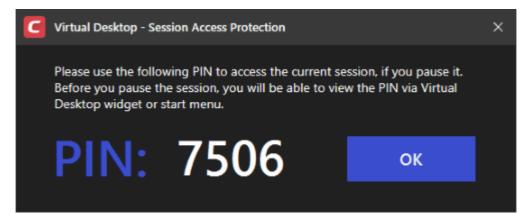
Note: This screen is only relevant for customers who white-label the interface. It can be safely ignored by most customers and end-users.



If you do want to white-label the interface, you can configure the disclaimer message at 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'. You can also disable the disclaimer entirely from there.

See 'Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup' to view help with this. Details on how to white-label CCS are in a wiki article here.

• You will see a four digit access code If session protection is enabled:



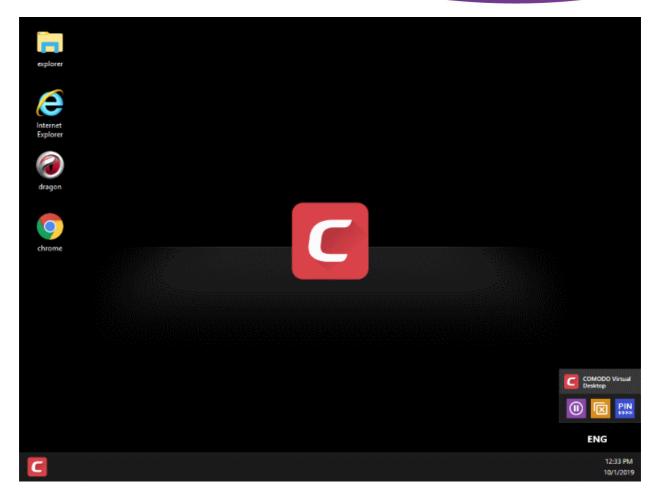
- This feature lets you suspend a virtual desktop session and resume it later without losing any data. The PIN is required to unlock the suspended session.
- Please make a note of the PIN number. See Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop for more details
- Tip: You can view the PIN at any time by clicking the 'Show PIN' icon in the virtual desktop start menu

4.5.2. The Main Interface

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'
- Click the 'Start Virtual Desktop Session' button
- The start menu has application shortcuts, and also lets you pause and close the virtual desktop.
- The start menu has application shortcuts, and also lets you pause and close the virtual desktop.
 - You can add your own application shortcuts and start menu items at 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'.
- The tool box at bottom-right also has controls to pause and close the virtual desktop.



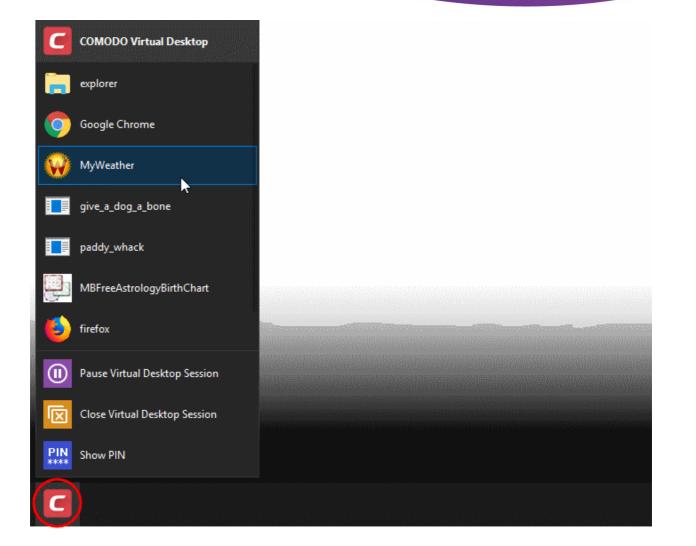




The 'Start' menu

• Click the red 'C' icon to open the start menu:





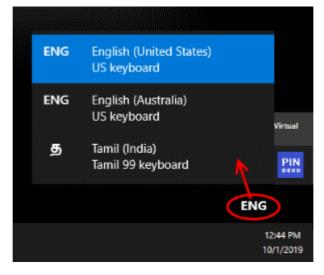
The menu has the following options:

- Browsers and other applications The start menu contains shortcuts for Windows Explorer and the default browser on the endpoint. You can also add shortcuts for other browsers and applications at 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'. See Add applications to virtual desktop in Virtual Desktop Settings for more details.
 - Click an item to open it inside the virtual desktop.
- Pause Virtual Desktop Session Temporarily close the virtual desktop. If PIN protection is enabled, you need the PIN to resume a paused session. See Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop for more details.
- Close the Virtual Desktop Session Exit the virtual desktop and return to Windows. If your virtual desktop is password protected, you have to enter the password to exit. See Close the Virtual Desktop for more details.
- Show PIN Displayed only if PIN protection is enabled for the virtual desktop. Shows the code generated for the current session. This is required to resume a paused session. See Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop for more details.

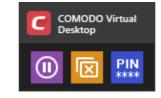
Tools and Taskbar

• **Keyboard language** - Click the language button at bottom-right and select the language of your keyboard.





- Note 1 This list only shows languages that are already enabled in Windows.
- Note 2 You can use Windows 'On-Screen Keyboard' (OSK) as virtual keyboard in virtual desktop.
 - Enable OSK Click the Windows 'Start' button > 'Settings' > 'Ease of Access' > 'Keyboard' > enable 'Use On-Screen Keyboard'.
 - The settings above are for Windows 10. The procedure may vary slightly for other Windows versions.
- Tools Box The tools box at the bottom-right contains controls for pausing and closing the virtual desktop.



- Pauses the virtual desktop session. If PIN protection is enabled, you need the PIN to resume a paused session. See **Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop** for more details.
- Closes the session.
- Displayed only if PIN protection is enabled for virtual desktop. Shows the PIN number generated for the current session. This is required for you to resume a paused session. See **Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop** for more details.

4.5.3. Run Browsers inside the Virtual Desktop

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'
- Click the 'Start Virtual Desktop Session' button
- The virtual desktop provides an extremely secure environment for internet related activities because it isolates your browser from the rest of your computer.
- Just by visiting them, malicious websites can install malware, rootkits and spyware on your computer.
- Surfing the internet from inside the virtual desktop removes this threat by preventing websites from installing applications on your real computer.
- Furthermore, the virtual keyboard lets you securely enter your user-names and passwords without fear of key-loggers recording your keystrokes.

Add browser shortcuts inside the virtual desktop



- The virtual desktop start menu contains a shortcut to your default browser.
- You can add shortcuts for other browsers as follows:
 - Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
 - Click the 'Add' button in the applications section:

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? - D >
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Containment Settings Auto-Containment Protected Objects Virtual Desktop 	Virtual Desktop Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop <u>Create/Change password</u> Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup <u>Edit Disclaimer</u> Protect paused Virtual Desktop session with PIN Duration of paused Virtual Desktop session before its automatic for min(s) APPLICATIONS USERS Applications quickly accessible via Virtual Desktop shortcuts or start menu:
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	+ * C Add Remove Reset to Default Applications C Running Processes C C:\Windows\explorer.exe Image: Complex to the second
	OK CANCEL

- Add a browser as follows:
 - Click 'Add' > 'Applications' > locate the executable file of the browser > click 'OK'.
 OR
 - Start the browser on the host computer
 - Click 'Add' > 'Running Processes' > locate the browser process > click 'OK'.
- Use the 'Desktop' and 'Start Menu' switches to enable/disable each type of shortcut.
- Click 'OK' to save your settings
- Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' dialog for your changes to take effect
- See Add applications to virtual desktop in Virtual Desktop Settings if you need more help on this.

The shortcuts are now available inside the virtual desktop.

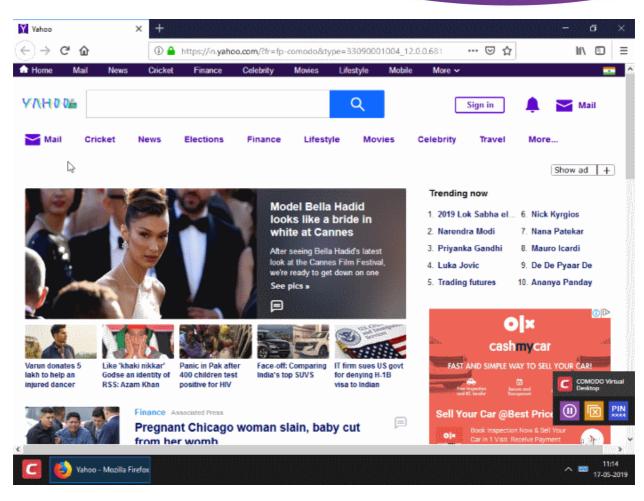
Run browsers inside virtual desktop

• Use the desktop shortcuts or start menu items of the browser that you want to run



COMODO Virtual Desktop	
explorer	
Google Chrome	
MBFreeAstrologyBirthChart	
5 firefox	
Pause Virtual Desktop Session	
Close Virtual Desktop Session	a barren eta erren er An erren eta erren er
PIN ***** Show PIN	

The selected browser will open at its home page.



 Your browsing history and other internet activity are not stored on your computer when you close the session.

4.5.4. Open Files and Run Applications inside the Virtual Desktop

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual Desktop'
- Click the 'Start Virtual Desktop Session' button

Use any of the following methods to run a local program or file in the virtual desktop:

- · Open applications/files from the desktop shortcuts and start menu items
- Navigate to the application/file

Desktop shortcuts and start menu items

- The virtual desktop start menu contains shortcuts to Windows Explorer and your default web browser.
- · You can create other shortcuts in the virtual desktop to open your favorite applications
 - Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
 - Click the 'Add' button in the applications section:



COMODO Advanced	d Settings ? —		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Containment Settings Auto-Containment Protected Objects 	Virtual Desktop Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop <u>Create/Change password</u> Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup <u>Edit Disclaimer</u> Protect paused Virtual Desktop session with PIN Duration of paused Virtual Desktop session before its automatic <u>for</u> APPLICATIONS USERS	* min	ı(s)
Virtual Desktop Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Applications quickly accessible via Virtual Desktop shortcuts or start menu:	Menu	
	ок са	ANCEL	

- Add an application as follows:
 - Click 'Add' > 'Applications' > navigate to the file OR
 - Start the application on the host computer
 - Click 'Add' > 'Running Processes'
 - Select the application's process and click 'OK'
- Use the 'Desktop' and 'Start Menu' switches to enable/disable each type of shortcut.
- Click 'OK' to save your settings
- Click OK in the 'Advanced Settings' dialog for your changes to take effect
- See Add applications to virtual desktop in Virtual Desktop Settings if you need more help on this.

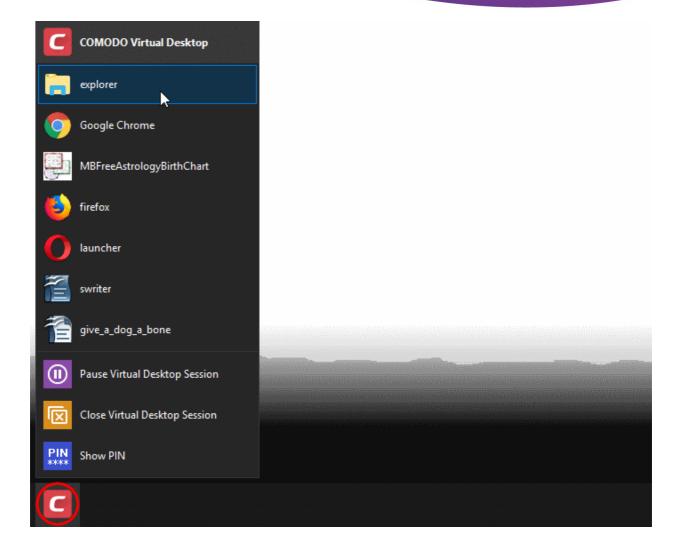
The shortcuts are now available inside the virtual desktop.

- Use the desktop shortcuts or the start menu items to open the application / file.
- Changes made in the virtual desktop are not be saved to the host system.

Navigate to Application / File

• Click the 'C' button at bottom-left, then 'explorer'





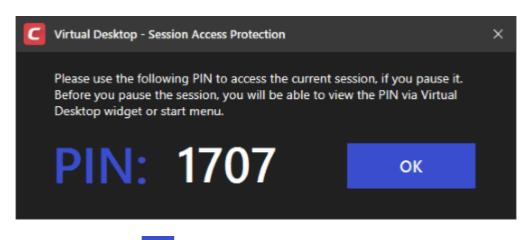
• Navigate to the application / file and open it. The file will open in the virtual desktop.

I I I File Home Share	Application Tools M	B Free Astrology Birth Chart		- 🗆 ×
Rin to Quick Conv. Paste	🖌 Cut 🙀 Move to 🗸	× Delete ▼ ■ Rename ze New	Properties Open • Properties Open Open	Select all Select none Invert selection Select
← → × ↑ 📙 « Pro	ogram Files (x86) > MB Free Astrolog	gy Birth Chart	✓ Ö Search MB F	ree Astrology Birt 🔎
old man files \land	Name	Date modified	І Туре	Size
Share Suspicious System32	🕮 birthchart 🚳 Bmp2Jpeg.dll 📄 INSTALL	16-07-2007 07 16-07-2000 16 12-04-2019 14	20 Application exter	3 KB ns 182 KB 4 KB
	MBFreeAstrologyBirthChart	12-04-2019 14		3,016 KB
 OneDrive This PC 3D Objects Desktop Documents Downloads Music Pictures Videos 	🞲 Unwise	17-03-2010 15	23 Application	500 KB
Local Disk (C:) 5 items 1 item selected 2	2.94 MB			

• The changes made will not be saved to your real Windows system.

4.5.5. Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop

- You can pause a virtual desktop session and resume it at a later time without data loss.
- If pause PIN protection is enabled, you will need to enter a (randomly generated) 4-digit number to resume the virtual desktop.
 - Other users of the computer cannot resume the paused session without knowing the PIN.
 - The PIN is auto-generated for every session and is shown at start up:



- Click 'Show PIN' PIN' in the start menu / tools box to view the number at any time.
- See Secure virtual desktop sessions with a PIN in Virtual Desktop Settings for more details on configuring PIN protection for virtual desktop



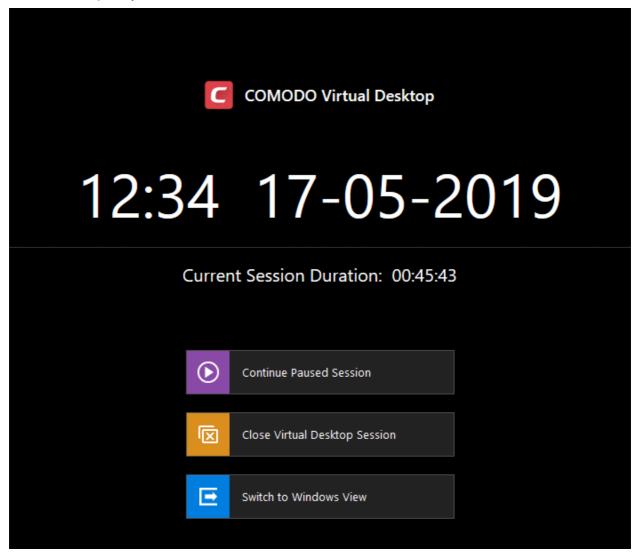
Pause a virtual desktop session

• Click the 'Pause' button in the tools box at the bottom-right



• Alternatively, click the 'C' button at bottom-left, then 'Pause Virtual Desktop Session'

The session temporarily closes:



- Click 'Switch to Windows View' if you want to open your real Windows system.
- If password protection is enabled, you will be asked to enter the exit password for the virtual desktop.



COMODO Enter password		
Password:		
	ОК	CANCEL

Enter the password and click 'OK'

The virtual desktop tool box is shown at the bottom-right corner of the screen:

			COMODO V Desktop	irtual PIN ****
貯	口")	ENG	12:40 17-05-2019	8

The box contains the following controls:

•

- Returns to the paused virtual desktop session



- Closes the paused desktop session. See Close the Virtual Desktop for more details.

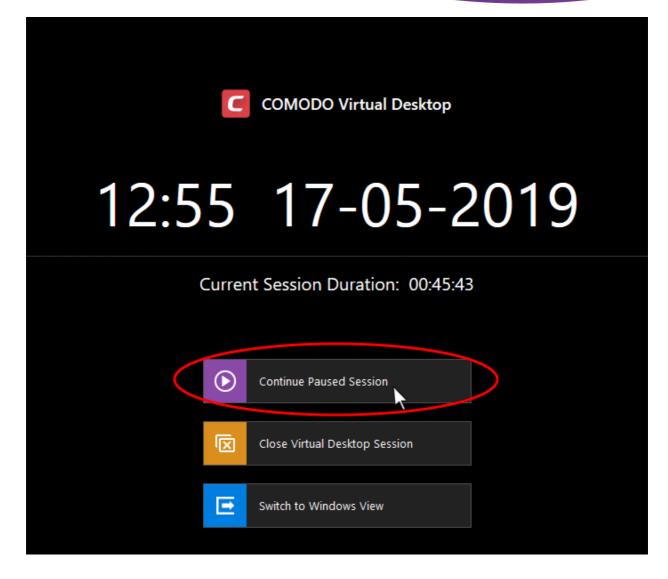


- Only shown if PIN protection is enabled. Click to view the PIN for the current session.

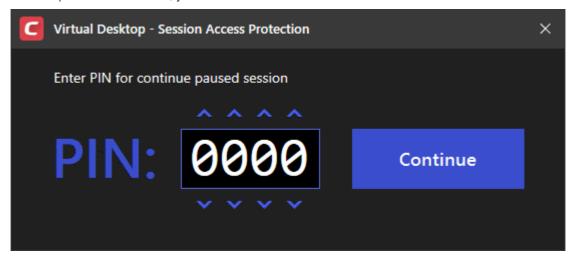
Resume a paused virtual desktop session

• Click the return icon the to re-open the virtual desktop:





- Click 'Continue Paused Session'
- If PIN protection is enabled, you will be asked to enter the PIN:



- Enter the PIN you noted down during the start of the session and click 'Continue'
- If PIN protection is not enabled, you will be directly taken to your virtual desktop.

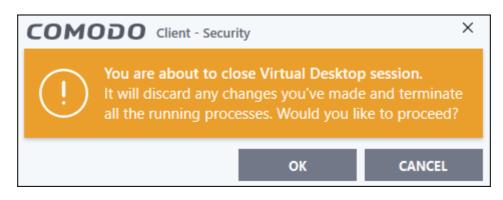


4.5.6. Close the Virtual Desktop

• Click the 'Close' button in the tools box at bottom-right:

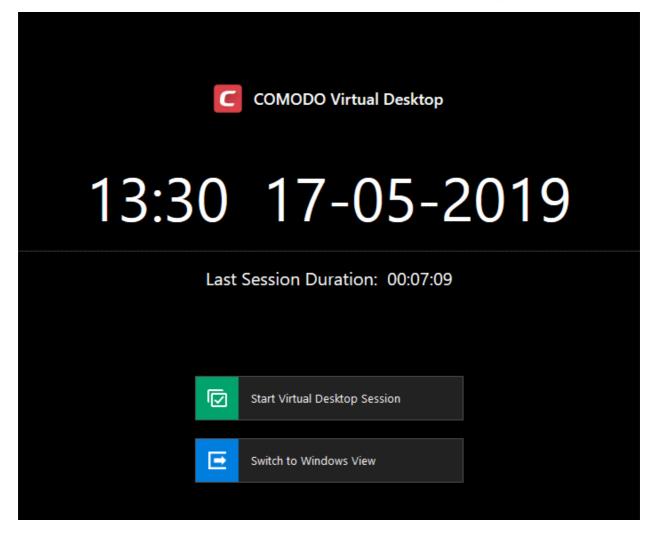


• Alternatively, click the 'C' button at bottom-left then select 'Close Virtual Desktop Session'.



- Click 'OK' to confirm
- You will return to the virtual desktop start screen:

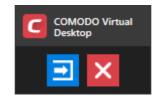




- Click 'Start Virtual Desktop Session' to open a new session
- Click 'Switch to Windows View' to return to the host desktop
- · You will need to enter an exit password if password protection has been enabled:

COMODO Enter password			×
Password:			
		ОК	CANCEL

- Enter the password and click 'OK'
- The virtual desktop tools box is displayed at the bottom-right corner of your Windows screen.





🛃 to return to the virtual desktop and start a new session

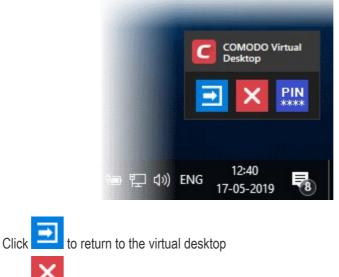




to completely close the virtual desktop

Terminate a paused virtual desktop session

When a virtual desktop session is paused, it shows the tools box at the bottom-right of your Windows screen.



- Click to completely close the virtual desktop
- Enter password if configured in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop' > 'Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop'
- Click 'OK'.

4.6. Containment Statistics Analyzer

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Containment Statistics Analyzer'
- The containment statistics area lets you view the activities of processes on your computer and those in the container.

Open Containment Statistics Analyzer

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks'
- Click the 'Containment Statistics Analyzer' tile

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
HOME 🔅 SETTINGS 🗭 LOGS	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASK	S DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
Run Virtual Run applications in the container and create shortcuts for them on the desktop.	Open Shared Space Open the storage space shared between virtual and real applications.
Reset the Container Clean container data by erasing all its content.	Watch Activity Open COMODO KillSwitch to monitor advanced process and system activity.
Create a secure virtual desktop and start us	Containment Statistics Analyzer View analysis of Containment events and protect statistics of the component.
r⊈× silent mode	?

CCS will install the analyzer if it is not yet on your system:

•

COMODO Client - Security 12		– ×
Install Required Packages The feature requires installation of ac	lditional packages.	
Package Name	License Agreement	Size
Containment Stats Analyzer	View License Agreement	1 MB
By pressing "Agree and Install", you agree with use	er license agreements for all the pa	ckages listed above.
		AGREE AND INSTALL

- Click 'View License Agreement' to read the license agreement
- Click 'Agree and Install' to download and install the application.

COMODO Client - Security 12	– ×
Install Required Packages The feature requires installation of additional packages.	
Installing Containment Stats Analyzer	77 %
	CANCEL

• The main interface opens when installation is complete:

OMODO						-	
SECURED/VALIDATED)			CONTAINMENT			
VOUR PC							٦
> All Processes • svchost.exe(96) • smss.exe(316)				All Processes			
 csrss.exe(404) wininit.exe(472) 	FILES	P	2127		VIRTUAL HD		D
 csrss.exe(484) winlogon.exe(560) services.exe(596) 	REGISTRY		49377		REGISTRY		
 Isass.exe(604) svchost.exe(692) 	СОМ	Ø	32422		СОМ	۲	
 fontdrvhost.exe(704) fontdrvhost.exe(712) 	IMA	O	21294		IMA	٩	
 svchost.exe(780) SandboxStat.exe(792) dwm.exe(880) 	APIs	0	325		APIs	٢	
• svchost.exe(900)							

- · Processes running on your host computer are shown on the left
- Process running in the container are shown on the right.
- Click a process to view its child processes and resource usage:.
 - Files Number of files accessed by the process
 - Registry Number of registry keys accessed by the process
 - COM The inter-process component object model (COM) interfaces used by the process
 - IMA Other processes, to which the selected process performs write operation

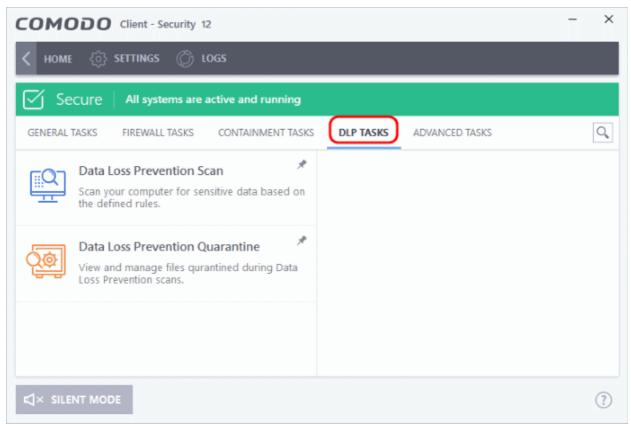
APIs - The protected API's accessed by the process

5. DLP Tasks - Introduction

Click 'Tasks' > 'DLP Tasks'

•

- Data loss prevention scans let you identify documents which contain confidential information. For example, documents which contain credit card numbers, social security numbers, bank account numbers etc.
- DLP scans are run by selecting the DLP discovery rules active on your device
- Each rule defines the areas to scan, the type of information to search for, and the action to take on discovered files.
- The 'DLP Tasks' area lets you run on-demand DLP discovery scans and view the files quarantined by DLP rules.



See the following sections for help to:

- Run Data Loss Prevention Scans
- Manage DLP Quarantined Files

5.1. Run Data Loss Prevention Scans

Click 'Tasks' > 'DLP Tasks' > 'Data Loss Prevention Scan'

- Data loss prevention (DLP) scans let you identify documents on your computer which contain sensitive information. Example sensitive data includes credit card numbers, bank account numbers, social security numbers and so on.
- You can select the discovery rules to run a scan
- Each rule defines the areas to scan, the type of information to search for, and the action to take on discovered files. The possible actions are:

- Ignore The file is retained in its original location. But you can view the identified file from the logs
- Quarantine The file is moved from its original location to a secure holding area. Users cannot open quarantined files. You can review quarantined files by clicking 'Data Loss Prevention Quarantine' in the 'DLP Tasks' interface. See Manage DLP Quarantined Files for more details.
- Your Endpoint Manager admin should have first created a DLP discovery rules in EM portal and added them to the EM profile active on your device. See **DLP Discovery Rules** to view the rules available on your device.

This section explains how to run a DLP scan and view the results:

- Run a DLP scan
- View scan results

Run a Data Loss Prevention Scan

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'DLP Tasks' > 'Data Loss Prevention Scan'

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
< Home (ភ្នំ) Settings (្រ្វី Logs	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	Q
Data Loss Prevention Scan Scan your computer for sensitive data based on the defined rules.	
View and manage files qurantined during Data Loss Prevention scans.	
⊄J× SILENT MODE	(?)

The scan interface shows all rules added to your device by the EM profile active on your device.



сомо	DD DLP Discovery Scan	? – 🗆 X
Start	E Stop	
Action	Rules	Last Scan
	Bank Number rule	Never
	Acc No. Rule	1/29/2020 2:54:48 PM
	CC Rule	1/28/2020 3:50:09 PM
	IBAN rule	1/28/2020 3:50:22 PM
		CLOSE

Action - Start and stop scans using a particular rule.

Rules - The label of DLP rule

Last Scan - Date and time of the most recent DLP scan

• Click the 'Start' button at the top to run all rules at once



OR

• Use the start buttons on the left to run a scan with a specific rule.



сомо	DD DLP Discovery Scan	? – 🗆 X
Start	■ Stop	
Action	Rules	Last Scan
	Bank Number rule	1/29/2020 4:03:58 PM
	Acc No. Rule	1/29/2020 4:04:02 PM
	CC Rule	1/29/2020 4:04:03 PM
ALL STREET		1/29/2020 4:04:08 PM

- CCS runs the selected scans
- After the scan is started, you can pause, resume or stop the scan

Next, view results of the scan

View DLP Scan Results

You can view DLP scan results in the logs section.

• Click 'Logs' at the top of the CCS interface:

соморо	Client - Security 1	2			-	×
🗙 номе {ွိ}	SETTINGS 🕜 L	ogs				
🗹 Secure	All systems are	active and running				
GENERAL TASKS	FIREWALL TASKS	CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS	ADVANCED TASKS		Q,
(6)	e Rescue Disk a bootable CD or U	📌 S8 Flash Drive to		an Endpoint COMODO Cleaning Essenti	əls tool to cle	× an

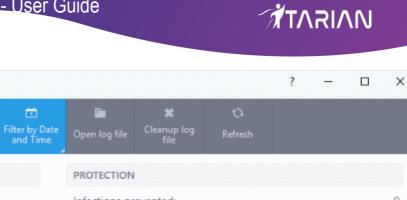
• Select 'Data Loss Prevention Events' from the first drop-down:

•

COMODO View Logs - Today

Events Summary

Events Summary



Antivirus Events VirusScope Events		PROTECTION	
Firewall Events		Infections prevented:	0
HIPS Events		Unknown programs detected:	0
Containment Events		1 5	
Website Filtering Events		Suspicious activities blocked:	0
Device Control Events		Network activities blocked:	0
Autoruns Events			
Alerts		CLOUD LOOKUP OF UNKNOWN FILES	
Tasks			
File List Changes		Good files detected:	0
Vendor List Changes	0.0%	Bad files detected:	0
Configuration Changes		Submitted files:	0
Virtual Desktop Events Data Loss Prevention Events			· ·
THES EVENUS		UPDATES	
Containment Events		Last update:	1/29/2020 3:09:33 PM
VirusScope Events			
 Firewall Events 		Program version:	12.0.0.7959

CLOSE

HOW Data Loss Prevention	▼ Advan Events ▼ Filte	ced Filter by Da		X Cleanup log file	Export	C Refresh		
Date & Time	Target	Rule Name	Rule Type	Action	Status	Details		
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUN	NE_??_USBS	то
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUN	ME_??_USBS	то
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUN	ME_??_USBS	то
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUN	ME_??_USBS	то
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\Deskto	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Target The item affected by the rule.



- DLP Monitoring event Shows the type of external storage device to which the data transfer attempt
 was made
- DLP Discovery event Shows the file path of the identified file
- **Rule Name** The DLP rule that found the target item. This could be a DLP discovery rule or a monitoring rule.
- Rule Type Whether rule is a DLP discovery rule or a removable storage rule
- Action How the file was handled in the DLP event. The possible values are:
 - Ignore
 - Quarantine
 - Restore from quarantine
 - Delete from quarantine
 - Blocked
- Status Shows whether the rule executed successfully or not
- Details The specifics of the data found.
 - DLP monitoring rule Shows the removable storage device affected by the rule.
 - DLP Discovery rule Has a 'Show details' link which opens the specifics of the event. See View file details for more details.

Advanced Filter - Search the logs by file location, rule or action. Use the advanced filter options to filter the logs of discovery events.

Filter by Date and Time - Search for logs generated within a specific time-frame

Open log file - Browse to and view a saved log file.

Cleanup log file - Delete the selected event log

Export - Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'

Refresh - Reload the current list to show the latest logs

View file details

• Click the 'Show details' in the 'Details' column:

COMODO Vie	w Logs - Today					?	_	>
HOW Data Loss Prevention I	▼ Advan Events ▼	ced Filter by Da	te Open log file	X Cleanup log file	9 Export	C) Refresh		
Date & Time	Target	Rule Name	Rule Type	Action	Status	Details		
5/22/2020 4:07:12 PM	C:\Users\girid\Deskto	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details)	
5/22/2020 4:07:12 PM	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		
5/22/2020 4:07:12 PM	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details		
		og Details			?	×		
		-						
	File Name: Secret Number	ers.txt						
	Date:			5/22	/2020 4:07:12 P	M		
	Rule Name:			Files	with CC numbe			
	Action Status				Quaranti Succe			
	File Hash (SHA-1):		4B6E669C7ED0909	962344EC7B4	066AFDBE22BE	07		
	Pattern		Match		Count			
	Credit Card Numbe	er	4***1		1			
	Credit Card Numbe	۶r	4***7		1			
	Credit Card Numbe	er	4***3		1			
	Credit Card Numbe	er	4***4		1			
					CLOSE			

- The screen shows the name of the file, and the rule/pattern which discovered sensitive data in the file.
- The 'match' column shows the first and last characters of the actual discovered data. The option to show this should be enabled in the discovery rule.

5.2. Manage DLP Quarantined Files

Click 'Tasks' > 'DLP Tasks' > 'Data Loss Prevention Quarantine'

• The DLP quarantine area shows files which CCS has isolated because they contain sensitive data. CCS quarantined these files because it was told to do so by a DLP scan rule.



신 .	Data Loss Prevention Scan Scan your computer for sensitive data based on the defined rules.
	Data Loss Prevention Quarantine
	View and manage files qurantined during Data Loss Prevention scans.
ON	1000 Data Loss Prevention Quarantine ? - \Box ×
C) Rest	
	Location Q Detected By Q Date/Time i Details
	E:\CC\CC Details.txt DLP Discovery Scan 2/18/2020 2:01:29 PM Files with CC
	C:\Users\comodo\AppData\Local\G DLP Discovery Scan 2/18/2020 1:40:42 PM Files with CC

- Location The path of the detected file
- **Detected By** This version of CCS only supports quarantine by DLP discovery scans. More to come in future versions.
- Date / Time When the item was moved to quarantine.
- Details The name of the discovery rule that quarantined the file

The interface lets you review quarantined files and take the following actions:

Delete the quarantined item

Select the items in the quarantine interface and click the 'Delete' button at the top.

Click 'Delete All' if you want to remove all quarantined items.

Restore the quarantined item

Moves the items back to their original location. Select the items you want to move then click the 'Restore' button.

Click 'Restore All' if you want to reinstate all quarantined items.

Click 'Close' to exit the screen.

6.Advanced Tasks - Introduction

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks'
- Advanced tasks lets you view event logs, manage CCS tasks, and take advantage of several other Comodo utilities.

сомор	Client - Security 12	- ×
< номе {ွိ	} settings () logs	
Secure	All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS	FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
(Crea	ate Rescue Disk te a bootable CD or USB Flash Drive to a up heavily infected PC's.	Clean Endpoint Run COMODO Cleaning Essentials tool to clean persistent infections.
SE Oper	en Task Manager n the task manager to view running security s in progress.	View Active Processes View the details of the processes active on this computer.
112	v Logs	Submit Files * You can submit as many files as you wish to COMODO for analysis.
	ODE	(?

See the following sections to find out more about each feature:

- Create Rescue Disk Burn a bootable ISO that lets you run virus scans in pre-boot environments
- Task Manager Stop, pause and resume currently running CCS tasks like antivirus scans and updates
- Clean Endpoint Deploy Comodo Cleaning Essentials to remove persistent infections from your PC
- View Active Process List Manage processes which are currently running on your PC. Click the 'More' button to open Comodo KillSwitch.
- CCS Logs View the event logs of firewall, antivirus, containment and HIPS modules
- Submit Files Upload unknown/suspicious files to Comodo Valkyrie for analysis

You might need to enter a password to access these tasks if so configured in the Endpoint Manager profile. See 'Password Protection' for more details."

6.1. Create a Rescue Disk

Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Create Rescue Disk'

Comodo Rescue Disk (CRD) is a bootable disk image that lets you run virus scans in a pre-boot environment (before Windows loads). CRD runs Comodo Cleaning Essentials on a lightweight distribution of the Linux operating system. It is a powerful virus, spyware and root-kit cleaner which works in both GUI and text mode.

- CRD can eliminate infections that are preventing Windows from booting in the first place.
- The application is useful for removing malware which has embedded itself so deeply that regular AV

software cannot remove it.

- CRD contains tools to explore files in your hard drive, take screen-shots and browse web pages.
- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Create Rescue Disk' to download and burn to ISO, CD/DVD, USB or another drive. See **Download and Burn Comodo Rescue Disk** for a walk-through of this process.

сомодо	lient - Security 12	
< номе <ე́} s	TTINGS 🕝 LOGS	
🗹 Secure	All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS	IREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	
(() Create	Rescue Disk a bootable CD or USB Flash Drive to b hearby infected PC's. Clean Endpoint Run COMODO Cleaning Essentials tool to clean persistent infections. Clean Endpoint Run COMODO Cleaning Essentials tool to clean	
Open T	Sk Manager View Active Processes ? - X	
tasks in	Bootable CD/DVD or USB Rescue Disk The rescue disk ISO image is required to create a bootable disk.	
	1 Select ISO File (Optional) If you have already downloaded the ISO file, click here to choose it. Otherwise it will be downloaded from the internet.	
	2 Select Target Drive Select where the rescue disk should be created e.g. a USB drive or a writable CD/DVD drive.	
	3 Start If you have selected the target drive, start burning process now.	

After you have burned the ISO, you need to boot your system to the rescue disk. This will open the scanner in your pre-boot environment.

- Change the boot order on your computer http://help.comodo.com/topic-170-1-493-5227-Changing-Boot-Order.html
- Start using CRD http://help.comodo.com/topic-170-1-493-5228-Booting-to-and-Starting-Comodo-Rescue-Disk.html
- Run scans on your pre-boot environment http://help.comodo.com/topic-170-1-493-5216-Starting-Comodo-Cleaning-Essentials.html and http://help.comodo.com/topic-170-1-493-5217-CCE-Interface.html

6.1.1. Download and Burn Comodo Rescue Disk

- Click 'Advanced Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Create Rescue Disk':



HOME {ૢ} S	iettings 🕼 logs
🗹 Secure	All systems are active and running
GENERAL TASKS	FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS
() Create	e Rescue Disk a bootable CD or USB Flash Drive to up hed by infected PC's. Clean Endpoint Run COMODO Cleaning Essentials tool to clean persistent infections.
Open T Open the tasks in	Ask Manager View Active Processes COMODO Rescue Disk Bootable CD/DVD or USB Rescue Disk The surger dial ICO images is required to exact a bootable dial
	$\left(\begin{array}{c} \Psi \end{array} \right)$ The rescue disk ISO image is required to create a bootable disk.
	The rescue disk ISO image is required to create a bootable disk. 1 Select ISO File (Optional) If you have already downloaded the ISO file, click here to choose it. Otherwise it will be downloaded from the internet.
	Select ISO File (Optional) If you have already downloaded the ISO file, click here to choose it.

The setup screen shows the steps to create a new rescue disk:

Step 1- Select the ISO file

Optional. If you have already downloaded the rescue disk ISO from Comodo then please select it here. If you haven't yet downloaded then please ignore this step - it will be downloaded automatically during Step 3.

Step 2 - Select target drive

Select the CD/DVD or USB on which you want to burn the rescue disk. You will boot to this disk to run the antivirus product.

Burn to CD or DVD

- Label a blank CD or a DVD as "Comodo Rescue Disk Bootable" and load it in your CD/DVD drive.
- Click 'Select Target Drive' in the 'Rescue Disk' then choose the drive in the 'Select Target Drive' dialog
- Click 'OK'

СОМ	IODO Rescue Disk	? – ×
(© +	Bootable CD/DVD or USB Rescue The rescue disk ISO image is required	
1 [Select ISO File (Optional) If you have already downloaded Otherwise it will be downloaded	the ISO file, click here to choose it. from the Internet.
2	Select Target Drive Select where the rescue disk sho writable CD/DVD drive.	uld be created e.g. a USB drive or a
_		
	COMODO Select Target Driv	re ? ×
	Disk	Туре
<	D:\	CD\DVD RW Drive
	E:\	Removable Disk
		OK CANCEL

Burn to a USB drive

- Insert a formatted USB stick in a free USB port on your computer
- Click 'Select Target Drive' in the 'Rescue Disk' dialog
- Select the drive from the 'Select Target Drive' dialog and click 'OK'

СОМ	IODO Rescue Disk		?	-	×
	Bootable CD/DVD or USB Rescue D The rescue disk ISO image is required to		isk.		
1 [Select ISO File (Optional) If you have already downloaded the Otherwise it will be downloaded fro	ISO file, click here t m the Internet.	o choo	se it.	
2	Select Target Drive Select where the rescue disk should writable CD/DVD drive.	be created e.g. a U	SB driv	e or a	>
3	COMODO Select Target Drive		?	×	
	Disk	Туре			
	D:\	CD\DVD RW Dri	ive		
<	E:\	Removable Disk			>
		ок с	ANCEL		

Step 3 - Burn the Rescue Disk

- Click 'Start'
- If you selected a local ISO in step 1 then burning will start immediately. If not, the ISO will be downloaded from Comodo servers:



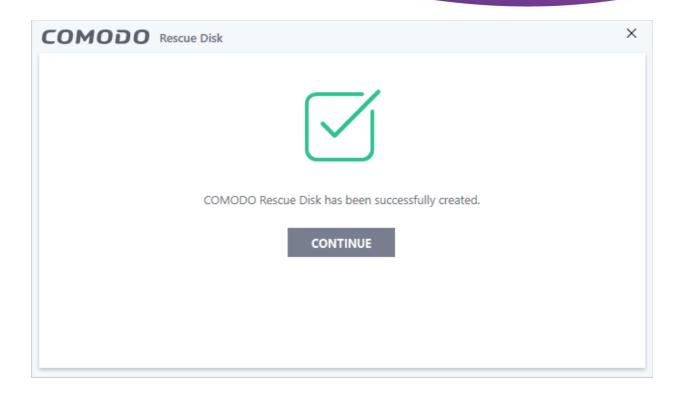
COMODO Client - Security 12	-	×
Install Required Packages The feature requires installation of additional packages.		
Downloading COMODO Rescue Disk		
		_
	CANC	EL

After downloading, setup will burn the ISO to your target drive:

COMODO Rescue Disk	×
Writing Rescue Disk ISO image	79%

• Wait until the write process is complete - do not eject the CD/DVD/USB drive early. The CD/DVD/USB will be ejected automatically once the burning process is finished.





Your bootable Comodo Rescue Disk is ready.

• Click 'Continue' to go back to the CCS interface

6.2. Remove Deeply Hidden Malware

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Clean Endpoint'
- Comodo Cleaning Essentials (CCE) help users identify and remove malware and unsafe processes from infected computers.

Major features include:

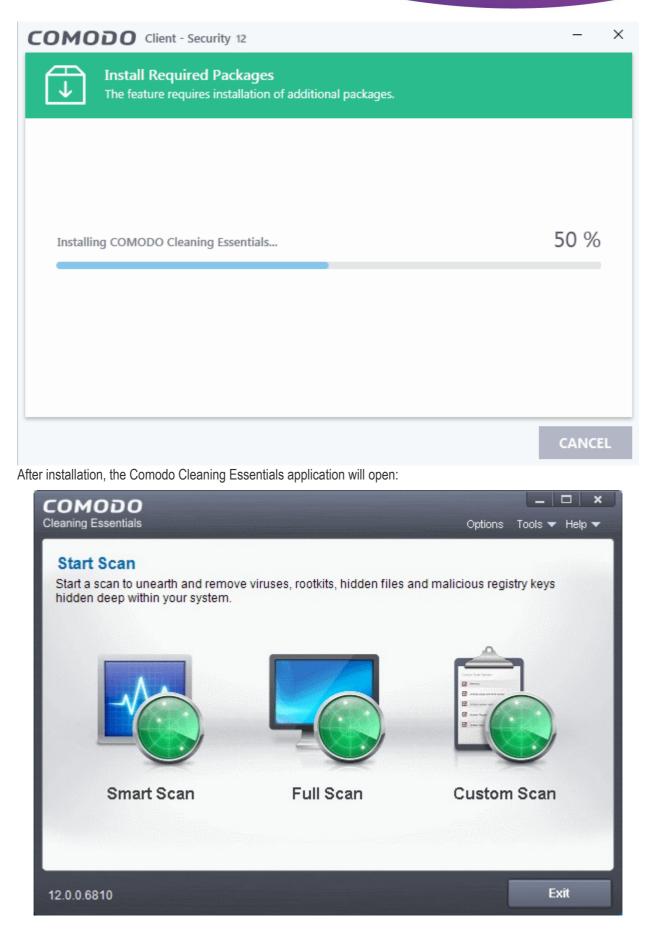
- KillSwitch A system monitoring tool that lets you identify and terminate unsafe processes on your computer.
- **Malware scanner** Fully customizable scanner capable of unearthing and removing viruses, rootkits and malicious registry keys hidden deep in your system.
- Autorun Analyzer Allows you to view and control the services and programs which are loaded when your computer boots-up.

Run CCE from CCS interface

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Clean Endpoint'
- If you have already installed Comodo Cleaning Essentials, clicking 'Clean Endpoint' will open the CCE interface directly.
- When you click 'Clean Endpoint' for the first time, CCS will download and install Comodo Cleaning Essentials. After it is installed, clicking this tile in future will open the CCE interface.

Secure All systems are active	and running		
NERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CON	NTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS	ADVANCED TASKS	[
Create Rescue Disk Create a bootable CD or USB Flas clean up heavily infected PC's.	sh Drive to 🛛 🚺 Ru	ean Endpoint n COMODO Cleaning Essenti rsistent infections.	als tool to clea
			n th
The feature requires installati			
		Size	to
The feature requires installati	ion of additional packages.		to

- Click 'View License Agreement' to read the license agreement
- Click 'Agree and Install' to download and install the application.



See http://help.comodo.com/topic-119-1-328-3525-The-Main-Interface.html if you'd like more information on using Comodo Cleaning Essentials.



6.3. Manage CCS Tasks

Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Open Task Manager'

- Comodo Client Security may have several tasks running simultaneously.
- For example, virus scans and virus database updates may run concurrently.
- The 'Task Manager' interface lets you view all currently running tasks.

Open the task manager

- Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Open Task Manager'

GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS	CONTAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS ADV	ANCED TASKS	
Create Rescue Disk Create a bootable CD or USB clean up heavily infected PC's.			idpoint ODO Cleaning Esse infections.	entials tool to clear
Open Task Manager Open the task manager to tasks in propress.	o view running security		t ive Processes details of the proce	sses active on this
View Logs	×	∫ÎL Submit I	Files Jornite active constants	
OMODO Task Manager				? 🗆
Running Tasks	Elapsed Time	Status	Priority	Action
	00:00:37	🕒 Starting	Background	
Virus Scan - Full Scan	00.00.07			
Virus Scan - Full Scan Updater - Database Update	00:00:37	🔅 Running (Low	
		🔅 Running (Low Low	

From the 'Task Manager' interface, you can:



- Reassign task priorities to the tasks
- Pause, resume, or stop a running task
- Bring a selected task to foreground

Reassign task priorities

The 'Priority' column show the level of resources committed to the task at run. A higher priority means the task runs more smoothly, but consumes more system resources.

Change the priority of a task

• Click the current priority and select the new one you want to assign:

(Task Manager				?		×
	Running Tasks	Elapsed Time	Status	Priority	Act	ion	
	Rating Scan	00:01:27	🔅 Running	Low			
	Virus Scan - Full Scan	00:01:23	🕒 Starting	Low High			
	Updater - Database Update	00:01:23	🔅 Running (Normal	ļ.		
				Low Backgrour	nd		
			cı	LOSE E	BRING	TO FRO	NT

Pause/resume or stop running tasks

Use the buttons in the action column to pause, resume or stop a process:

• Click the 'Pause' button to temporarily stop a running task

			? >
Elapsed Time	Status	Priority	Action
00:02:09	II Paused	Normal	
00:01:58	🔅 Running (Background	
	00:02:09	00:02:09 Paused	00:02:09 II Paused <u>Normal</u>

Click the 'Resume' button to restart a suspended task

OMODO Task Manager				?	×
Running Tasks	Elapsed Time	Status	Priority	Action	
Virus Scan - Full Scan	00:02:09	Paused	Normal		
Virus Scan - C:\install	00:01:58	🔅 Running (Background		

• Click the 'Stop' button to terminate a running task

OMODO Task Manager				?
Running Tasks	Elapsed Time	Status	Priority	Action
Virus Scan - Full Scan	00:02:09	II Paused	Normal	
Virus Scan - C:\install	00:01:58	🗘 Running (Background	

Bring a running task to the foreground

• To view the progress of a background task, select the task and click 'Bring to Front'

0	Task Manager				?		×
	Running Tasks	Elapsed Time	Status	Priority	Act	tion	
	Rating Scan	00:04:00	🔅 Running (Normal			
	Virus Scan - Full Scan	00:03:55	🕒 Starting	Low			
	Updater - Database Update	00:03:54	🔅 Running (Background			
			ci	.OSE	BRING	to fro	NT

6.4. View CCS Logs

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'View Logs'
- CCS logs all events generated by the antivirus, firewall, HIPS, containment and other modules.

There are three ways to open the log viewer:

1. Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar:

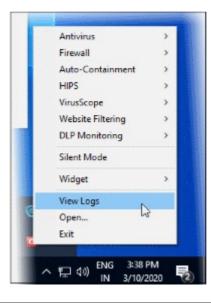


COMODO Client - Security 12			-	×
맘 tasks (☆ settings 🅜 logs				
	A Carlo	0000 e a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a		

2. Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen then 'Advanced Tasks' > 'View Logs':

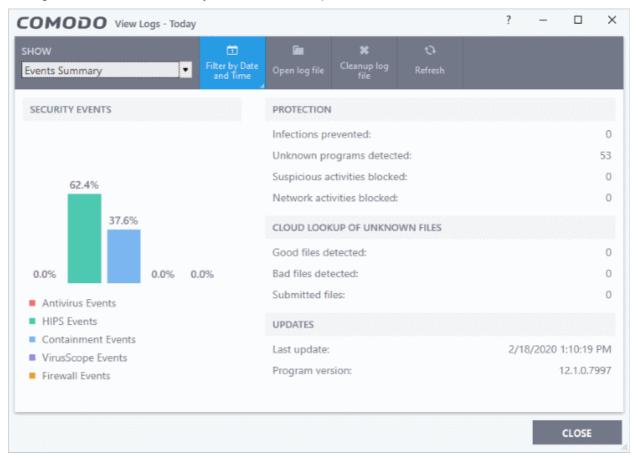
COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
K HOME 🔅 SETTINGS 🖒 LOGS	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS	ADVANCED TASKS
Create Rescue Disk Create a bootable CD or USB Flash Drive to clean up heavily infected PC's.	Clean Endpoint * Run COMODO Cleaning Essentials tool to clean persistent infections.
Open Task Manager Open the task manager to view running security tasks in progress.	View Active Processes View the details of the processes active on this computer.
View Logs View a record of security events, activity and alerts.	You can submit as many files as you wish to COMODO for analysis.
	(?)

3. Right-click on the CCS tray icon then select 'View Logs':





The log dashboard shows a summary of events on the endpoint:



Use the drop-down at top-left to view a specific type of log:

- Antivirus
- VirusScope
- Firewall
- HIPS
- Containment
- Website Filtering
- Device control
- Autorun events
- Alerts displayed
- Tasks launched
- File List settings changes
- Vendors List changes
- Configuration changes
- Virtual Desktop events
- Data Loss Prevention events
- Search and Filter logs

6.4.1. Antivirus Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Antivirus Events' from the drop-down at upper-left
- Antivirus logs contains stats about scanned objects, the settings used for each task, and a history of actions performed on individual files. Logs are recorded for real-time protection events, antivirus database updates and more.

ntivirus Ev	vents 🔹		y Date Time	og file Cleanu fil		rt Refresh	
Date &	Location	Malware Name	Action	Status	Alert	Activities	
11/11/20	C:\Suspicious File	Application.Win32.Le	Ignore	Success	Related alert		
11/11/20	C:\Suspicious File	Application.Win32.Le	Quarantine	Success	Related alert		
11/11/20	C:\Suspicious File	Application.Win32.Le	Ignore	Success	Related alert		
11/11/20	C:\Suspicious File	Application.Win32.Le	Ignore	Success	Related alert		
11/11/20	C:\Suspicious File	Application.Win32.Le	Quarantine	Success			
11/11/20	C:\Suspicious File	Application.Win32.Le	Quarantine	Success			
11/11/20	C:\Program Files	Malware@#3ri4ye99	Quarantine	Success	Related alert		
11/11/20	C:\Program Files	Malware@#2nm567u	Quarantine	Success	Related alert		
11/11/20	C:\Program Files	Malware@#1i04f6cq	Quarantine	Success	Related alert		

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Location The installation path of the suspicious application
- Malware Name The malicious item that was detected
- Action How the malware was handled by CCS.
- Status Whether the action taken was a success or failure
- Alert Click 'Related Alert' to view the notification generated by the event

Note: Alerts are only shown if 'Do not Show Antivirus Alerts' is disabled in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Real-time Scan'.

See Real-time Scan Settings for more details.

- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- Open log file Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs
- Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.



6.4.2. VirusScope Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'VirusScope Events' from the drop-down at upper-left

HOW /irusScope	Events •	▼ Advanced Filter	filter by Date and Time ∡	Gen log file	Clear	¥ nup log ïile	Export	€) Refresh
Date &	Location	Malware Name	Action	State	ıs	Alert	Activi	ties
5/27/201	C:\Suspicious\vt	Generic.Infector.5	Quarar	ntine Succ	ess			
5/27/201	C:\Suspicious\vt	Generic.Infector.5	Reverse	e Succ	ess			
5/27/201	C:\Suspicious\vt	Generic.Infector.5	Detect	Succ	ess		Proce	ss Activities

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Location The installation path of the suspicious application
- Malware Name The malicious item that was detected
- Action How VirusScope handled the malware.
 - Reverse VirusScope attempted to undo any changes made by the malicious item
 - Quarantine VirusScope placed the suspicious file in quarantine
 - Detect VirusScope observed malicious activity, but did not quarantine the file or reverse its changes
 - **Ask** VirusScope detected malicious activity and showed an alert. The alert asks whether you want to quarantine the file or reverse its changes
- Status Whether the action taken was a success or failure
- Alert Click 'Related Alert' to view the notification generated by the event

Note: VirusScope alerts are only shown if 'Do not show pop up alerts' is disabled in 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'VirusScope'.

See VirusScope Configuration for more details.

• Activities - Click 'Related Alert' to view the notification generated by the event. An example is shown below:

Application Activities	PID	Data	
🗉 🖂 vt.exe	7040		
🥵 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\apphelp.dll	
🧩 Load image file		C:\Windows\apppatch\sysmain.sdb	
🧩 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\imm32.dll	
🧩 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\oleaut32.dll	
🧩 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\guard64.dll	
🦧 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\version.dll	
🦧 Load image file		C:\Windows\System32\cmdvrt64.dll	

- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- Open log file Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs
- Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order

6.4.3. Firewall Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Firewall Events' from the drop-down at upper-left

Firewall events are created for various reasons. Reasons include when a process attempts a connection that breaks a **firewall rule**, or when there is a change in firewall settings.

HOW Firewall E	vent	ts	٠	⊤ Advanced Filter	Filter by and T	Date O	🖿 pen log file	X Cleanup log file	Export	t) Refresh
Date	Ap	plication	Action	Direction	Protocol	Sour	Source	Destin	Destinati	Alert
4/10/	3	C:\Program	Asked	Out	ТСР	127.0	49711	127.0.0.1	49710	Related alert
4/10/	3	C:\Program	Blocked	Out	ТСР	127.0	49709	127.0.0.1	49708	
4/10/	3	C:\Program	Asked	Out	ТСР	127.0	49709	127.0.0.1	49708	Related alert
4/10/	Ē	C:\Program	Asked	Out	ТСР	10.0.2	49702	91.212	80	Related alert
4/10/	3	C:\Program	Asked	Out	ТСР	127.0	49689	127.0.0.1	49688	Related alert
4/10/	0	C:\Program	Asked	Out	ТСР	10.0.2	49685	92.242	80	Related alert

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Application The name of the program or process that caused the event.
- Action How the firewall reacted to the connection attempt. For example, whether the attempt was allowed, blocked o r an alert displayed.
- Direction Whether the connection attempt was inbound or outbound.
- **Protocol** The connection method that the application attempted to use. This is usually TCP/IP, UDP or ICMP, which are the most heavily used networking protocols.
- **Source IP** The address of the host from which the connection attempt was made. For outbound connections, this is usually the IP address of your computer. For inbound connections, it is usually the IP address of the external server.
- Source Port The port number that the source host used to make the connection attempt
- **Destination IP** The address of the host to which the connection attempt was made. For inbound connections, this is usually the IP address of your computer.
- Destination Port The port number on the destination host which the source tried to connect to.
- Alert Click 'Related Alert' to view the notification generated by the event

Note: Firewall alerts are only shown if 'Do not show pop up alerts' is disabled in 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Firewall' Settings'.

See General Firewall Settings for more details.

- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order

6.4.4. HIPS Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'HIPS Events' from the drop-down at upper-left

Host intrusion prevention (HIPS) events are generated for various security reasons. These include changes in HIPS settings, when an application attempts to access restricted areas, or when an action contravenes your **HIPS rulesets**.

SHOW HIPS Events		•	⊤ Advanced Filter	Filter by Date and Time		log file	K Cleanup log file		ort	C Refre	
Date & Time	Ар	plication		Action		Target			Alert		^
5/31/2019 12:1	٨	C:\Bistone\Hote	el Management	Direct Keyboa	ar						
5/31/2019 11:0	0	C:\Users\giri1\4	AppData\Local\	Terminate Pro	ос	C:\U	sers\ \App[)ata∖			
5/31/2019 11:0	♠	C:\Bistone\Hote	el Management	Direct Keyboa	ər						
5/31/2019 11:0	0	C:\Users\giri1\4	AppData\Local\	Terminate Pro	oc	C:\U	sers\ \App[)ata\			
5/31/2019 11:0	0	C:\Users\giri1\4	AppData\Local\	Terminate Pro	oc	C:\U	sers\ \App[)ata∖			
5/31/2019 10:5	6	C:\Program File	s (x86)\Mozilla	Terminate Pro	oc	C:\Pr	ogram Files (x8	36)\			
5/31/2019 8:56	♠	C:\Bistone\Hote	el Management	Direct Keyboa	ər						
5/31/2019 8:39	0	C:\Users\giri1\4	AppData\Local\	Terminate Pro	oc	C:\U	sers\ \App[)ata∖			
5/31/2019 8:37	•	C:\Windows\Sy	stem32\Open	Direct Keyboa	ər						
											~

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Application The name of the program or process that caused the event.
- Action The activity of the application and how HIPS handled it
 - If the action was allowed to proceed then this column will show the result of that action.
 - Click the 'Related Alert' link to see the notification that was shown at the time.
 - This column will state 'Block File' if the action was not allowed.
- **Target** Location of the file, COM interface or registry key accessed by the process.
- Alert Click 'Related Alert' to view the notification generated by the event

Note: Alerts are only shown if 'Do not pop-up alerts' is disabled in 'Settings' > 'HIPS Configuration > 'HIPS Settings'.

See HIPS Settings for more details.

- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.



- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order

6.4.5. Containment Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- · Select 'Containment Events' from the drop-down at upper-left

CCS records all actions taken by the containment module. Events that are recorded include:

- When you manually run an application in the container
- · When an an auto-containment rule runs an application in the container

ноw		Ŧ	—		×	∎	Ð
Containment Ev	rents 🔹	Advanced Filter	Filter by D and Tim		Cleanup log file	Export	Refresh
Date & Time	Application	Rating	Action	Containe A	lert Parent	Parent	Pare
6/12/2019 10	C:\Program Files\C	Trusted	Run Vir	Virtual Des			
6/12/2019 10	C:\Windows\Syste	Trusted	Run Vir	Contained	<u>bitsadmi</u>	4152	E3381
6/12/2019 10	C:\Old Man Apps\	Unrecogni	Run Vir	User	virtkiosk	5064	0E68
6/12/2019 10	C:\Windows\Syste	Trusted	Run Vir	Containme	cmdvirth	812	84D6
6/12/2019 10	C:\Windows\Syste	Trusted	Run Vir	Containme	cmdvirth	812	84D6
6/12/2019 10	C:\Windows\Syste	Trusted	Run Vir	Containme	cmdvirth	812	84D6
6/12/2019 10	C:\Windows\Syste	Trusted	Run Vir	Containme	cmdvirth	812	84D6
6/12/2019 10	C:\Program Files\C	Trusted	Run Vir	Containme	services	620	E2CA
6/12/2019 10	C:\Program Files\C	Trusted	Run Vir	Virtual Des	explorer	4348	F5D0

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Application The installation path of the application that was run in the container
- **Rating** The reputation of the contained application. The trust rating can be 'Trusted', 'Unrecognized' or 'Malicious'. Unrecognized files are run in the container until such time as they can be classified as 'Trusted' or 'Malicious'.
- Action How the malware was handled by CCS. This is also the restriction level imposed on the application by the container.
- Contained by The CCS service, policy or user that placed the application in the container.
- Alert Click 'Related Alert' to view the notification generated by the event



Note: Containment alerts are shown when an installer, or unknown application requires admin/elevated privileges to run.

The alerts are only shown if 'Do not show privilege elevation alerts' is disabled in 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Containment Settings'.

See Containment Settings for more details.

- Parent Process The program which spawned the contained process.
 - Click the name of the parent process to view the hierarchical order of processes

stone (noter mana	Unrecognized	Run Virtu	Contained Pr	exe 336 E9482
ers\giri1\AppDat	Unrecognized	Run Virtu	Contained Pr	
сомо	DO Parent P	rocesses Tree	Details	? ×
Application				PID
🔻 💷 winlog	gon.exe			620
🔻 🔳 use	erinit.exe			4664
	explorer.exe			4232
	🏠 BiHMS.exe			336
-	🛚 🔍 CompressDB	.exe		7792

- Parent Process ID The unique identifier that points to the process
- Parent process hash The SHA1 hash value of the program which spawned the contained process.
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- Open log file Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs
- Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.6. Website Filtering Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- · Select 'Website Filtering Events' from the drop-down at upper-left

Website filter logs are a record of all sites blocked (or allowed) by CCS. The logs record all attempts made by users to access blocked or allowed websites.

Background Note:

- You can create filtering rules for specific users in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Website Filtering'.
- See 'Website Filtering' for more details.



				_				
10W Vebsite Filtering E	vents 🔹	₹ Advanced Filter	Filter by Date and Time	Gpen log file	X Cleanup log file	Expo		C) Refres
Date & Time	Website			Category Nar	ne		Action	n
12/4/2019 3:05:	http://hdfcbank.com	n/favicon.ico		Blocked			Block	
2/4/2019 3:05:	http://hdfcbank.com	n		Blocked			Block	

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Website The URL of the site that was blocked, or allowed.
- **Category** The genre of the website. Example categories include 'Shopping sites', 'Social Media', 'Boutiques' etc. You can manage categories in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Website Filtering'.
- Action How the filter reacted to the connection attempt. For example, whether the attempt was allowed, blocked or an alert shown to the user.
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log.
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs.

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.7. Device Control Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Device Control Events' from the 'Show' drop-down

Device control logs record events related to external devices. External devices include USB, optical, and storage drives plugged into your computer.

Events logged include:

- Files copied, deleted and moved
- Device enabled/disabled ('Log detected devices' must be enabled)

See 'Advanced Settings > Device Control Settings' for more help to configure device control.



FYI - Admins can also configure device control in an Endpoint Manager profile. For example, if you want to allow unfettered access to certain devices you can (i) disable device control entirely (ii) remove the device class from the list of controlled types, or (iii) add specific devices to exclusions.

сомодо	View Logs - Today						?	-	٥	×
SHOW Device Control Eve	nts 🔹 A	▼ Image: Constraint of the second seco	¥ Cleanup log file	Export	C3 Refresh					
Date	Name	Identifier		Clas	55		State			
8/2/2017 3:37:08 PI	M USB Input Device	USB\VID_0627&PID_0001\42		745	A17A0-74D3-11	D0-B6FE-0	Enable	d		
8/2/2017 3:37:08 PI	M CD-ROM Drive	IDE\CDROMQEMU_QEMU_DVD	-ROM	4D3	6E965-E325-11	CE-BFC1-0	Enable	d		
8/2/2017 3:32:20 Pt	M USB Input Device	USB\VID_0627&PID_0001\42		745	A17A0-74D3-11	D0-B6FE-0	Disabl	ed		
8/2/2017 3:32:20 PI	M CD-ROM Drive	IDE\CDROMQEMU_QEMU_DVD	-ROM	4D3	6E965-E325-11	CE-BFC1-0	Disabl	ed		

- **Date** When the event occurred.
- **Name** The type of device associated with the event.
- Identifier The identification string of the device
- **Class** The GUID (Globally Unique Identifier) string of the category of the device as defined by the Windows operating system.
- State Whether the device was allowed or blocked.
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs
- Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.8. Autorun Event Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Autorun Events' from the drop-down at upper-left

Autorun logs show events where changes were attempted on Windows services, auto-start entries and scheduled tasks.

Background:

- CCS monitors changes to registry items related to Windows Services, Autorun entries and scheduled tasks.
- You can define the response CCS should take against unrecognized autoruns in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous'. See Miscellaneous Settings for more details.
- You can also define the response to unknown autoruns found by an antivirus scan. See configure scan
 options for more help on this.



HOW Autoruns Events		• • Advanced Filter	団 I Ime Gpen log	file Cleanup log file file	Export	🗘 Refresh
Date & Time	Туре	Location	Modifier	Action	Detecte	Status
4/16/2019 9:43	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/16/2019 9:43	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 1:52	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 1:52	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 1:52	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 1:52	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 1:52	Auto Runs	C:\ProgramData\Com	C:\Users\giri1\	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 11:2	Window Servi	C:\Users\giri1\AppDa	C:\Windows\Sy	Ignore	Monitor	Success
4/12/2019 11:2	Auto Runs	C:\Suspicious\AntiTes	C:\Suspicious\	Ignore	Monitor	Success

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Type Whether the detected item is an autorun entry, Windows service, or scheduled task.
- Location The installation path of the affected item, or the location of the new item
- **Modifier** The location of the application that made the change.
- Action How CCS responded to the event.
- Status Whether the action taken was a success or failure
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- Open log file Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs
- Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order

6.4.9. Alert Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Alerts' from the drop-down at upper-left

Alert logs are a record of all threat notifications generated by CCS, and also record the user's response to the alert.



HOW Alerts		▼ A	dvanced Filter	by Date Op Time	en log file	X Cleanup log file	Export	C) Refresi	
Date &	Alert Ty	Description	Advice	Answered	Answ	er Option	Treat as	Event	
4/24/20	HIPS alert	smartscreen.ex	smartscreen.ex	4/24/2019	Treat	as	Allowed	Related	
4/24/20	HIPS alert	smartscreen.ex	smartscreen.ex		Show			Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	.Unclassified M	C:\Suspicious\p.	. 4/24/2019	Skip o	once		Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	.Unclassified M	C:\Suspicious\p.		Show			Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	Backdoor.Win3	C:\Suspicious\p.	. 4/24/2019	Skip o	once		Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	Backdoor.Win3	C:\Suspicious\p		Show			Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	Malware@#27s	C:\Suspicious\e	. 4/24/2019	Disin	fect		Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	Malware@#27s	C:\Suspicious\e		Show			Related	
4/24/20	Antivirus	Malware@#27s	C:\Users\giri1\	4/24/2019	Skip o	once		Related	100000000

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Alert Type The security module that generated the alert. Alert types include antivirus, firewall, HIPS, containment, VirusScope and secure shopping.
- **Description** Name of the file or event that caused the alert.
- Advice -The recommendation, or informational text in the alert. This text is intended to help users decide to
 respond to the threat.
- Answered Whether or not the alert was answered by the user. You will see the date and time of the
 response if an answer was provided.
- Answer The user's response to the alert. For example, 'Allow', 'Block', 'Disinfect', 'Skip'.
- Option Additional settings chosen by the user at the alert. For example, 'Remember My Answer'.
- **Treat As** Whether or not the user applied a specific ruleset to the file at the alert. The ruleset tells CCS the restriction level to apply to the file in future. Example rulesets include 'Treat as a safe application, or 'Treat as an installer'.
- Event Click 'Related Event' to view more details about the incident that triggered the alert.
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- **Refresh** Reload the current list and show the latest logs

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending / descending order.



6.4.10. CCS Tasks Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Tasks' in the drop-down at upper-left

A task log is a record of a CCS operation such as a virus scan or database update. The task log area shows all tasks run, their completion status, and other details.

HOW asks	1	Advanced Filter	Filter by Date and Time	Open log file	X Cleanup file	log Expor		🗘 Refresh		
Date & Ti	Туре	Parameter	Ca	ompleted		Code	Info		Additiona	
5/31/2019	Antivirus scan (Be	Full Scan								
5/31/2019	Antivirus update (5/	/31/2019 11:21:0	4 AM		Old d	latabase 30947	New datab	
5/31/2019	Antivirus scan (Co	Rating Scan	5/	/31/2019 11:19:2	3 AM		Scanr	ned 1808	Found 0	
5/31/2019	Antivirus scan (Be	Rating Scan								
5/31/2019	Antivirus update (
5/31/2019	Virtual Desktop Se		5/	/31/2019 11:06:0	8 AM	0x8000400				
5/31/2019	Virtual Desktop Se		5/	/31/2019 11:06:0	8 AM	0x8000400				
5/31/2019	Virtual Desktop Se		5/	/31/2019 11:06:0	8 AM	0x8000400				
5/31/2019	Virtual Desktop Se		5/	/31/2019 11:06:0	AM 8	0x8000400				

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Type The task that was performed. For example, 'Antivirus scan', or 'Database update'.
- Parameter:
 - The sub-type of the operation. For example, 'Quick Scan' is a sub-type of 'Antivirus scan'. OR
 - The target of the operation. For example, 'C:\Program Files' is the target area scanned.
- Completed The time that the operation finished
- **Code** Error code generated by Windows for CCS tasks that were not successful. No code is shown if the task finished successfully.
- Info and additional info Shows further details about the task. For update tasks, these fields show the old and new version numbers. For scan tasks, they show the number of items scanned and the number of viruses found.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.



6.4.11. File List Changes Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'File List Changes' in the drop-down at upper-left

The file list is an inventory of executables and applications on your computer. The list shows the file name, vendor, the date the file was discovered, and the file's trust rating.

You can view the file list in CCS at 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List'. See **File List** for help on this area.

File list logs are a record of any modifications to these files. Logged actions include adding a new file, removing a file, or changing the trust rating of a file.

10W ile List Chan	ges 🗸 🗸	〒 Ivanced Filter	Tilter by Date and Time	🖬 Open log file	Cleanup log file	Export	C) Refresh
• Date &	Path	Modifier	Action	Property	Old Rating	New Rating	
4/24/2019	C:\Suspicious\vt.exe	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Unrecognize	ed
4/24/2019	C:\Suspicious\vt.exe	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Unrecognize	ed
4/24/2019	C:\Users\giri1\Downloads\U	COMODO	Changed	COMOD	Unrecognized	Malicious	
4/24/2019	C:\Program Files (x86)\Goog	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Trusted	
4/24/2019	C:\Windows\Temp\CR_10F5	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Trusted	
4/24/2019	C:\Program Files (x86)\Goog	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Trusted	
4/24/2019	C:\Suspicious\8200755cbed	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Malicious	
4/24/2019	C:\Suspicious\poison1\smb	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Malicious	
4/24/2019	C:\Suspicious\poison2\smb	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Malicious	

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Path The location or the SHA 1 hash value of the file that was changed.
- Modifier The service or user that made the change.
- · Action Whether the file was added, removed, or assigned a new rating
- Property Whether the current trust rating was assigned by Comodo, an administrator, or a user.
- Old Rating The trust rating of the file before the change.
 - The rating can be 'Trusted', 'Unrecognized' or 'Malicious'. Under default settings, unrecognized files are run in the container until Comodo classifies them as 'Trusted' or 'Malicious'.
- New Rating The trust rating of the file after the change.
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log.



• **Refresh** - Reload the current list and show the latest logs.

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.12. Vendor List Changes Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Vendor List Changes' in the drop-down at upper-left

CCS ships with a list of trusted vendors who have a reputation of creating legitimate, safe software. CCS allows unknown files which are digitally signed by one of these trusted vendors to run. Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List' to view the list.

- You can also add new vendors, and change the rating of existing vendors. Admin / User ratings supersede the Comodo rating.
- · The files published by these vendors are rated depending on the current rating assigned to the vendor
- Any changes to vendors in the list are logged in 'Vendor List Changes'.

ном		▼ Ivanced f			× 🗉	t0	
/endor List (Changes 🔻 Ad	Filter	Filter by Date and Time ⊿	Open log file Cle	anup log Expo file	ort Refre	sh
Date &	Vendor	Modifier	Action	Property	Old Rating	New Rating	
4/23/201	LAVASOFT SOFTWARE CANA	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Unrecognize	d
4/16/201	Valeriy Sokolov	COMODO	Changed	COMOD	Unrecognized	Unrecognize	d
4/16/201	Digital Wave Ltd	COMODO	Changed	COMOD	Unrecognized	Unrecognize	d
4/16/201	Digital Wave Ltd	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Unrecognize	d
4/16/201	Valeriy Sokolov	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Unrecognize	d
4/12/201	VideoIQ	User	Changed	User rating	Unrecognized	Trusted	
4/12/201	VideoLAN	User	Changed	User rating	Trusted	Unrecognize	d
4/12/201	VideoIQ	User	Changed	User rating	Trusted	Unrecognize	d
4/11/201	Threatstar B.V.	COMODO	Added	COMOD		Unrecognize	d

- Date & Time When the change event occurred.
- Vendor The name of the software publisher
- Modifier Who made the change (User or Comodo).
- · Action Whether the vendor was added, removed, or assigned a new rating
- Property Whether the current rating was assigned by Comodo, an admin, or a user.
- **Old Rating** The trust rating of the vendor before the change.
 - The rating can be 'Trusted', 'Unrecognized' or 'Malicious'. Under default settings, unrecognized files are run in the container until Comodo classifies them as 'Trusted' or 'Malicious'.



- New Rating The trust rating of the vendor after the change.
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- Open log file Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log.
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs.

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.13. Configuration Change Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Configuration Changes' in the drop-down at upper-left

Configuration change logs are a record of changes to CCS settings.

ном		₹	Ċ		×	⊡	Ð
Configurati	on Changes	Advance Filter		y Date Time Open log file	Cleanup log file	Export	Refresh
Date &	Component	Action	Modifier	Name	Old Setting	New Se	etting
8/1/201	Firewall: Mode	Option C	Administ		Safe Mode	Disable	d
8/1/201	Firewall: Predefined p	Changed	Administ	Allowed Application	<object flags<="" td=""><td>= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<></td></object>	= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<>	t Flags=
8/1/201	Firewall: Predefined p	Changed	Administ	Ftp Client	<object flags<="" td=""><td>= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<></td></object>	= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<>	t Flags=
8/1/201	Firewall: Predefined p	Changed	Administ	Blocked Application	<object flags<="" td=""><td>= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<></td></object>	= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<>	t Flags=
8/1/201	Firewall: Predefined p	Changed	Administ	Outgoing Only	<object flags<="" td=""><td>= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<></td></object>	= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<>	t Flags=
8/1/201	Firewall: Predefined p	Changed	Administ	Web Browser	<object flags<="" td=""><td>= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<></td></object>	= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<>	t Flags=
8/1/201	Firewall: Predefined p	Changed	Administ	Email Client	<object flags<="" td=""><td>= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<></td></object>	= <objec< td=""><td>t Flags=</td></objec<>	t Flags=
8/1/201	Firewall: Application	Changed	Administ	System	<object devio<="" td=""><td>e <objec< td=""><td>t Device</td></objec<></td></object>	e <objec< td=""><td>t Device</td></objec<>	t Device
8/1/201	Firewall: Application	Added	Administ	COMODO Client - Se		<objec< td=""><td>t Device</td></objec<>	t Device

- Date & Time When the configuration change was done.
- Component The CCS interface that was modified.
- Action Short description of the change made to the CCS component. For example, if a setting was changed, or an exclusion was created.
- **Modifier** The service or user that made the change. Possible modifiers include 'User', 'Antivirus Alert', 'Auto-Learn', 'Firewall Alert', 'HIPS Alert', 'Containment Alert', 'Scheduler' and 'Comodo'.
- Name The item featured in the modification. This will vary depending on the component.
- **Old Setting** The value before the configuration change.



- **New Setting** The value after the configuration change.
 - Pace your mouse over an entry in the 'Old Value' or 'New Value' column to view the full setting string
- Export Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'.
- **Open log file** Browse to and view a saved log file.
- Cleanup log file Delete the selected event log.
- Refresh Reload the current list and show the latest logs.

Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.14. Virtual Desktop Event Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Virtual Desktop Events' in the drop-down at upper-left

CCS records all events from the virtual desktop. Events that are recorded include:

- Launch and close the virtual desktop
- Pause, resume, and terminate a virtual desktop session
- · Switch between the virtual desktop and the host desktop

HOW /irtual Desktop Events	•	▼ Advanced Filter	Filter by Date and Time	🖬 Open log file	X Cleanup log file	Export	🗘 Refres	
Date & Time	Action	THEE	4	Status	Inc	_		
7/8/2019 2:36:31 PM	Virtual Desktop	o Terminated		Succes	5			
7/8/2019 2:24:36 PM	Session Termin	ated		Success	s (Last Session D	uration: 00:03:27)		
7/8/2019 2:24:35 PM	Switched to Ho	ost		Succes	5			100000000
7/8/2019 2:24:34 PM	Switched to Vir	tual Desktop		Succes	5			
7/8/2019 2:21:44 PM	Session continu	ued		Succes	5			
7/8/2019 2:18:21 PM	Session Paused	1		Success	5			
7/8/2019 2:18:20 PM	Switched to Vir	tual Desktop		Succes	5			
7/8/2019 2:17:43 PM	Session Started	1		Success	5			
7/8/2019 2:17:39 PM	Switched to Vir	tual Desktop		Succes	5			

- Date & Time When the event occurred
- Action The operation executed
- Status Whether the action taken was a success or failure
- Click any column header to sort the entries in ascending \ descending order.

6.4.15. Data Loss Prevention Event Logs

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select 'Data Loss Prevention Events' in the drop-down at top-left

The logs show items flagged by data loss prevention scans and monitoring events:

HOW Data Loss Prevention I	▼ Advan Events ▼ Filte			X Cleanup log file	Export	€) Refresh	
Date & Time	Target	Rule Name	Rule Type	Action	Status	Details	
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUME_??_USBSTO	1000
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUME_??_USBSTO	
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUME_??_USBSTO	1000000
5/21/2020 10:53:26	USB DATA Devices	Allow pen drive	Removable St	Ignore	Success	STORAGE\VOLUME_??_USBSTO	
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\Deskto	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details	
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details	
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details	
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details	
5/19/2020 12:56:15	C:\Users\girid\AppDa	Files with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show details	

- Date & Time When the event occurred.
- Target The item affected by the rule.
 - **DLP Monitoring event** Shows the type of external storage device to which the data transfer attempt was made
 - DLP Discovery event Shows the file path of the identified file
- **Rule Name** The DLP rule that found the target item. This could be a DLP discovery rule or a monitoring rule.
- Rule Type Whether rule is a DLP discovery rule or a removable storage rule
- Action How the file was handled in the DLP event. The possible values are:
 - Ignore
 - Quarantine
 - Restore from quarantine
 - Delete from quarantine
 - Blocked
- Status Shows whether the rule executed successfully or not
- Details The specifics of the data found.
 - **DLP monitoring rule** Shows the removable storage device affected by the rule.
 - DLP Discovery rule Has a 'Show details' link which opens the specifics of the event. See View file details for more details.

Advanced Filter - Search the logs by file location, rule or action.



Filter by Date and Time - Search for logs generated within a specific time-frame

Open log file - Browse to and view a saved log file.

Cleanup log file - Delete the selected event log

Export - Save the logs as a HTML file. You can also right-click inside the log viewer and choose 'Export'

Refresh - Reload the current list to show the latest logs

View file details

• Click the 'Show details' column shows different information depending on the type of DLP event:

COMODO Vie		_		-						
HOW Data Loss Prevention I	Events 🔻	▼ Advanced Filter	Filter by Dat and Time	te Open log file	Cleanup log file	Export		🗘 Refresh		
Date & Time	Target	R	ule Name	Rule Type	Action	Status	Deta	ils		
5/22/2020 4:07:12 PM	C:\Users\girid\[Deskto Fi	iles with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	Show	y details		
5/22/2020 4:07:12 PM	C:\Users\girid\A	AppDa Fi	iles with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success		v details		
5/22/2020 4:07:12 PM	C:\Users\girid\A	AppDa Fi	iles with CC	Discovery Rule	Quarantine	Success	<u>Show</u>	v details		
	сомот		Details		1	?	\times			
	Date: Rule Name: Action Status File Hash (SHA-1):			4B6E669C7ED0909	Files w	020 4:07:12 F ith CC numbe Quaranti Succe 6AFDBE22BE	ers ne ess			
	Pattern			Match		Count				
	Credit Card	d Number		4***1		1				
	Credit Card	d Number		4***7		1				
	Credit Card	d Number		4***3		1				
	Credit Card	d Number		4***4		1				
						CLOSE				

- The screen shows the name of the file, and the rule/pattern which discovered sensitive data in the file.
- The 'match' column shows the first and last characters of the actual discovered data. The option to show this should be enabled in the discovery rule.

6.4.16. Search and Filter Logs

You can run a simple filter of events by date, and use advanced filters to conduct more complex searches.

• Filter by date/time



Advanced Filters

Filter by date/time

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select an event category from the drop-down at top-left
- Click 'Filter by Date and Time' to choose a specific period:

Date & Time Website (No filtering) Action 12/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico © Within last 1 * hour(s) * Block 12/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico © Today Block Block 12/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico © Current week Block Block 12/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico © Current week Block Block 12/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico © Within the period of Elock Block	ebsite Filtering Events Advanced Filter	Eilter hu Date	➡ port	ि Refresh
12/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico Current week Current month Within the period of	2/5/2019 11:3 http://hdfcbank.com/favicon.ico	○ (No filtering) ○ Within last ○ Except last	Block	
12/05/2019 + 12/05/2019 +	•••	Current week		

- **No filtering** Show every event logged since CCS was installed. If you have cleared the logs since installation, this option shows all logs created since that clearance.
- Within last Show all logs from a certain point in the past until the present time.
- Except last Exclude all logs from a certain point in the past until the present time.
- Today Show all events logged today, from 12:00 am to the current time. (Default)
- Current Week Show all events logged from the previous Sunday to today.
- Current Month Display all events logged from 1st of the current month to today.
- Within the period of Show logs between a custom date range.

You can also right-click inside the log viewer module and choose the time period.



COMODO View Lo	gs - Current w	/eek		
SHOW Antivirus Events	•	⊤ Advanced Filter	Tilter by Date and Time	Cpen log
Date & Location	Malware Na	me	Action	Status
4/11/201 🗋 D:\Suspic	Virus.Win32 Refresh	.Parite.a	Remove	Success
4/11/201 🗋 D:\Suspic		/anced filter	gnore	Success
4/11/201 🗋 D:\Suspic	Export Today		lock	Success
	Current v Current r Entire pe	nonth		

Advanced Filters

Advanced filters let you run complex queries based on a variety of criteria. Search parameters vary from module to module.

- Click 'Logs' in the CCS menu bar
- Select a module in the drop-down on the left
- Click 'Advanced Filter':



COMODO View Logs - Today		?	-		×
SHOW Website Filtering Events Advanced Filter by Date and Time	Gen log file Cleanup log Open log file file	Export		्रि Refresi	h
Date & Time Website	Category Name		Action	1	
			?		×
ADVANCED FILTER + Action Add					
Action Equal	☑ Block	🗌 Ask		(\otimes
		*****			******* ³
	AP	PLY	c	ANCEL	

- Select a filter category at top-left then click 'Add'
- Search parameters vary according to the filter category. You can include multiple filter categories to refine your search.

Click the following links to view the options available with each module:

- Antivirus Events
- VirusScope Events
- Firewall Events
- HIPS Events
- Containment Events
- Website Filtering Events
- Device Control Events
- Autorun Events
- Alerts
- CCS Tasks
- File List Changes
- Vendor List Changes
- Configuration Changes



- Virtual Desktop Events
- Data Loss Prevention

Antivirus Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters																											
Action	Filter logs based on the action	Select the filter parameter:																											
	taken by CCS against the detected threat.	Quarantine: Shows events at which the user chose to quarantine a file																											
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice.	Remove: Shows events at which the user chose to delete the detected threat																											
		 Ignore: Shows events at which the user chose to ignore the detected threat 																											
		Detect: Shows events involving only the detection of malware																											
		 Ask: Displays events where an alert was shown to the user so they could choose an action against a piece of detected malware 																											
		 Restore: Shows events at which quarantined applications were restored to original location by admin from Endpoint Manager 																											
		 Block: Shows events where suspicious applications were stopped 																											
		Reverse: Shows events where VirusScope overrode potentially malicious actions																											
		 False positive: Shows events where files flagged as threats by CCS were submitted to Comodo by the user as a false positive. 																											
			 Add To exclusions: Shows events in which the user chose to add an item to antivirus exclusions 																										
																													 Add To trusted files: Shows events in which the user changed the file rating to 'Trusted'
									 Restore from Quarantine: Shows events in which files were returned to original location from quarantine 																				
		Delete from Quarantine: Shows events in which files were removed permanently from quarantine																											
Location	Filter the log entries related to	Enter the text or word that needs to be filtered																											
	events logged from a specific location.	For example, if you select 'Contains' option from the drop- down and enter the phrase 'C:/Program Files/' in the text field, then all events containing the entry 'C:/Program Files/' in the 'Location' field are displayed.																											
Malware Name	Filter the log entries related to specific malware.	Enter the text in the name of the malware that needs to be filtered.																											
		For example, if you choose 'Contains' from the drop-down and type 'siins' in the text field, then all events with 'siins' in the 'Malware Name' field are shown.																											



Status		Select the filter parameter:
	the success or failure of the action taken against the threat by CCS.	 Success: Shows events in which the actions against the detected threat were successfully executed (for example, the malware was
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal'	successfully quarantined)
	from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	 Failure: Shows events at which the actions against the detected threat failed to execute (for example, the malware was not disinfected)

VirusScope Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters																					
Action	Filter logs based on the action	Select the filter parameter:																					
	taken by CCS against the detected threat.	Quarantine: Shows events at which the user chose to quarantine a file																					
		Remove: Shows events at which the user chose to delete the detected threat																					
		 Ignore: Shows events at which the user chose to ignore the detected threat 																					
		 Detect: Shows events involving only the detection of malware 																					
		 Ask: Displays events where an alert was shown to the user so they could choose an action against a piece of detected malware 																					
		 Restore: Shows events at which quarantined applications were restored to original location by admin from Endpoint Manager 																					
		Block: Shows events where suspicious applications were stopped																					
		Reverse: Shows events where VirusScope overrode potentially malicious actions																					
		• False positive: Shows events where files flagged as threats by CCS were submitted to Comodo by the user as a false positive.																					
																							 Add To exclusions: Shows events in which the user chose to add an item to antivirus exclusions
					 Add To trusted files: Shows events in which the user changed the file rating to 'Trusted' 																		
		 Restore from Quarantine: Shows events in which files were returned to original location from quarantine 																					
		Delete from Quarantine: Shows events in which files were removed permanently from quarantine																					
Location	Filter the log entries related to	Enter the text or word that needs to be filtered																					
	events logged from a specific location.	For example, if you select 'Contains' option from the drop- down and enter the phrase 'C:/Program Files/' in the text field, then all events containing the entry 'C:/Program Files/'																					



		in the 'Location' field are displayed.
Malware Name	Filter the log entries related to specific malware.	Enter the text in the name of the malware that needs to be filtered.
		For example, if you choose 'Contains' from the drop-down and type 'siins' in the text field, then all events with 'siins' in the 'Malware Name' field are shown.
Status	Filter the log entries based on the success or failure of the action taken against the threat by CCS. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice.	 Select the filter parameter: Success: Shows events in which the actions against the detected threat were successfully executed (for example, the malware was successfully quarantined) Failure: Shows events at which the actions against the detected threat failed to execute (for example, the malware was not disinfected)

Firewall Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Action	Filter logs based on events according to the response (or action taken) by the firewall. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	 Select the filter parameter: Blocked: Shows events where CCS prevented the connection Allowed: Shows events where the connection was allowed to proceed Asked: Shows events where an alert was shown to the users so they could choose whether or not to allow the connection
Application	Filter logs based on events propagated by a specific application	• Enter the text or word that needs to be filtered. For example, if you choose 'Contains' from and enter the phrase 'cuckoo' in the text field, then all FW events containing the entry 'cuckoo' in the 'Application' column are displayed
Destination IP	 Filter logs based on events with a specific target IP address 1. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' option from the drop-down box. 'Not Equal' will invert your selected choice. 2. Select 'IPv4' or 'IPv6' from the drop-down box. 	 Enter the IP address of the destination server or host, to filter the events that involve the connection attempts from/to that destination server or host. For example, if you choose 'Contains' option from the drop- down, select IPv4 and enter 192.168.111.11 in the text field, then all events containing the entry '192.168.111.11' in the 'Destination IP' column will be displayed.
Destination Port	Filter logs based on events that involved a specific target port number	 Enter the destination port number in the text entry field For example, if you choose 'Equal' option from the drop-



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	Select any one of the option the drop-down: Equal Greater than Greater than or Equal Less than Less than or Equal Not Equal	down and enter 8080 in the text field, then all events containing the entry '8080' in the 'Destination Port' column will be displayed.
Direction	Filter logs based on events of inbound or outbound nature. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	 Select the filter parameter: In: Shows a list of events involving inbound connection attempts Out: Shows a list of events involving outbound connection attempts For example, if you choose 'Equal' option from the drop-down and select the 'In' checkbox, then all inbound connection attempts will be displayed.
Protocol	Filter logs based on events that involved a specific protocol. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	Select the filter parameter: TCP UDP ICMP ICMP IPV4 GGP GGP PUP IDP IDP ICMPV6 ND For example, if you choose 'Equal' option from the drop- down and select the 'TCP' checkbox, then all connection attempts involving TCP protocol will be displayed.
Source IP	 Filter logs based on events that originated from a specific IP address 1. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' option from the drop-down box. 'Not Equal' will invert your selected choice. 2. Select 'IPv4' or 'IPv6' from the drop-down box. 	 Enter the IP address of the source server or host, to filter the events that involve the connection attempts from/to that source server or host system. For example, if you choose 'Contains' then select IPv4 and enter 192.168.111.22 in the text field, then all events containing the entry '192.168.111.11' in the 'Source IP' column will be displayed.



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Source Port	Filter logs based on events that involved a specific source port number Select any one of the option the drop-down: • Equal • Greater than • Greater than or Equal • Less than • Less than or Equal • Not Equal	 Enter the destination port number in the text entry field For example, if you choose 'Equal' and enter 8080 in the text field, then all events containing the entry '8080' in the 'Source Port' column will be displayed.

HIPS Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Application	Filter logs based on events propagated by a specific application	 Enter the search criteria for filtering the logs in the text field. For example, if you choose 'Contains' from the drop-down and enter the phrase 'cuckoo' in the text field, then all events containing the entry 'cuckoo' in the 'Application' column are displayed.
Action	Filter logs based on events according to the response (or action taken) by HIPS Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice.	Select the filter parameter: Scanned online and found malicious Access memory Create process Terminate process Modify key Modify file Direct memory access Direct disk access Direct disk access Direct keyboard access Direct monitor access Load driver Send message Install Hook Access COM interface Execute image DNS/RPC client access Change HIPS Mode Shellcode injection Block file Suspicious



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
		 Hook Alert Suppressed Scanned and found safe For example, if you choose 'Equal' and select 'Create process', only events involving the creation of a process by continuations are disclosed.
Target	Filter logs based on events that involved a specified target application.	 applications are displayed. Enter the search criteria for filtering the logs in the text field. For example, if you choose 'Contains' and enter the phrase 'svchost.exe' in the text field, then all events containing the entry 'svchost.exe' in the 'Target' column will be displayed.

Containment Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Application	Show events propagated by a specific application.	Enter the search criteria for filtering the logs in the text field.
		For example, if you choose 'Contains' and enter the phrase 'pcflank' in the text field, then all events containing the entry 'pcflank' in the 'Application' column are displayed.
Rating	Show events which concern files that have a specific trust- rating. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice.	Select the filter parameter: • None • Unrecognized • Trusted • Malicious For example, if you choose 'Equal' and select the 'Unrecognized' file rating, only the containment events involving applications that are categorized as 'Unrecognized' are displayed.
Action	Show events where a specific action was applied to the file by CCS	Select the restriction level(s) applied by the container to the applications, either automatically of or chosen by the user from the alert.
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	 Run Restricted Run Virtually Blocked Ignored For example, if you choose 'Equal' from the drop-down and
		select 'Run Virtually', only the events of applications that are run inside the container are displayed.
Contained by	Show events where the file was isolated by a specific module or user	Select the source(s) by which the applications were contained.



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' will invert your selected choice.	 Containment Policy User Contained Process Containment Service For example, if you choose 'Contains' and select the 'User' checkbox, then only events involving applications that were manually run inside the container are displayed.
Parent Process	Show files contained based on its source process	 Enter the name of the application associated with the process, that launched contained item as the search criteria for filtering the logs in the text field. For example, if you choose 'Contains' and enter the phrase 'RuntimeBroker.exe' in the text field, then all events containing the entry 'RuntimeBroker.exe' in the 'Parent Process' column are displayed.
Parent Process ID	Show events created by a source process ID Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' from the drop-down menu.	 Enter the process ID of the application associated, that launched contained item as the search criteria for filtering the logs in the text field. For example, if you choose 'Contains' and enter the ID '2612' in the text field, then all events containing the entry '2612' in the 'Parent Process ID' column will be displayed.
Parent Process Hash	Show events where items was contained based on its source process(es) specified by hash value(s) of executable file(s) associated with the source process(es) Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' from the drop-down menu.	Enter the SHA1 hash value of the executable file associated with the process, that launched contained item as the search criteria.

Website Filtering Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Website	Show only events that involved a specific website	 Enter the website address in part or full, to filter the logs involving the website.
	Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' from the drop-down menu.	For example, if you choose 'Contains' option from the drop- down and enter the phrase 'facebook.com' in the text field, then all events that involve the website 'facebook.com' in the 'Website' column are displayed.
Category Name	Show events that involved websites which are covered	Enter the website filter category name, to filter the logs involving the category
	by a website filtering category.	For example, if you choose 'Contains' and enter the phrase 'Malware Sites' in the text field, then all events involving websites in the 'Malware Sites' category are displayed.



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Action	Show only events that involved a specific response by CCS Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	 Select the action(s) to filter the logs involving those action(s). Allow Block Ask For example, if you choose 'Equal' and 'Block', then only events where websites blocked are displayed.

Device Control Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Name	Filter the entries based on the type of the device.	 Enter the type of the device in full or part as your filter criteria in the text field.
		For example, if you choose 'Contains' and type 'USB Input Device' in the text field, you will see logs related to USB input devices like keyboards, mice and finger print scanners.
Identifier	Filter entries based on the device ID of the external	• Enter the device ID of the device in full or part as your filter criteria in the text field.
	device.	For example if you have chosen 'Contains' and entered 'USB\VID_0627&PID_0001', in the text field only those log entries related to external devices whose device ID contains the string are displayed.
Class	Filter the entries based on the GUID of the device	Enter a Device Class ID (GUID) in part or full as your search criteria
		For example, if you select 'Contains' option from the drop- down field and enter '4D36E967', then all events containing the entry '4D36E967' in the 'Class' field are displayed
State	Filter events based on whether the device connection attempt was allowed or	Select the parameter to refine your search.
		Enabled
	blocked.	Disabled

Autorun Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Туре	Filter entries based on the class of autorun Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	Choose from: • Windows Service • Autostart entry • Scheduled task
Location	Filter entries based on application path	• Enter the location or a part of it as your filter criteria in the text field.
	Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not	For example if you have chosen 'Contains' and entered 'C:/Program Files (x86)/Cuckoo Files/Cuckoo.exe in the text field, then only log entries with the same value in the 'Path'

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	Contain' will invert your selected choice.	column are displayed.
Modifier	Filter logs by the file or user that launched the event.	• Enter the location or a part of it as your filter criteria in the text field.
	Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	For example if you choose 'Contains' and enter 'C:/Users/tester/AppData/Roaming/Microsoft/Windows/Start Menu/Programs/Startup/UnknownAppUI3.exe' in the text field, then only log entries with the same value in the 'Path' column will be displayed.
Action	Filter the events based on	Ignore - CCS does not take any action
	CCS response to the detected threat	Terminate - CCS stops the process / service
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	 Terminate and Disable - Auto-run processes will be stopped and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.
		 Quarantine and Disable - Auto-run processes will be quarantined and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.
Detected By	Filter the entries based on the CCS component that	Select the specific filter parameter to refine your search.
	discovered the threat	Autorun monitor
• Antiv from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	Antivirus Scan	
Status	Filter the entries based on the	Select the specific filter parameter to refine your search.
	success or failure of the action taken against the threat by CCS.	• Success: Shows events where the actions against the detected threat were successful. For example, the malware was successfully quarantined.
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' will invert your choice	• Failure: Shows events where the intended actions against the detected threat were not successful. For example, the malware was not disinfected.

Alerts

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Advice	Filter entries by the security recommendation in the alert. Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	• Enter the text or word as your filter criteria. For example, choose 'Contains' and enter the phrase 'you can safely allow this request' in the text field.
Answer	Filter the events based on	Select the parameter to refine your search.

Comodo Client Security User Guide | © ITarian 2020 | All rights reserved.



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	what action the user selected at the alert. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Unknown Allow Deny Treat as Disinfect Quarantine Quarantine and reserve Skip once Add to exclusions Add to trusted files False positive Skip Terminate Keep inside the Container Deny and Terminate Deny and Terminate Dony Terminate and Reverse Containment Visit with Secure Browser Run Unlimited Run inside the Container Blocked For example, if you choose 'Equal' from the drop-down and select the 'Add to exclusions' > 'Ignore and Add to exclusions' are displayed.
Answered	Filter logs based on the date the user answered the alerts. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Enter or select the required date from the date picker For example, if you select 'Equal' and select '07/31/2017', only alerts answered on 07/31/2017 are displayed.
Description	Filter the entries based on the description of the attempt displayed in the alert. Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	• Enter the text or word as your filter criteria. For example, if you select 'Contains' from the drop-down and enter 'connect to the internet', only the log entries of firewall alerts that contain the phrase 'connect to the internet' in the description are displayed.
Option	Filter the log entries where the	Select the specific filter parameters to refine your search.



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	user selected an additional options like 'Remember my answer', 'Submit as False Positive' from the alert. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Remember Restore point Submit Trusted publisher For example, if you choose 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'Remember' from the checkbox options, only the log entries of alerts for which 'Remember my answer' option was selected are displayed.
Treat as	Filter events where the user chose specific actions on the alert. For example, 'treat as a safe application', 'treat as an installer' and so on. Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	• Enter the text or word as your filter criteria For example, if you have chosen 'Contains' from the drop- down and entered 'Installer' in the text field, only the log entries containing the phrase 'Installer' in the 'Treat As' column are displayed.
Alert Type	Filter the log entries based on the CCS component that triggered the alert Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Select the specific filter parameters to refine your search. Antivirus Alert Firewall Alert HIPS alert Containment alert VirusScope Alert Network alert For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'Antivirus Alert' checkbox, only the log of antivirus alerts are displayed.

CCS Tasks

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Code	Filter the entries based on specified error code	• Enter the code or a part of it as your filter criteria in the text field.
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	For example, if you have select 'Equal' and entered '0x80004004' in the text field, then only entries containing the value '0x80004004' in the 'Code' column are displayed.
Completed	Filter events based on tasks successfully finished on the specified date	 Enter or select the required date from the date picker For example, if you choose 'Equal' and select '08/01/2019',
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	only the logs of tasks completed on 08/01/2019' are displayed.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Parameter	Filter the entries based on the specified parameter. A 'parameter' is a sub-type of the main task type. For example, 'Quick Scan' and 'Rating Scan' are both parameters of the main task type 'Antivirus Scan'.	• Enter the text or word as your filter criteria. For example, if you choose 'Contains' option from the drop- down and enter the phrase 'Quick Scan' in the text field, then only the entries of 'Antivirus Scan Tasks' with the scan parameter 'Quick Scan' are displayed.
	Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	
Туре	Filter the entries based on the CCS tasks category. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Select the specific filter parameters to refine your search. Antivirus update Antivirus scan Log Clearing Product upgrade Binary update File Rating DB Upgrade Purge file list Virtual Desktop Session Reset the Container DLP Discovery Scan

File List Changes

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Location	Filter the entries based on the file path whose trust rating was changed Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Enter the location or a part of it as your filter criteria in the text field. For example if you have chosen 'Contains' and entered 'C:/Program Files (x86)/Cuckoo Files/Cuckoo.exe in the text field, then only log entries with the same value in the 'Path' column are displayed.
Modifier	Filter events based on who changed the file rating Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Select the filter parameter to refine your search Administrator User Comodo For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'User' checkbox, only logs of changes done by the users are displayed.
Action	Filter the entries based on the	Select the filter parameter to refine your search



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	file activity Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Added Changed Removed For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'Removed' checkbox, only the logs of files that were removed from the file list are displayed.
Rating Source	Filter the entries by who provided the file rating Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Ratings can be provided by: Administrator Administrator (by Vendor) User User (by Vendor) AV database Trusted installer FLS FLS (by Vendor) Valkyrie SmartScreen Signed by Comodo Signed by Microsoft For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'User' checkbox, only the logs of files that were rated by the users are displayed.
Old Rating	Filter the entries based on trust rating of files before the change Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Select the filter parameter to refine your search Unrecognized Trusted Malicious For example, if you select 'Contains' from the drop-down and select 'Unrecognized' checkbox, only the logs of files that are rated as 'Unrecognized' in the 'Old Rating' column are displayed.
New Rating	Filter logs by the trust rating of files after the change Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Select the filter parameter to refine your search Unrecognized Trusted Malicious For example, if you select 'Contains' from the drop-down and select 'Malicious' checkbox, only the logs of files that are rated as 'Malicious' in the 'New Rating' column are displayed.
File Hash	Filter logs by hash value	Enter the SHA1 hash value of the file in the text field to refine your search



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
	Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	

Vendor List Changes

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Vendor	Filter logs by the software publisher name whose trust rating was changed Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	Type the name of the vendor in full or part in the text field. For example if you choose 'Contains' and enter 'Digital' in the text field, only those log entries related to the vendors who has contain 'Digital' as a part in their name are displayed.
Modifier	Filter logs by who changed the vendor rating Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Select the filter parameter to refine your search Administrator User Comodo For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'User' checkbox, only logs of changes done by the users are displayed.
Action	Filter logs by the type of change made to the vendor list. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Possible actions: Added Changed Removed For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'Removed' checkbox, only the logs of vendors that were removed from the vendor list are displayed.
Property	Filter logs by the entity that provided the vendor rating Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Entities that can provide trust ratings: Administrator Rating User Rating Comodo Rating For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'User Rating' checkbox, only the logs of vendors that were rated by users are displayed.
Old Rating	Filter logs by the trust rating of the vendor before the change Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Select the filter parameter to refine your search Unrecognized Trusted Malicious For example, if you select 'Contains' from the drop-down and select 'Unrecognized' checkbox, only the logs of vendors that



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
		are rated as 'Unrecognized' in the 'Old Rating' column are displayed.
New Rating	Filter logs by the vendor's trust rating after the change. Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Possible new trust ratings are: Unrecognized Trusted Malicious For example, if you select 'Contains' from the drop-down and select 'Malicious' checkbox, only the logs of vendors that are rated as 'Malicious' in the 'New Rating' column are displayed.

Configuration Changes

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Action	Filter logs by the type of change that was made. For example, rule modified, file exclusion created. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	Options are: Added Changed Removed Option changed
Modifier	Filter events based on who changed the configuration such as the user, administrator and response given to an alert Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 The possible modifiers are: User Auto learn Antivirus Alert Firewall Alert HIPS alert Containment alert Scheduler Comodo Administrator For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'User' checkbox, only logs of changes done by the users are displayed.
Name	Filter the entries based on object label that was affected by the configuration change, for example, Shared Spaces, Windows Management and so on Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	Enter the object name as filter criteria in the text box. For example, if you choose 'Contains' then enter the phrase 'surfer.exe' in the text field, then you will only see logs with surfer.exe in the name column.



Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Component	Filter logs by the object modified by the action. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	Select the affected object. It is not possible to list all possible objects in this table. Please consult the list in the search interface.

Virtual Desktop Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Action	Filter logs by the type of virtual desktop activity. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	 Possible activities: Virtual Desktop Launched Virtual Desktop Terminated Session Started Session Paused Session Continued Session Terminated Switched to Windows View Switched to Virtual Desktop For example, if you select 'Equal' from the drop-down and select 'Session Started' checkbox, only the session initiated events are displayed in the 'Action' column.
Status	Filter logs by whether the event was was successful or not. Examples include paused sessions successfully resumed, wrong PIN entered and user could not resume a paused session. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	Possible outcomes are: • Success • Failure • Expired



Data Loss Prevention Events

Filter Category	Description	Parameters
Target	Filter entries by document location and / or storage device. Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	 Enter the location, or a part of it, as your filter criteria.
Rule	Filter entries by rule name Select 'Contains' or 'Does Not Contain' option from the drop down menu. 'Does Not Contain' inverts your choice.	• Enter the DLP rule name, or a part of it, as your filter criteria.
Action	Filter entries by the action taken on the target. The action may be:	• Ignore - CCS did not take any action on the file. You are, of course, free to review and assess the file.
	 An action CCS took on target a file. An action that a user took on the target file. An action CCS took on an external device.e detected document. 	 Quarantine - CCS moved the files to quarantine Restore from Quarantine - The file was moved back to its original location by the user Delete from Quarantine - The file was removed from the system by the user Blocked - CCS implemented 'Read-only' mode on an external device, preventing users from copying potentially sensitive files to it.
Status	Filter logs by whether the event was was successful or not. Select 'Equal' or 'Not Equal' from the drop down. 'Not Equal' inverts your choice.	Possible outcomes are: • Success • Failure

6.5. Submit Files for Analysis to Comodo

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'Submit Files'
- Files you submit from this interface are uploaded to Comodo Valkyrie for behavior testing.
- Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdict system. It's purpose is to discover whether or not a file is malicious or safe.
- CCS rates files as either 'trusted', 'malicious' or 'unknown'.
- Files with no rating at all are automatically uploaded when they are executed, or if they are discovered by a rating scan.
 - Files awarded an unknown rating by an admin, user, or by Comodo are not auto-uploaded.

Tip - You can also submit files to Valkyrie from the Quarantine and File List interfaces.

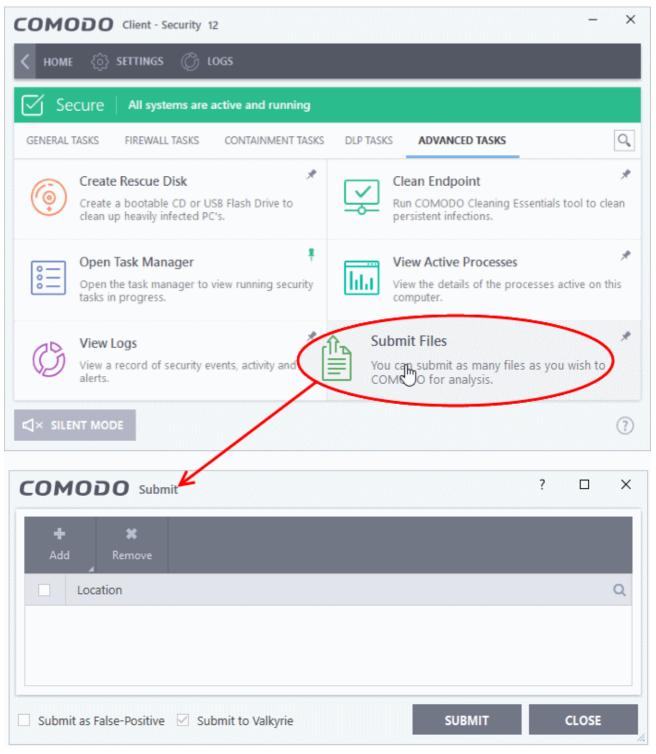
Upload files for analysis



Click 'Tasks' on the CCS home screen

.

• Click 'Advanced Tasks' then 'Submit Files'



• Click 'Add' at top right.



сомо	OO Sub	mit ?	?	×
+ Add	X Remove			
Files				Q
Folders Running	Processes	Desktop\vir\rundll.exe		

- There are three ways to select a file:
 - Files Browse to the file or executable you want to add to the 'Submit Files' list.
 - Folders Browse to the folder you want to add. All files in the folder will be added to the 'Submit Files' list.
 - Running Processes Select a currently active process. The parent application of the process will be added to the 'Submit Files' list.
- Repeat the process to add more files
- Please note that 'Submit to Valkyrie' is pre-selected by default. You cannot change this setting.
- Click the 'Submit' button

•

The uploading process will commence. You can stop, pause/resume or send the submission process to background by clicking respective buttons.

COMODO Valkyrie Submit Files			-		×
C:\old man files\give_a_dog_a_bone.exe					
File Name	Stat	e			
C:\Program Files (x86)\Lantiv\Lantiv Timetabler 6.2.36\LanTime.exe	Ċ	Upload	ling		
C:\Program Files (x86)\MB Free Astrology Birth Chart\MBFreeAstrologyBirthCh	Ů	Pendin	g		
<u>C:\Program Files (x86)\MyFreeWeather\MyWeather.exe</u>	Ů	Pendin	g		
C:\Astrolog\Astrolog.exe	Ů	Pendin	g		
<u>C:\Program Files\AgeCalculator.exe</u>	Ċ	Pendin	g		
STOP PAUSE		SEND	TO BAC	KGROUN	ND

When a file is first submitted, the file look-up service checks whether the file is already queued for analysis by our technicians. Results are shown below:

COMODO Valkyrie Submit Files		?	-		×
100% C:\Program Files\AgeCalculator.exe					
File Name	Stat	te			
C:\Program Files (x86)\Lantiv\Lantiv Timetabler 6.2.36\LanTime.exe	\otimes	Upload	ded		
C:\Program Files (x86)\MB Free Astrology Birth Chart\MBFreeAstrologyBirthCh	\otimes	Alread	y submit	ted	
G:\Program Files (x86)\MyFreeWeather\MyWeather.exe	\otimes	Alread	y submit	ted	
C:\Astrolog\Astrolog.exe	\otimes	Alread	y submit	ted	
C:\Program Files\AgeCalculator.exe	\otimes	Alread	y submit	ted	
× CLOSE		SEND	TO BAC	KGROUN	ID

- **Uploaded** The file was accepted for review by our research labs. The file's signature was not among the list of files waiting to be tested.
- **Already submitted** The file has already been uploaded by another CCS user and is queued for testing. This means the file was not uploaded from your machine.

Comodo will analyze all submitted files. If the file is found to be trustworthy it will be added to the safe list (whitelisted). Conversely, if it is found to be malicious then it will be added to the virus database (black-listed).

Click 'Settings' > 'File List' > 'Submitted Files' to view all files uploaded to our labs. See **Submitted Files** for more details.

6.6. View Active Process List

Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'View Active Processes'

- The active process list shows all processes started by applications currently running on your system.
- CCS can identify the parent application of a process to detect when a non-trusted application is trying to spawn a trusted application. CCS can then deny access rights to the trusted application.
- This deep level of inspection protects you against malware that tries to use trusted software to launch an attack.
- The interface also lets you run an online lookup on the parent application. Here, you can check its trust rating on the latest cloud databases. You can also submit an application to Comodo for analysis.

View the active process list

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks'
- Click the 'View Active Processes' tile:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

	3 logs				
Secure All systems	are active a	and running			
SENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASI	KS CONT	TAINMENT TASKS	DLP TASKS ADVA	NCED TASKS	
Create Rescue Disk Create a bootable CD clean up heavily infecte		<pre></pre>	Clean End Run COMO persistent i	DO Cleaning Essent	ials tool to cle
Open Task Manager Open the task manager Open the task manager tasks in progress. View Logs View a record of secur	r to view ru	\sum	computer. 介 _国 Submit Fi	ls of the processes	
OMODO Active Pro	cesses List PID	Company	User Name	? - Restriction	- 🗆
fontdrvhost.exe	776	Microsoft Wi	UMFD-1	Disabled	Trusted
🔳 dwm.exe	968	Microsoft Wi	DWM-1	Disabled	Trusted
	4232	Microsoft Wi	John	Disabled	Trusted
a explorer.exe					Trusted
🚔 🖃 explorer.exe	6584	Microsoft Wi	John	Disabled	
-	6584 336	Microsoft Wi	John John	Disabled Fully Virtu	Unknown
MSASCuiL.exe		Microsoft Wi			Unknown Trusted
BiHMS.exe	336	Microsoft Wi	John	Fully Virtu	

- Application The name of the parent executable of the process.
- **PID** The unique process identifier.
- Company The vendor who created the software
- User Name The user account under which the program is run
- **Restriction** The security limitations placed on the program by the CCS containment module.
- Rating The trust level of the program as per the local file list ('Settings' > 'File Rating' > File List')



Right-click on any process to open the context sensitive menu:

😡 MyWeather.exe	3784	John	Disabled	Trusted
☆ BiHMS.exe	Show Full Path		Fully Virtu	Unknown
💿 🗆 chrome.exe	Show Contained Only Show COMODO Processes Rur	ning Inside the Container	Disabled	Trusted
	Add to Trusted Files			
	Online Lookup Submit			
	Submit to Valkyrie			
	Jump to Folder			
	Show Activities			

- Show Full Path View the install location of the parent program
- Show Contained Only Hides all processes except those running in the container.
- Show COMODO Processes Running Inside the Container Hide all processes except Comodo processes running in the container.
- Add to Trusted Files Assign 'Trusted' status to the executable that started the process. This allows the file to run as normal in future. You can view trusted files in the CCS 'File List' ('Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List').
- **Online Lookup** Search for the executable in Comodo's global blacklist and whitelist. The results will tell you if the file is clean, malicious or unknown.
- Submit to Valkyrie Uploads the parent executable to Comodo Valkyrie for analysis. Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdicting system that analyzes the submitted files with a range of static and dynamic tests to determine the file's trust rating. The files are added to the safe list (white-listed) or to the database of virus signatures (blacklisted) depending on the results.
- Jump to Folder Opens the folder containing the executable.
- Show Activities Shows all actions by processes of the application. This option is available only for contained applications and if VirusScope is enabled ('Settings' > 'Advanced Protection > 'VirusScope').
- Click the 'More' button to open Comodo KillSwitch an advanced system monitor that lets you quickly identify and terminate any unsafe processes on your system.

📧 🖯 services.exe	612	Microsoft Wi	SYSTEM	Disabled	Trusted	
						~
				MORE	CLOSE	

If KillSwitch is not yet installed, clicking this button will prompt you to download the application. See **Identify and Kill Unsafe Running Processes** for more details.

View 'Active Processes' list of contained applications

Click the shortcut on the widget to view processes by applications inside the container. These applications include:

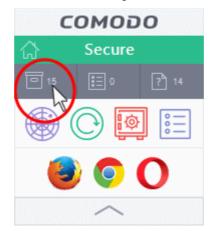
- Auto-Containment Applications that are made to run in the container by a containment rule. See 'Auto-Containment Rules' for more details on defining auto-containment rules.
- Run Virtual Applications that were manually run in containment. See 'Run an Application in Containment' for more details.



- Applications that are run inside the containment using the context sensitive menu Click here for more details.
- Running browsers inside the containment from the widget Click here for more details.
- Programs that are added manually See 'Auto-Containment Rules' for more details.

View active processes from contained applications

• Click the first box in the second row in the CCS Widget.



The Active Processes List (Contained Only) screen appears:

Application	PID	Company	User Name	Restriction	Rating
O opera.exe	6480	Opera Softw	John	Fully Virtu	Unknown
🦻 🗏 firefox.exe	7988	Mozilla Corp	John	Fully Virtu	Trusted
🍯 firefox.exe	3324	Mozilla Corp	John	Fully Virtu	Trusted
🍯 firefox.exe	6692	Mozilla Corp	John	Fully Virtu	Trusted
🍯 firefox.exe	5088	Mozilla Corp	John	Fully Virtu	Trusted
🍯 firefox.exe	7612	Mozilla Corp	John	Fully Virtu	Trusted
dllhost.exe	7924	Microsoft Wi	John	Fully Virtu	Trusted
🏠 BiHMS.exe	6344		John	Fully Virtu	Unknown
🏠 BiHMS.exe	6344		John	Fully Virtu	Unknown

7. CCS Advanced Settings

Click 'Settings' at the top-left of the CCS home screen

The settings area lets you configure every aspect of the operation, behavior and appearance of Comodo Client Security. There are two main areas:

- General settings Specify top-level preferences regarding the interface, updates and event logs.
- Security settings Configure each CCS security module. Modules include antivirus, firewall, file-rating, containment and data loss prevention.

COMODO Client	- Security 12 – X
K HOME 🔅 SETTING	is 🖒 logs
✓1 Secure All sy	ystems are active and running
	d Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
- General Settings	User Interface
User Interface	User Interlace
Updates	Language: English (United States) - By COMODO
Logging	Show messages from COMODO Message Center
Configuration	Show notification messages
✓ Antivirus	Show desktop widget
✓ Firewall	Show information messages when tasks are minimized/sent to background
✓ HIPS	Play sound when an alert is shown
✓ Containment	Show notification messages
✓ Data Loss Prevention	
✓ File Rating	
✓ Advanced Protection	
Website Filtering	
	OK CANCEL
	OK CANCEL

You might need to enter a password to access the settings if so configured in the Endpoint Manager profile. See 'Password Protection' for more details.

Click the following links for help with specific settings:

- · General Settings Configure the appearance and behavior of the application
 - Customize User Interface
 - Configure Virus database Updates
 - Log Settings
 - Manage CCS Configurations
- Antivirus Settings
 - Real-time Scanner Settings
 - Scan Profiles



• Firewall Settings

•

- General Firewall Settings
- Application Rules
- Global Rules
- Firewall Rule Sets
- Network Zones
- Port Sets
- HIPS Settings
 - General HIPS Settings
 - Active HIPS Rules
 - HIPS Rule Sets
 - Protected Objects HIPS
 - HIPS Groups
 - **Data Loss Prevention**
 - DLP Monitoring Rules
 - DLP Discovery Rules
 - DLP Keyword Groups
- Containment Settings
 - Containment Settings
 - Auto-Containment Rules
 - Protected Objects Containment
 - Virtual Desktop Settings
 - Containment An Overview
 - Unknown Files: The Scanning Process
- File Ratings
 - File Rating Settings
 - File Groups
 - File List
 - Submitted Files
 - Vendor List
- Advanced Protection
 - VirusScope Settings
 - Scan Exclusions
 - Device Control Settings
 - Script Analysis Settings
 - Miscellaneous
- Web Filter Settings
 - Web Filter Rules
 - Website Categories

7.1. General Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'General Settings'
- The general settings area lets you customize the appearance and overall behavior of Comodo Client



Security.

• You can configure the interface language, notifications, automatic updates, logging, and more.

Configure General CCS Settings

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' on the left:

COMODO Advanced	d Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
COMODO Advanced - General Settings User Interface Updates Logging Configuration Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment	Settings ? – □ × Image: English (United States) - By COMODO Image: English (United States) - By COMODO Image: Show messages from COMODO Message Center Image: Show notification messages Image: Show desktop widget Image: Show information messages when tasks are minimized/sent to background Image: Play sound when an alert is shown Show notification messages
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	
	OK CANCEL

General settings is broken down into the following areas:

- User Interface
- Updates
- Logging
- Configuration

7.1.1. Customize User Interface

- Click 'Settings' > 'General Settings' > 'User Interface'
- The user interface tab lets you choose your preferred language, and customize the look and feel of the application.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



COMODO Advanced	Settings ? — 🗆	×
- General Settings User Interface	User Interface	
Updates Logging Configuration Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering	Language: English (United States) - By COMODO Show messages from COMODO Message Center Show notification messages Show desktop widget Show information messages when tasks are minimized/sent to background Play sound when an alert is shown Show notification messages	
	OK CANCEL	

• Language Settings - Comodo Client Security is available in many different languages. Switch languages by clicking the 'Language' drop-down menu: (*Default = English (United States)*).



COMODO Advance	ed Settings		? – 🗆	×
- General Settings User Interface	User I	nterface	_	
Updates	Language:	English (United States) - By COMODO English (United States) - By COMODO	$\overline{\mathbf{O}}$	
Logging	Show mess	By Community - الحربية		
Configuration	Show notif	Български - Бу Соттипіту		
✓ Antivirus	Show desk	中文(简体) - By COMODO		
✓ Firewall	Show infor	正體中文 - By Community Hrvatski (Croatian) - By Community	ground	
✓ HIPS	Play sound	Čeština - By Community Dansk - By Community		
	Show notificat	Nederlands - By Community		
✓ Containment		Eesti keel - By Community		
✓ File Rating		Français - By Community Deutsch - By Community		
✓ Advanced Protection		<mark>Ελληνικά - By Community</mark> Magyar - By Community		

 Show messages from COMODO Message Center - Message center messages keep you abreast of Comodo news and special offers. If enabled, the messages will periodically appear as small pop-ups. (*Default = Disabled*)

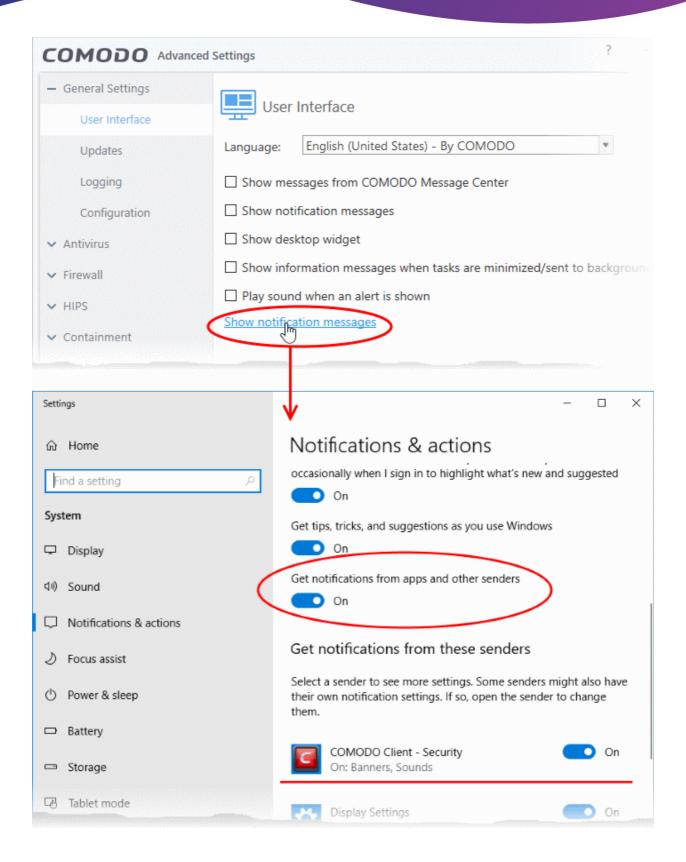


 Show notification messages - CCS system notices appear in the bottom right-hand corner of your screen (just above the tray icons). They inform you about any actions that CCS is taking, and any CCS status updates. (*Default = Disabled*)

Note - To view these messages, you also need to allow notifications from Comodo in Windows:

- Click the 'Show notification messages' link
- · This opens the Windows 'Notifications and Actions' page
- Enable 'Get notifications from apps and other senders'
- Enable 'Comodo Client Security' in the senders list

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



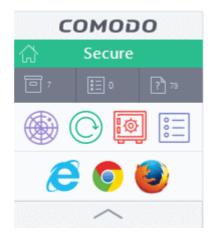
Show desktop widget - The desktop widget shows your overall security status, outgoing and incoming traffic, and any background tasks.

The widget also contains shortcuts to open CCS, to open the task manager, to open your browsers, and to visit social network sites.

Select this checkbox if you want the widget on your desktop. (Default = Disabled)

Tip: You can also enable or disable the widget by right-clicking on the CCS system icon.





See The Widget for more details.

• Show information messages when tasks are minimized/sent to background - CCS can show messages which explain what happens when you minimize or move a task:

COMODO Minimize Window X	COMODO Send To Background X
What is a Minimized Task? A task which doesn't consume as much resources as an active task.	What is a Background Task? A task which runs in the background without interfering with your normal PC activities.
Minimize Window action, where available, makes the task such as scanning or updating continue running with a lower priority compared to other programs. These tasks are going to take longer to complete but be less resource intensive.	Send To Background action, where available, makes the task such as scanning or updating continue running in the background. These tasks are going to take longer to complete but resource usage of the computer is going to be minimal.
Restoring the window to foreground will restore the previous priority back as well.	Please use Task Manager in order to access them later.
Do not show this message again OK	Do not show this message again OK

Disable this setting if you don't want to view these messages (*Default = Disabled*).

- Play sound when an alert is shown CCS plays a chime when it shows a security alert. (*Default = Disabled*).
- Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect

Note: In a managed network, CCS settings are governed by Endpoint Manager.



7.1.2. Configure Virus Database Updates

- Click 'Settings' > 'General Settings' > 'Updates'
- This area lets you configure CCS program and database updates:

COMODO Advance	ed Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
 General Settings User Interface 	Check for database updates every
Updates Logging Configuration	Options Do not check for updates if I am using <u>these connections</u> Do not check for updates if running on battery
 Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Check for updates during Windows Automatic Maintenance Send requests to COMODO online services only if internet connection is present Proxy and Host Settings
	OK CANCEL

- Check for database updates every... Set how frequently CCS should check for application updates. Updates are downloaded from Comodo servers by default, but you have the option to set a local server to handle them instead. Select the interval in hours / days. (*Default and recommended = every 1 hour*)
- Do not check updates if am using these connections CCS will not check for updates if you are using specific internet connections. For example, you may not wish to check for updates when using a wireless connection you know is slow or insecure. (*Default = Disabled*)
 - Enable 'Do not check updates if am using these connections'.
 - Click the 'these connections' link.
 - Select the connection over which you do not want to check for updates.
 - Click 'OK'.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

) Advanced	l Settings	? – 🗆 X	
	O Updates		
	Check for database updates every	1	
	Options		
° (Do not check for updates if I am using these connection	ons	
	 Do not cneck for updates if running on battery Check for updates during Windows Automatic Mainten 	ance	
	COMODO Connections	? 🗆 X	
	Connection Names		
	Ethernet		
	Ethernet 2		
	Ethernet 3		
	ок	CANCEL	

- **Do not check for updates if running on battery** CCS will not download updates if it detects your computer is on battery power. This is intended to extend battery lifetime on laptops. (*Default = Disabled*).
- Check for updates during Windows Automatic Maintenance Allow CCS to receive updates when Windows is updating itself (*Default = Disabled*).
- Send requests to COMODO online services only if internet connection is present By default, CCS automatically connects to Comodo servers for updates and essential services such as FLS, Endpoint Manager, and Valkyrie. This setting lets you disable these connection requests if you are not connected to the internet.

This is how CCS will proceed if you enable or disable this setting:

- Enabled + No internet connection CCS will not make requests to Comodo online services. A failure
 message is shown if you attempt a manual lookup, submit or update.
- Enabled + Connected to internet CCS makes requests to Comodo online services.
- Disabled + Connected to internet CCS makes requests to Comodo online services.
- **Disabled + No internet connection** CCS will make requests to Comodo online services, but will not be able to connect. An error message is shown.

(Default = Disabled)

 Proxy and Host Settings - Lets you specify (1) A proxy server through which CCS should connect to the update servers, and/or (2) Local hosts from which this computer should collect updates. The two are not dependent on each another. You can setup (1) without (2) and vice-versa, or enable both.



- By default, CCS connects to the internet directly, and downloads updates from Comodo servers.
- You can specify a proxy through which CCS connects to the update servers. If you do not set a proxy then CCS will continue to use a direct connection.
- You can also specify a local host to act as a staging server for the updates. Individual endpoints will then fetch updates from the staging server instead of from Comodo servers. This can save bandwidth and accelerate updates in large networks.

Configure proxy and host settings

• Click 'Proxy and Host Settings' at the bottom of the updates interface:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

0	Advanced	Settings						?	-		×
ings face		O nt	odates								
		Check	for database	updates eve	ery		1	÷ h	our(s)	•	
		Options									
ration		Do not	t check for up	dates if I an	n using <u>th</u>	ese connecti	ons				
		Do not	t check for up	dates if run	ning on ba	ttery					
		Check	for updates o	luring Wind	ows Autom	atic Mainter	ance				
		Send r	equests to CO	OMODO on	ine service	only if inter	net cor	nectio	n is pre	sent	
ent	(Proxy and	<u>ا Host Setting</u>	s							
			<u> </u>								
	C	омоі	Proxy	and Host Se	ttings		?		×		
	Ε	Use proxy	,								
		Host:							1		
		Port:	0								
	Ε	Use authe	ntication								
		Login:									
		Password:									
	0	Use direct	connection i	f proxy is ur	nreachable						
		+ Add	 Edit	🗶 Remove	t Move Up	↓ Move Dowr					
		Serv	ers					Status			
		http:	//download.co	modo.com							
		•						in an			
						ок	C/	ANCEL			

- Configure a proxy server
- Add local servers for CCS to download updates from

Configure a proxy server



сомоі	DO Proxy	and Host Se	ttings		?		×
Use proxy							
Host:							
Port:	0	ь. 7					
Use authe	ntication						
Login:							
Password:							
Use direct	connection	if proxy is u	nreachable				
+	1	×	t				
Add	Edit	Remove	Move Up	Move Down			
Serv	ers					Status	

- Use Proxy CCS will to connect to the update server through a proxy server.
 - Enter the host name or IP address of the proxy and the connection port
- **Use Authentication** Provide the username and password of the proxy if required.
- Use direct connection if proxy is unreachable Allow CCS to fallback to a direct internet connection if the proxy fails.
 - If you specify a proxy BUT disable direct connections, then CCS will not be able to connect to the download servers if the proxy fails.

Configure updates via local update server

Note: You need to install the 'ESM Update Mirror' utility to download updates to the local server.

- Download the setup file from https://drive.google.com/file/d/0B4qKr5xfENWBS0FOUHM2VDFQMnc/view.
- Run the setup file on a Windows server and follow the wizard to install the application
- Ensure that the service has started:
 - 'Run' > Enter 'services.msc' > locate 'Apache2.2'
 - · Click the 'Start' link on the left if the service is not running
 - Click the 'Add' button in the lower pane



Use direct	connection	if proxy is ur	nreachable		
+ Add	🖌 Edit	X Remove	↑ Move Up	↓ Move Down	
Serve Serve	ers				Status
🗹 http:	//download.	comodo.com			
сомо	DO Edi	t property			? ×
Add a new h	nost				
			ОК		CANCEL

- Enter the IP address or hostname of the server (with 'http://' prefix) and click 'OK'
- Repeat the process to add more local update servers

Use	direct	t connection	if proxy is ur	nreachable		
+ Ado		. Edit	X Remove	↑ Move Up	↓ Move Down	
	Serv	rers				Status
	http:	://download.c	comodo.com			
\checkmark	http:	://192.51.100.	10			
	http:	://192.51.100.	11			
				o	К	CANCEL

- Use the 'Move Up' and 'Move Down' buttons to choose the order in which servers should be consulted. CCS will download from the first server that contains new updates.
- Use the status switches to activate or deactivate individual servers
- Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect.



7.1.3. Log Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'General Settings' > 'Logging'
- Comodo Client Security keeps detailed records of all antivirus, firewall, HIPS, containment, device control, VirusScope and autorun events.
- Logs are also created for 'Alerts Displayed', 'Tasks Launched', 'File List' changes, 'Vendor list changes' and 'CCS Configuration Changes'.
- Log settings let you specify the storage location, the maximum size of log files, and how CCS should react if the maximum file size is exceeded.

Note: You can view the logs themselves at 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'View Logs'.

Configure log settings

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' > 'Logging':

COMODO Advance	ed Settings ? – \Box ×
 General Settings User Interface 	Cogging ^
Updates	Logging options allow you to manage recording of critical events like malware events, firewall events, etc.
Logging	Write to local log database (COMODO format)
Configuration	Write to syslog server
✓ Antivirus	Host Port 514
✓ Firewall	□ Write to remote server (JSON format)
✓ HIPS	Host Port 0
 Containment 	Token
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Write to log file (CEF format)
✓ File Rating	Path Browse
 Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	☑ Write to Windows Event Log Log File Management
	When log file reaches 100 MB
	Keep on updating it removing the oldest records
	OK CANCEL

Logging

- Write to local log database (COMODO format) Enable or disable logs in Comodo format (*Default = Enabled*)
- Write to Syslog Server (CEF Format) CCS forwards the logs to an external Syslog server integrated with Endpoint Manager (EM). Enter the IP/hostname and port of the Syslog server in fields provided. (Default = Disabled).



- Write to remote server (JSON format) CCS forwards the logs over https to a server integrated with Endpoint Manager. (*Default = Disabled*).
 - Host Enter the IP address or the host name of the server
 - Port The port through which the server listens to the CCS logs
 - **Token** Enter the client authentication token so CCS can connect and forward logs to the server. The token is generated when you configure the HTTP Event Collector (HEC) on the server.
 - See https://docs.splunk.com/Documentation/Splunk/7.2.6/Data/UsetheHTTPEventCollector if you need help to setup the event collector and generate a token.
 - Enter the IP/hostname and port of the server in fields provided. Enter the security token to access the remote server in the field provided.
- Write to Log file (CEF) Format CCS stores the logs at a specific local or network location. Click 'Browse' to select the storage location (Default = Disabled).
- Write to Windows Event Logs CCS logs are appended to 'Windows Event' logs . (Default = Enabled)
 - Type 'Event Viewer' in Windows search to view Windows logs

Log File Management

- Specify what should happen when the log file reaches a certain size. You can choose keep the older logs or discard them.
 - When log file reaches Enter the maximum size of a log file in MB. (Default = 100MB)
 - Keep on updating it removing the oldest records When a log file reaches the max. size, CCS will delete the earliest log entries to make room for the new entries. (Default = Enabled)
 - Move it to the specified folder When a log file reaches the max. size, CCS starts a new log file and moves the old one to a folder of your choice. (Default = Disabled)
 - Select the option and click 'the specified folder' to choose the storage folder:



☑ Write to Windows	Event Log		
Log File Managen	nent		
When log file reaches	100 MB		
O Keep on updating	it removing the oldest records		
Move it to <u>the spe</u> User Statistics	cified folder		
В	rowse for Folder	×	
	Pick a Directory		
	 Local Disk (C:) Astrolog Bistone CCS Logs Federal Bank Statements Old Man Apps Old Man files PerfLogs Program Files Program Files (x86) ProgramData 	Cancel	

The selected folder path will appear beside 'Move it to'.

☑ Write to Windows Event Log	
Log File Management	
When log file reaches 100 MB	
○ Keep on updating it removing the oldest records	
Move it to <u>C:\CCS Logs</u>	
User Statistics	

User Statistics

Send anonymous program usage statistics to Comodo - Comodo collects usage details so we can
analyze how our users interact with CCS. This real-world data allows us to create product improvements
which reflect the needs of our users. If you enable this option, CCS will periodically send usage data to
Comodo servers through a secure, encrypted channel. Your privacy is not affected because the data is
anonymized. Disable this option if you don't want to send usage details to Comodo. (Default = Enabled)



• Click 'OK' for your changes to take effect

7.1.4. Manage CCS Configurations

- Click 'Settings' > 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'
- CCS lets you export your current security settings as a profile. You can then import the profile on another computer with CCS installed, and avoid having to configure everything again.
- Exporting your settings is a great time-saver if:
 - You are a network admin who wants to implement a standard configuration on multiple computers.
 - You need to uninstall and re-install CCS or Windows, and want to quickly implement your old settings.

Note: Any changes you make over time are automatically saved in the 'Active' profile. If you want to export your current settings then export the 'Active' profile.

- The configurations area lets you switch your currently active profile and import/export profiles.
- Access the configuration settings interface
- Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'

COMODO Advance	Settings					?	-		×
 General Settings User Interface Updates 	-0-	ifiguration lets you imp		nd switch conf	igurations.				
Logging Configuration	₽ Import	Export	√ Activate	X Remove					
✓ Antivirus	Configurati	ions		Statu	15				
✓ Firewall	COMODO	Client - Securi	ity Managed	Activ	e				
✓ HIPS									
✓ Containment									
➤ Data Loss Prevention									
✓ File Rating									
✓ Advanced Protection									
Website Filtering									
					ОК		c	ANCEL	

The configurations interface shows all Comodo and user-defined profiles. The 'Active' profile is the one that is currently in effect on your computer. The following sections explain more about:



- Comodo Preset Configurations
- Importing/Exporting and Managing Personal Configurations

7.1.4.1. Comodo Preset Configurations

- Comodo preset configurations implement strong security settings on your endpoints.
- CCS ships with two preset configurations 'Comodo Client Security' and 'Comodo Client Security' Managed'.
 - 'Comodo Client Security Managed' is applied to managed endpoints by default.
 - · 'Comodo Client Security' is applied to unmanaged endpoints
- Reminder the 'Active' profile is, in effect, your current CCS settings. Any changes you make to settings are recorded in the active profile. You can change the active profile at any time.

Comodo Client Security Managed - The default configuration for computers managed by Endpoint Manager. Important configuration information:

- HIPS is disabled.
- Auto-Containment is enabled.
- VirusScope is enabled.
- Realtime scan is enabled.
- Traffic filtering (Firewall) is enabled in Safe mode.
- Only commonly infected files/folders are protected against infection.
- Only commonly exploited COM interfaces are protected.
- Advanced Protection is tuned to prevent infection of the system.
- Alert message notification is disabled.
- VirusScope alerts are disabled

Comodo Client Security - The default configuration on standalone (unmanaged) computers.

HIPS is disabled.

Important configuration information:

- Auto-Containment is enabled.
- VirusScope is disabled.
- Realtime scan is enabled.
- Traffic filtering (Firewall) is enabled in Safe mode.
- Only commonly infected files/folders are protected against infection.
- Only commonly exploited COM interfaces are protected.
- Advanced Protection is tuned to prevent infection of the system.
- Alert message notification is enabled.
- VirusScope alerts are disabled

If you wish to switch to Comodo Client - Security option, you can select the option from the 'Configuration' panel.

7.1.4.2. Personal Configurations

- Click 'Settings' > 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'
- You can import, export, activate and manage your custom CCS configurations
- Exported Configuration profiles have the file extension .cfgx.
- See the following sections for more information:
 - Export a stored configuration to a file
 - Import a saved configuration from a file



- Select a different active configuration setting
- Delete a inactive configuration profile

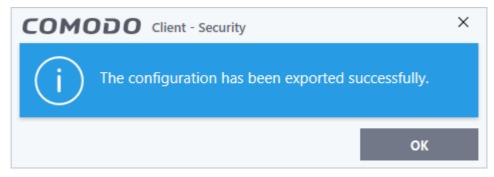
Export a stored configuration to a file

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'
- Select a configuration profile then click 'Export'
- You will be given the chance to save any unsaved config. changes before exporting:

COMODO Advanced	Settings	? – 🗆 X
 General Settings User Interface 	Configuration	
Updates	This section lets you import, export and	switch configurations.
Logging	E 🗸	×
Configuration	Import Exnort Activate	Remove
✓ Antivirus	Configurations	Status
✓ Firewall	COMODO Client - Security	Active
✓ HIPS	COMODO Client - Security Managed	
✓ Containment		
50146	•	×
СОМС	Client - Security	^
?	Would you like to save your changes to configuration before exporting it?	o the current
	YES NO	CANCEL

- Next, browse to the location where you want to save the configuration file.
- · Create a name for the profile. For example, 'My CCS Settings', or 'CCS Highest Security Settings'
- Click 'Save':

A confirmation dialog will appear if the export is successful:





Import a saved configuration from a file

- You can import a CCS configuration from a previously saved file
- Note After importing, you must activate the profile for it to take effect

Import a profile

- Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'
- Click the 'Import' button:

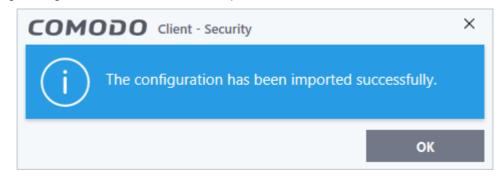
 General Settings User Interface 	Confi	guration					
Updates	This section le	ets <mark>y</mark> ou imp	ort, export a	nd switch co	nfigur	ations.	
Logging			~	×			
Configuration	Import	Export	Activate	Remove			
 Antivirus 	Configuration	ns		Sta	itus		
 Firewall 	Select a configu	ration file to	import				×
HIPS	Look in:	CCS config			~	G 🏚 🖻 🖽 -	
Containment	Quick access	ame] config.cfg) Î			Date modified 12/11/2018 5:38 PM	Type CFGX File
Data Loss Prevention	Quick access						
File Rating	Desktop						
 Advanced Protection 	-						
Website Filtering	Libraries						
	This PC						
	۷.	-					>
	Network	e name:				~	Open
	Fit	es of type:	CIS configura	ation files (*.cfgx)	~	Cancel

- Navigate to the location of the saved profile and click 'Open'. Configuration files have a .cfgx extension.
- Enter a name for the profile you wish to import and click 'OK'.



COMODO Import As		? ×
Enter a name for this configuration: My_CCS_modified_profile		
	ок	CANCEL

The following message is shown after a successful import:



Activate the profile - Select the profile you just imported and click the 'Activate' button:



COMODO Advance	d Settings					?	-		×
 General Settings User Interface Updates 		uration s you imp	ort, export a	nd switc	h configurations.				
Logging	=		~	×					
Configuration	Import	Export	Activate	Remo	ve				
✓ Antivirus	Configurations				Status				
✓ Firewall	COMODO Clien	it - Securit	у						
✓ HIPS	COMODO Clien	nt - Securit	y Managed		Active				
✓ Containment	My_CCS_modifi	ed_profile							
➤ Data Loss Prevention									
✓ File Rating									
✓ Advanced Protection									
Website Filtering									
					ок		CA	NCEL	

Select and implement a different configuration profile

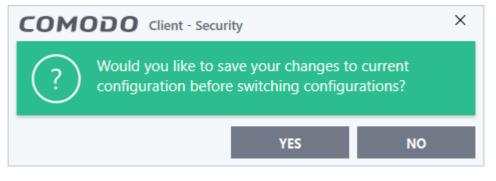
You can change the active configuration profile at any time.

- Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'
- Choose the profile you want to enable and click the 'Activate' button:

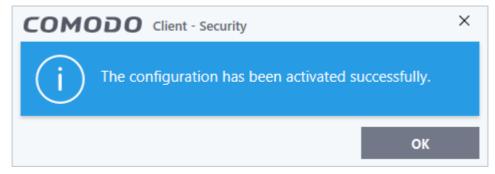


COMODO Advance	d Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings User Interface Updates 	Configuration This section lets you import, export and switch configurations.				
Logging					
 ✓ Antivirus ✓ Firewall 	Configurations Status COMODO Client - Security				
 ✓ HIPS ✓ Containment 	COMODO Client - Security Managed Active				
✓ Data Loss Prevention	My_CCS_modified_profile				
 File Rating Advanced Protection 					
Website Filtering					
	ок		CAN	ICEL	

You will be prompted to save the changes to the settings in you current profile before the new profile is deployed.



4. Click 'Yes' to save any setting changes in the current configuration, else click 'No'.





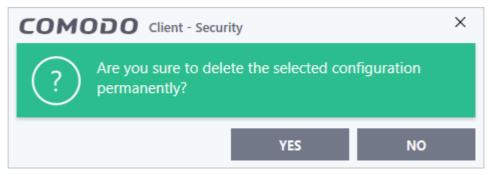
Delete an inactive configuration profile

You can remove any unwanted configuration profiles from the list. You cannot delete the currently active profile.

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'General Settings' > 'Configuration'
- Choose the configuration profile you want to delete then click the 'Remove' button

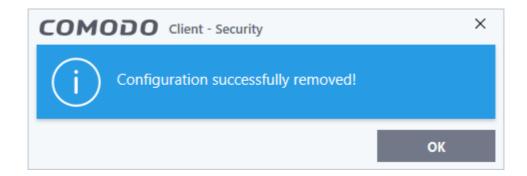
COMODO Advance	d Settings		?	-		×
 General Settings User Interface Updates 	Configuration This section lets you import, export and s	witch configuration	s.			
Logging Configuration	Import Export Activate	* Remove				
✓ Antivirus	Configurations	Status				
✓ Firewall	COMODO Client - Security					
✓ HIPS	COMODO Client - Security Managed	Active				
✓ Containment	My_CCS_modified_profile					
 Data Loss Prevention 						
✓ File Rating						
 Advanced Protection 						
Website Filtering						
		ок		c	ANCEL	

A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



5. Click 'Yes'. The configuration profile will be deleted from your computer.





7.2. Antivirus Configuration

Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus'

The 'Antivirus' settings area lets you configure:

- The behavior of the real-time antivirus monitor
- Scan profiles for on-demand and scheduled scans

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? — 🗆	×
 General Settings Antivirus 	Realtime Scan	^
Realtime Scan	✓ Enable Realtime Scan (Recommended)	
Scans	This option enables virus scanning when your computer is used and prevents threats before they enter your system.	
✓ Firewall	Enable scanning optimizations (Recommended)	
✓ HIPS	Use this option to activate the performance improving technologies for realtime scanning.	
✓ Containment	Do not show auto-scan alerts Ignore 🔻	
 Data Loss Prevention 	Use this option to scan removable media such as USB sticks, CDs, DVDs, external HDDs,	
✓ File Rating	etc.	
 Advanced Protection 	Detection	
Website Filtering	□ Scan computer memory after the computer starts	
	Do not show antivirus alerts Quarantine Threats 🔻	
	Decompress and scan archive files of extension(s): <u>*.exe, *.jar</u>	
	Set new on-screen alert timeout to 120 secs	
	Set new maximum file size limit to 40 MB	~
	OK CANCEL	

The following sections explain about:

- Real-time Scan Settings
- Custom Scan Profiles



7.2.1. Real-time Scanner Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Realtime Scan'
- The real-time scanner automatically checks for viruses whenever you open or move a file. It also monitors background activity for malicious processes.
- The real-time scanner also scans:
 - System memory on system startup
 - Any plugged-in removable storage devices
- You can specify that CCS does not show you alerts when it finds a threat, but automatically deals with the threat. You can choose to automatically quarantine or delete threats if you disable alerts.
- We strongly recommend you leave the real-time scanner enabled at all times.

Configure real-time scans

- Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'Antivirus' > 'Realtime Scan' on the left

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? — 🗆	×
 General Settings Antivirus 	Realtime Scan	^
Realtime Scan	Enable Realtime Scan (Recommended)	
Scans	This option enables virus scanning when your computer is used and prevents threats before they enter your system.	
✓ Firewall	Enable scanning optimizations (Recommended)	
✓ HIPS	Use this option to activate the performance improving technologies for realtime scanning.	
✓ Containment	☑ Do not show auto-scan alerts Ignore ▼	
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	Use this option to scan removable media such as USB sticks, CDs, DVDs, external HDDs, etc.	
 Advanced Protection 	Detection	
Website Filtering	□ Scan computer memory after the computer starts	
	☑ Do not show antivirus alerts Quarantine Threats ▼	
	Decompress and scan archive files of extension(s): <u>*.exe, *.jar</u>	
	Set new on-screen alert timeout to 120 secs	
	Set new maximum file size limit to 40 MB	~
	OK CANCEL	

- Enable Realtime Scan Activate or deactivate real-time scanning. The real-time scanner continually
 monitors your computer for malicious activity and protects you from threats as soon as they occur. Comodo
 strongly recommends you keep this option enabled. (*Default=Enabled*)
- Enable scanning optimizations Will enable various techniques during a virus scan to reduce resource usage and speed-up the scan process. For example, antivirus scans will run in the background. (*Default* = *Enabled*)

- Do not show auto-scan alerts Select whether CCS alerts you when you plug a removable device into your computer (USB stick, portable HDD etc). The alert asks you whether you want to scan the device for viruses.
 - **Enabled** = Alerts are not shown. CCS will automatically take the action shown in the dropdown box next to the setting.
 - **Disabled** = Alerts are shown when you plug a removable device into your computer. You can choose to scan the device, or skip the scan. An example is shown below:

сом	ODO Antivirus ?
	We've just detected that new removable media device has been connected (D:\). We recommended to scan it.
\bigcirc	Scan Scan the device to make sure it's not infected.
(!)	Ignore Skip the scan. Note: malware undetected now may harm your and other computers later.
🔲 Remem	ber my answer

- Ignore The device is not scanned
- Scan The device is automatically scanned for viruses. The scan uses the settings in the 'Manual Scan' profile. If this is not available then the scan uses the settings in the 'Full Scan' profile.

Detection Settings

- Scan computer memory after the computer starts The antivirus scans system memory immediately
 after your computer starts up. Disable to remove the scan from the list of Windows startup processes.
 (Default = Disabled)
- Do not show antivirus alerts Configure whether or not alerts are shown to end-user when CCS finds malware.

'Do not show antivirus alerts' will minimize disturbance but at some loss of user awareness. If you disable alerts alerts then please choose the default responses that CCS should take:

- **Quarantine Threats** Prevents the threat from running and moves it to quarantine (*Default*). You can review quarantined files at 'Tasks' > 'Advanced Tasks' > 'View Quarantine'.
- Block Threats Prevents the threat from running then deletes it from your computer.

Note: If you disable this option then alerts are shown to users when malware is detected. The alert offers users the choice to quarantine or block the threat.

 Decompress and scan archive files of extension(s) - Comodo Antivirus will scan all types of archive files. Archive file types include .jar, RAR, WinRAR, ZIP, WinZIP ARJ, WinARJ and CAB files. You will be alerted to the presence of viruses in compressed files before you even open them. (Default = Enabled)

You can manage the types of archives decompressed and scanned by Comodo Antivirus as follows:

• Click file type link next to the setting (<u>*.exe, *.jar</u>)



Click 'Add' to add another t	file	type	to	the	list	t.
------------------------------	------	------	----	-----	------	----

COMODO Manage Extensions			?		×
+ X Add Edit Remove					
Extensions	Q	File Size Limit	Status		
(I) *.exe		4096 KB			
□ *.jar		1024 KB			
COMODO Edit property			?	×	
Set archive extension *.exe					
Set file size limit 4096 🕞 KB 🔻					
		ОК	CANCEL		
		ОК	C	ANCEL	

- Enter the extension type you wish to scan and click 'OK'.
 - Example archive extensions include .zip , .rar, .msi, .7z , .jar and .cab.
 - Set the max. size of this file type that CCS should scan. Files larger than this will not be scanned.
- Repeat the process to add more extensions

•

- Click 'OK' in the 'Manage Extensions' dialog
- Set new on-screen alert timeout to Specify the length of time that virus alerts should stay on the screen.
 (Default = 120 seconds)
- Set new maximum file size limit to Specify the largest file size that the antivirus should scan. CCS will not scan files bigger than the size specified here. (*Default = 40 MB*)
- Set new maximum script size to Specify the largest script size that the antivirus should scan. CCS will
 not scan scripts bigger than the size specified here. (Default = 4 MB)
- Use heuristics scanning Enable or disable heuristic scans, and define the sensitivity of the scanner.
 (Default = Disabled)

Background. Heuristics is a technology that analyzes a file to see if it contains code typical of a virus. It is about detecting 'virus-like' attributes rather than looking for a signature which exactly matches a signature on the blacklist. This allows CCS to detect brand new viruses even that are not in the current virus database.



If enabled, please select a sensitivity level. The sensitivity level determines how likely it is that heuristics will decide a file is malware:

• Low - Least likely to decide that an unknown file is malware. Generates the fewest alerts.

Despite the name, this setting combines a very high level of protection with a low rate of false positives. We recommend this setting for most users.

- **Medium** Detects unknown threats with greater sensitivity than the low setting, but with a corresponding rise in possible false positives.
- **High** Highest sensitivity to detecting unknown threats. This also raises the possibility of more alerts and false positives.
- Enable realtime scanning of files on network Activate or deactivate automatic scans of files on network drives (Default = Disabled)
 - If enabled, the scanner will check all files you interact with on a network drive, even if you do not copy them to your local machine.
 - If disabled, network files are not checked unless you copy them to your local machine.
- Use Windows Anti-malware Scan Interface (AMSI) technology Microsoft AMSI technology allows 3rd party applications to request scans from antivirus products installed on the machine. CCS is on the AMSI provider's list. This feature provides enhanced malware protection for users, their data and applications. (Default = Enabled)
 - Enabled CCS will accept scan requests from AMSI enabled applications.
 - Disabled CCS removes itself from the local AMSI providers list, and will not respond to scan requests.
- Use cloud services while scanning via AMSI Available if 'Use Windows Anti-malware Scan Interface (AMSI) technology' is enabled. (*Default = Disabled*)
 - Enabled CCS check a file's trust rating on our cloud severs as part of the AMSI scan process.
 - Note Cloud Lookup must also be enabled in 'File Rating Settings'.

7.2.2. Scan Profiles

• Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'

An antivirus scan profile is a collection of scanner settings that tell CCS:

- What to scan (which files, folders or drives)
- When to scan (you can create a scan schedule)
- How to scan (you can configure the behavior of the scan engine)

CCS ships with two pre-defined scan profiles and allows you to create custom scan profiles.

- **Full Scan** Scans every file, folder and drive on your system. External devices such as USB sticks and storage drives are also scanned if connected.
- Quick Scan Scans critical areas of your computer which are highly prone to infection and attack. Areas scanned include system memory, auto-run entries, hidden services, boot sectors, important registry keys, and system files. These areas are of great importance to the health of your computer, so it is essential to keep them clean.

You cannot modify the areas scanned in a pre-defined profile, but you can edit the scan parameters. You can also create custom profiles and scan schedules.

Open the 'Scans' panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'



COMODO Advance	ed Settings				? —	o x
 General Settings Antivirus Realtime Scan 	Scar This page al		add, remove	and edit sca	an profiles and scheduled s	cans.
Scans	dd Add	۲. Edit	X Remove			
✓ Firewall	A00	Edit	Kemove			
✓ HIPS	Nan Nan	ne		Action	Last Scan	Status
✓ Containment	D Full	Scan		Scan	12/11/2018 5:44:22 PM	
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Quie	ck Scan		<u>Scan</u>	12/11/2018 2:15:38 PM	
✓ File Rating	Susp	picious		Scan	Never	
 Advanced Protection 						
Website Filtering						
					ок	CANCEL

Scan Profiles - Column Descriptions					
Column Header	Description				
Name	Name of the scan profile.				
Action	The activity that the profile is set to perform. Click this link to manually run a scan according to the profile's parameters.				
Last Scan	Date and time of the most recent virus scan using this profile.				
Status	 Enable or disable the profile. 'On' - Any scheduled scans configured in the profile will continue to run. In addition, you can manually run the scan at any time by clicking the 'Scan' link. 'Off' - Any scheduled scans configured in the profile will not run. You can still manually run the scan by clicking the 'Scan' link. 				

Click the following links for more details about:

- Create a scan profile
- Run a custom scan

Create a custom profile

- Click 'Settings' on the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'
- Click 'Add' from the options at the top.

The profile configuration screen opens:



сомо	DO Scan					?		×
Scan Name:	Old man do	ocuments						
Define items	to be scanned	d, scanning op	tions and run	ning schedule				
ITEMS	OPTIONS	SCHEDULE						
[∔ Add Files	₽ ₽ Add Folder	國 Add Area	X Remove					
Pro	file			p.				
					ок	с	ANCEL	

• Type a name for the profile.

The next steps are to:

- Select the items to scan
- Configure scan options for the profile
- Configure a schedule for the scan

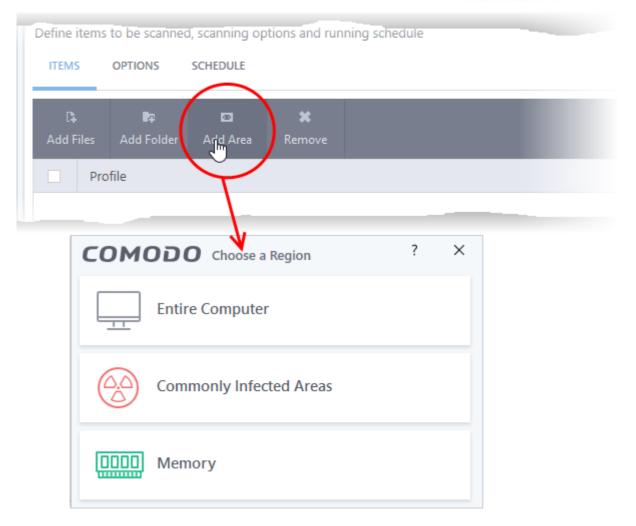
Select the items to scan

• Click 'Items' at the top of the 'Scans' interface.

The buttons along the top let you add three types of item to the scan. You can add any combination of items.

- Add Files Scan individual files. Click the 'Add Files' button and navigate to the file you want to scan. Repeat to add more files.
- Add Folder Scan entire folders. The scan covers all files inside the target folders. Click the 'Add Folder' button and choose the folder you want to scan.
- Add Area Scan pre-defined regions. Regions include 'Full Computer', 'Commonly Infected Areas' and 'Memory'.





• Repeat the process to add more items to the profile. You can mix-and-match files, folders and areas in your custom scan.

Configure Scan Options

• Click 'Options' at the top of the scan interface



сомор	Scan ? \Box X
Scan Name:	
Define items to be	e scanned, scanning options and running schedule
ITEMS OPTI	ONS SCHEDULE
	and scan compressed files ows scanner to decompress archive files e.gzip, .rar, etc. during scanning
Use cloud wh	
	ows scanner to connect to cloud to query file ratings
Automatically	clean threats Quarantine Threats
When the thre	ats are identified, perform the selected action automatically
Show scan re	sults window
This option en removable me	ables to view results of scans launched as per schedule or from the management portal, as well as dia scans.
Use heuristics	scanning Low 🔻
Use the selecte	ed level of sensitivity while scanning heuristically
☑ Limit maximu	m file size to 40 MB
While scanning	g, if a file size is larger than specified, it is not scanned
🗌 Run this scan	with Background -
Priority of scar	ner determines how much of the computer resources are used among other tasks
Update virus	database before running
This option ma	akes sure the database is updated before running the scan
	tially unwanted applications
Potentially unv download ther	vanted applications are programs that are unwanted despite the possibility that users consented to n.
Apply this act	ion to suspicious autorun processes Terminate and Disable 🔻
	ction will be automatically applied if unrecognized Windows services, autostart entries or s are detected.
Limit scan time	of a single file to 9 🚔 min(s)
When the set t	ime limit is reached, the file will be skipped and antivirus will proceed scanning other files.
	OK CANCEL

- archives (*Default = Enabled*).
 Use cloud while scanning Improves scan accuracy by augmenting the local scan with an online look-up of Comodo's latest signature database. Cloud Scanning means CCS can detect the latest malware even if your virus database is out-dated. (*Default = Disabled*).
- **Automatically clean threats** Whether or not CCS should automatically remove any malware found by the scan.

- **Disabled** = Results are shown at the end of the scan with a list of any identified threats. You can select the action to be taken on them individually, or on all items at-once. See **Process Infected Files** for guidance on manually handling detected threats.
- **Enabled** = You can choose the automatic action taken against detected threats. The options are:
 - **Quarantine Threats** Infected items will be moved to Quarantine. You can review quarantined items later and remove them or restore them (in case of false positives). See **Manage Quarantined Items** for more details on managing quarantined items.
 - Disinfect Threats If a disinfection routine is available, the antivirus will remove the infection and keep the original, safe, file. If not, the item is moved to 'Quarantine'. (*Default*)
- **Show scan result window** If selected, you will see a summary of results at the end of the scan. This includes the number of objects scanned and the number of threats found.
- Use heuristics scanning Enable or disable heuristic scans, and define the sensitivity of the scanner. (Default = Enabled)

Background. Heuristics is a technology that analyzes a file to see if it contains code typical of a virus. It is about detecting 'virus-like' attributes rather than looking for a signature which exactly matches a signature on the blacklist. This allows CCS to detect brand new viruses even that are not in the current virus database.

If enabled, please select a sensitivity level. The sensitivity level determines how likely it is that heuristics will decide a file is malware:

• Low - Least likely to decide that an unknown file is malware. Generates the fewest alerts.

Despite the name, this setting combines a very high level of protection with a low rate of false positives. We recommend this setting for most users. (Default)

- **Medium** Detects unknown threats with greater sensitivity than the low setting, but with a corresponding rise in possible false positives.
- **High** Highest sensitivity to detecting unknown threats. This also raises the possibility of more alerts and false positives.
- Limit maximum file size to Specify the largest file size that the antivirus should scan. CCS will
 not scan files bigger than the size specified here. (*Default = 40 MB*)
- Run this scan with Whether you want to set a priority for the scans with this profile
 - Enabled = You can set the priority. The available options are:
 - High
 - Normal
 - Low
 - Background.
 - Disabled = The scan will be run at the background (Default)
- **Update virus database before running** CCS checks for and downloads the latest virus signatures before starting every scan with this profile (*Default = Enabled*).
- Detect potentially unwanted applications The antivirus also scans for applications that (i) a user may or may not be aware is installed on their computer, or (ii) may contain functionality and objectives that are not clear to the user. Example PUA's include adware and browser toolbars. PUA's are often bundled as an additional utility when installing another piece of software. Unlike malware, many PUA's are legitimate pieces of software with their own EULA agreements. However, the true functionality of the utility might not have been made clear to the end-user at the time of installation. For example, a browser toolbar that tells you the weather forecast might also track your online activity. (Default = Enabled).
- Apply this action to suspicious autorun processes Specify how CCS should handle unrecognized auto-run items, Windows services and scheduled tasks.
 - Ignore The item is allowed to run (Default)



- Terminate CCS stops the process / service
- **Terminate and Disable** Auto-run processes will be stopped and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.
- **Quarantine and Disable** Auto-run processes will be quarantined and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.

Note 1 - This setting monitors only registry records during the on-demand scan. To monitor the registry at all times, go to 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous'.

• See Miscellaneous Settings for more details

Note 2 - CCS ships with a list of applications for which script analysis will be performed to protect the registry records. You can manage the list of applications in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis' > 'Autorun Scans'.

- · See 'Autorun Scans' in Script Analysis Settings for more details
- Limit scan time of a single file to Set the maximum time allowed to scan an individual file. CCS will skip files that take longer to scan than the specified time. Omitted files are shown in the 'Skipped Files' tab in the results screen.

Schedule the scan

• Click 'Schedule' at the top of the 'Scan' interface.

сомодо	Scan		?		×
Scan Name:					
Define items to be s	canned, scanning options and running schedule				
ITEMS OPTION	S SCHEDULE				
Frequency:					^
Do not schedule	this task				
O Every few hours					
O Every Day					
O Every Week					
O Every Month					
O Monthly (chose	a days of week)				
Additional Options					- •
		ОК	(ANCEL	

You have the following options:

- **Do not schedule this task** The scan profile will be created but will not run automatically. The profile will be available for on-demand scans.
- Every few hours Run the scan at the intervals of the hours specified in 'Repeat scan every NN hour(s)'



- Every Day Run the scan every day at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field.
- Every Week Run the scan on the day(s) specified in 'Days of the Week', at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field. You can select the days of the week by clicking on them.
- Every Month Run the scan on the date(s) specified in 'Days of the month', at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field. You can select the dates of the month by clicking on them.
- Monthly (chosen days of the week) Run the scan on specific weeks in a month. Select the target weeks in the menus provided.

Additional Options

- Run only when computer is not running on battery The scan only runs when the computer is
 plugged into the power supply. This option is useful when you are using a laptop or other mobile
 device.
- Run only when computer is IDLE The scan will run only if the computer is in idle state at the scheduled time. Select this option if you do not want the scan to disturb you while you are using your computer.
- Turn off computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan Will turn off your computer if no threats are found during the scan. This is useful when you are scheduling scans to run at nights.
- Run during Windows Automatic Maintenance Only available for Windows 8 and later. Select this option if you want the scan to run when Windows enters into automatic maintenance mode. The scan will run at maintenance time *in addition* to the configured schedule.

The option 'Run during Windows Maintenance' will be available only if 'Automatically Clean Threats' is enabled for the scan profile under the 'Options' tab. See **Automatically Clean Threats**.

Note: Scheduled scans will only run if the profile is enabled. Use the switch in the 'Status' column to turn the profile on or off.

• Click 'OK' to save the profile.

The profile will be available for deployment in future.

Run a custom scan as per a scan profile

- Click 'General Tasks' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Scan' > 'Custom Scan'
- Click 'More Scan Options'

The 'Advanced Settings' interface will open at the 'Scans' panel:

• Click 'Scan' beside the required scan profile.



 General Settings Antivirus Realtime Scan 	Scar This page a		add, remove	e and edit sca	n profiles and schedul	ed scans.
Scans	+ Add	🔏 Edit	X Remove			
✓ HIPS	🗌 Na	me		Action	Last Scan	Status
 Containment 	D Full	Scan		Scan	Never	
 Data Loss Prevention 	Qui	ick Scan		<u>Scan</u>	6/11/2019 11:52:59	
 File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	☐ Sha	red Folder So	can	Sim	Never	

The scan will start immediately. Results are displayed afterwards:

	can		?	-		×
100%	TASK: Shared Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:48					
THREAT(S) FOUND	SKIPPED FILES: 24					
Threat Name	Q	Action	Clean		•	^
🗏 Malware@ (#vigyao	oklh7gw, #jgft8m0jxmvk, #3bqdlv583lryf, #2hr					
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
— 📄 C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	
C:\Share\Mal	ware-Samples-master\Malware-Samples-mast	🗸 Cle	an		•	~
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of the	scan				
CLOSE			APPLY	SELECTE	D ACTIC	ONS

The results window has two tabs:

- Threats Found: The number of files scanned and the number of viruses found.
 - Use the drop-down to choose whether to clean, quarantine or ignore the threat.
 - See 'Process infected files' if you need help with these options.

Note: You will only see the drop-down menus if 'Automatically clean threats' is disabled for the selected scan profile in 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'. See **Scan Profiles** for help with this.

• **Skipped Files**: Files that were not checked for viruses. The scanner skipped these files as they took longer than the scan time limit (default = 9 mins).

	can	?	_		
100%	TASK: Shared Folder Scan STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:03:48				
THREAT(S) FOUND	8 SKIPPED FILES: 24				
Path				^	
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe				
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe				
C:\Share\icedragonset	up.exe				
C:\Share\icedragonset	up.exe				
C:\Share\Firefox Setup	13.0.1.exe				
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.	.10.Install.exe				
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.10.Install.exe					
C:\Share\Paint.NET.3.5.	.10.Install.exe			~	
Turn off this com	puter if no threats are found at the end of	the scan		20000	
CLOSE		APPLY	SELECTED	ACTIONS	

7.3. Firewall Configuration

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall'
- The firewall protects your computer against inbound and outbound threats.
- It checks that all network traffic in and out of your computer is legitimate, hides your computer ports against hackers, and blocks software from transmitting your personal data over the internet.
- The simple rules interface lets you specify exactly which applications can access the internet.
- You can choose to receive alerts if the firewall detects suspicious activity, or have the firewall autoimplement a specific action.

Configure the 'Firewall' module

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' on the left:

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? - 🗆 X
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall Firewall Settings Application Rules Global Rules 	 Firewall Settings Enable Firewall (Recommended) Safe Mode This option enables firewall which filters inbound and outbound traffic. Alert Settings Do not show popup alerts Allow Requests
Rulesets Network Zones Portsets	□ Turn traffic animation effects on □ Create rules for safe applications ☑ Set alert frequency level Low ▼
 HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	□ Set new on-screen alert timeout to 120 secs Advanced □ Filter IPv6 traffic ☑ Filter loopback traffic (e.g. 127.x.x. ::1) □ Block fragmented IP traffic □ Do protocol analysis □ Enable anti-ARP spoofing ☑ Detect disabled firewall driver in network adapter settings and Log only ▼
	OK CANCEL

Firewall settings has the following sections:

- General Firewall Settings Settings that govern the overall behavior of the firewall.
- Application Rules Rules which control the network access rights of specific applications, or types of application.
- Global Rules Rules which apply to all traffic flowing in and out of your computer.
- Rule Sets Collections of rules that can be applied to internet capable applications like browsers and email/FTP clients.
- Network Zones A network zone is a named grouping of one or more IP addresses. Once created, you can specify a zone as the target of firewall rule.
- Portsets Predefined groups of regularly used ports that can be used and reused when creating traffic filtering rules.

Background note on rules:

Both application rules and global rules are consulted when the firewall decides whether to allow or block a connection:

Outgoing connections - Application rules are consulted first then global rules.

Incoming connections - Global rules are consulted first then application rules.

7.3.1. General Firewall Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Firewall Settings'
- Firewall settings let you quickly configure the overall behavior of the firewall. Settings are divided into three main areas:
 - General Settings
 - Alert Settings
 - Advanced Settings

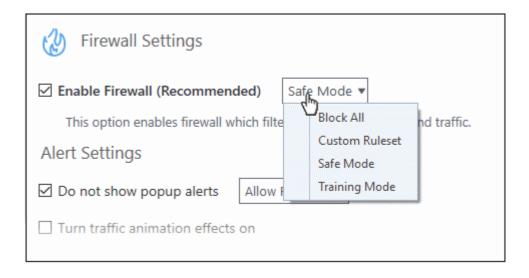
Configure the firewall settings

- Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Firewall Settings'

 General Settings Antivirus Firewall Enable Firewall (Recommended) Safe Mode ▼ This option enables firewall which filters inbound and outbour Application Rules Global Rules Global Rules Do not show popup alerts Allow Requests ▼ Rulesets Turn traffic animation effects on Create rules for safe applications Portsets Set alert frequency level Low ▼ HIPS Set new on-screen alert timeout to 120 secs Advanced Data Loss Prevention 	
Firewall Settings This option enables firewall which filters inbound and outbour Application Rules Alert Settings Global Rules Do not show popup alerts Allow Requests • Rulesets Turn traffic animation effects on Network Zones Create rules for safe applications Portsets Set alert frequency level Low • • HIPS Set new on-screen alert timeout to 120 • Data Loss Prevention Filter IPv6 traffic	
 ✓ File Rating ✓ File Rating ✓ Advanced Protection Website Filtering ✓ Enable anti-ARP spoofing ✓ Detect disabled firewall driver in network adapter settings a 	

General Settings

- Enable Firewall Activate or deactivate firewall protection. (Default and recommended = Enabled)
 - If enabled, you can also choose the security level from the drop-down menu:



The choices available are:

- **Block All**: The firewall stops all traffic in and out of your computer, regardless of any other settings or rules. The firewall does not attempt to learn the behavior of any application, and does not create traffic rules for any applications. This option prevents your computer from accessing any networks, including the internet.
- Custom Ruleset Mode: The firewall applies ONLY network traffic rules that you have created. New users
 may want to think of this as the 'Do Not Learn' setting because the firewall does not attempt to learn the
 behavior of any applications. Nor does it automatically create network traffic rules for those applications.
 You will receive alerts every time there is a connection attempt by an application even for applications on
 the Safe list (unless, of course, you have specified rules and policies that instruct the firewall to trust the
 application's connection attempt).

If any application tries to make a outbound connection, the firewall audits all the loaded components and checks each against the list of components already allowed or blocked. If a component is found to be blocked, the entire application is denied internet access and an alert is generated. This setting is advised for experienced firewall users that wish to maximize the visibility and control over traffic in and out of their computer.

Safe Mode (Default): If Create rules for safe applications is enabled then the firewall automatically creates rules to allow traffic by applications certified as 'Safe' by Comodo. For new, unknown applications, you will receive an alert whenever that application attempts to access the network. Should you choose, you can grant that application internet access by choosing 'Treat this application as a Trusted Application' at the alert. This deploys the predefined firewall ruleset 'Trusted Application' onto the application.

'Safe Mode' is the recommended setting for most users - combining the highest levels of security with an easy-to-manage number of connection alerts.

Training Mode: The firewall monitors network traffic and creates automatic allow rules for all new
applications until the security level is adjusted. You will not receive any alerts in 'Training Mode' mode. If
you choose the 'Training Mode' setting, we advise that you are 100% sure that all applications installed on
your computer are assigned the correct network access rights.

Alert Settings

 Do not show popup alerts - Whether or not you want to be notified when the firewall encounters a request for network access. Choosing 'Do not show pop-up alerts' will minimize disturbances but at some loss of user awareness. (*Default = Enabled*)

If you choose this option then you have a choice of default responses that CCS should take - either 'Block Requests' or 'Allow Requests'.



This option enables firewall wh	nich f	ilters inbound and	outbound tr	afí
Alert Settings				
Do not show popup alerts	Allo	w Requests 🔻		
Turn traffic animation effects	6	Allow Requests Block Requests		
Create rules for safe application	ons		1	
Set alert frequency level	ow 🔻			

 Turn traffic animation effects on - By default, the Comodo Client Security's 'Shield' tray icon displays a small animation whenever traffic moves to or from your computer.

ጵ 🔨 🔄 🛱 🕅	ENG	09:30 29-04-2019	2
-----------	-----	---------------------	---

If the traffic is outbound, you can see green arrows moving upwards on the right hand side of the shield. Similarly, for inbound traffic you can see yellow arrows moving down the left hand side. This provides a very useful indicator of the real-time movement of data in and out of your computer.

- Clear this check box If you would rather not see this animation. (Default = Disabled)
- Create rules for safe applications Comodo Firewall trusts the applications if:
 - The application is on the safe list, a global white-list of trusted software.
 - The application has a 'Trusted' rating in the local file list. See **File List** if you need more details.
 - The file is published and signed by a trusted vendor. The 'vendor' is the software company that created the file. See Vendor List if you need more details.

By default, CCS does not automatically create 'allow' rules for safe applications. This helps to lower resource usage and simplifies the rules interface. It also reduces the number of pop-up alerts and is beneficial to beginners who find difficulties in setting up the rules.

Enabling this checkbox instructs CCS to begin learning the behavior of safe applications so that it can automatically generate 'Allow' rules. These rules are listed in the **Application Rules** interface. The Advanced users can edit/modify the rules as they wish. (**Default = Disabled**)

Set alert frequency level - Configure the amount of alerts that the firewall generates. Please note that this does not affect your security level, which is determined by the actual rules you have in place (for example, in 'Application Rules' and 'Global Rules'). For the majority of users, the default setting of 'Low' is the perfect level - ensuring you are kept informed of suspicious behavior while not getting overwhelmed with alerts. (*Default =Disabled*)

Create rules for safe application	itions
Set alert frequency level	Low V
Set new on-screen alert tim	Very High secs
Advanced	Medium
Filter IPv6 traffic	Low
✓ Filter loopback traffic (e.g. 1	Very Low

The options available are:

- Very High: The firewall shows separate alerts for outgoing and incoming connection requests for both TCP and UDP protocols on specific ports and for specific IP addresses, for an application. This setting provides the highest degree of visibility to inbound and outbound connection attempts but leads to a proliferation of firewall alerts. For example, using a browser to connect to your Internet home-page may generate as many as 5 separate alerts for an outgoing TCP connection alone.
- **High**: The firewall shows separate alerts for outgoing and incoming connection requests for both TCP and UDP protocols on specific ports for an application.
- **Medium**: The firewall shows alerts for outgoing and incoming connection requests for both TCP and UDP protocols for an application.
- **Low:** The firewall shows alerts for outgoing and incoming connection requests for an application. This is the setting recommended by Comodo and is suitable for the majority of users.
- Very Low: The firewall shows only one alert for an application.

The alert frequency settings refer only to connection attempts by applications or from IP addresses that you do not trust. For example, you could specify a very high alert frequency level, but not receive any alerts at all if you have chosen to trust the application that is making the connection attempt.

Set new on-screen alert time out to: How long a firewall alert remains on-screen if it is not answered. The default timeout is 120 seconds. You may adjust this setting to your own preference.

Advanced Settings

Advanced detection settings help protect your computer against common types of denial of service (DoS) attack. When launching a denial of service or 'flood' attack, an attacker bombards a target machine with so many connection requests that your computer is unable to accept legitimate connections, effectively shutting down your web, email, FTP or VPN server.

Filter IP v6 traffic - If enabled, the firewall will filter IPv6 network traffic in addition to IPv4 traffic.(Default = Disabled)

Background Note: IPv6 stands for Internet Protocol Version 6 and is intended to replace Internet Protocol Version 4 (IPv4). The move is primarily driven by the anticipated exhaustion of available IP addresses. IPv4 was developed in 1981 and is still the most widely deployed version - accounting for almost all of today's internet traffic. However, because IPv4 uses 32 bits for IP addresses, there is a physical upper limit of around 4.3 billion possible IP addresses - a figure widely viewed as inadequate to cope with the further expansion of the internet. In simple terms, the number of devices requiring IP addresses is in danger of exceeding the number of IP addresses that are available. This hard limit has already led to the development of 'work-around' solutions such as Network Address Translation (NAT), which enable multiple hosts on private networks to access the Internet using a single IP address.

IPv6 on the other hand, uses 128 bits per address (delivering 3.4×1038 unique addresses) and is viewed as the only realistic, long term solution to IP address exhaustion. IPv6 also implements numerous enhancements that are not present in IPv4 - including greater security, improved support for mobile devices and more efficient routing of data packets.

- Filter loopback traffic: Loopback connections refer to the internal communications within your PC. Any data transmitted by your computer through a loopback connection is immediately received by it. This involves no connection outside your computer to the internet or a local network. The IP address of the loopback network is 127.0.0.1, which you might have heard referred to by its domain name of 'http://localhost'. This is the address of your computer. Loopback channel attacks can be used to flood your computer with TCP and/or UDP requests which can smash your IP stack or crash your computer. Leaving this option enabled means the firewall will filter traffic sent through this channel. (*Default = Enabled*)
- Block fragmented traffic When a connection is opened between two computers, they must agree on a Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). IP datagram fragmentation occurs when data passes through a router with an MTU less than the MTU you are using. When a datagram is larger than the MTU of the network

over which it must be sent, it is divided into smaller 'fragments' which are each sent separately. Fragmented IP packets can create threats similar to a DOS attack. Moreover, fragmentation can double the amount of time it takes to send a single packet and slow down your download time. (*Default = Disabled*)

- Do Protocol Analysis Protocol Analysis is key to the detection of fake packets used in denial of service attacks. Enabling this option means Comodo Firewall checks that every packet conforms to that protocols standards. If not, then the packets are blocked. (*Default = Disabled*)
- Enable anti-ARP spoofing A gratuitous Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) frame is an ARP Reply that is broadcast to all machines in a network and is not in response to any ARP Request. When an ARP Reply is broadcast, all hosts are required to update their local ARP caches, whether or not the ARP Reply was in response to an ARP Request they had issued. Gratuitous ARP frames are important as they update your machine's ARP cache whenever there is a change to another machine on the network (for example, if a network card is replaced in a machine on the network, then a gratuitous ARP frame informs your machine of this change and requests to update your ARP cache so that data can be correctly routed). However, while ARP calls might be relevant to an ever shifting office network comprising many machines that need to keep each other updated , it is of far less relevance to, say, a single computer in your home network. Enabling this setting helps to block such requests protecting the ARP cache from potentially malicious updates. (*Default = Disabled*)
- Detect disabled firewall driver in network adapter settings The firewall will take action if it discovers its driver is not enabled.

Detect disabled firewall driver in network adapter settings and	Log	only 🔻
		Log only Re-enable driver

You can choose the following actions if this condition is met:

- Log only Creates an event log but does not notify the administrator.
- Re-enable Driver Attempts to turns the driver back on automatically.

7.3.2. Application Rules

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Application Rules'
- Application rules let you manage network access rights for specific applications.
- Whenever an application makes a request for network access, CCS allows or denies the request based on the ruleset applied to the application.
- Firewall rulesets are made up of one or more application rules. Each rule outlines an application's permissions regarding a specific type of traffic.

COMODO Advanced S	ettings						?	-)
 General Settings Antivirus 	i d	Applicati	on Rules							
– Firewall	The foll	owing fire	wall applicati	on rules a	are active	on this com	puter.			
Firewall Settings	+ Add			K nove	t Move Up	↓ Move Dowr	Purge			
Global Rules		Applicatio	n			a	Treat as		C	
The application's name is list above the rules applied to it	ed direc	tly € C:\I	Program Files	COMODO	\GeekBud	dy\launche	Custom]		
Rules applied to an application determines its network access rights		🔮 🗏 C:\I	Program Files				Name of the ruleset	pre-dei	fined	
✓ HIPS		🗋 🖽 Sys		onnig on	- eurgenig	, request	Custom			
✓ Containment			modo Client -	Security			Outgoing	Only		
Each ruleset is derived from at least one but usually a			Allow All Ou	tgoing Re	quests					
-	Block and Log All Unmatching Requests								1	
at least one but usually a combination of individually configurable rules		<u>_</u>	Block and Lo	ig All Unm	atching Re	equests				
combination of individually		BERLEAUAUAUA	Block and Lo	-	-	equests	Custom			SSSSS SSSSS

- **Application** Programs or file groups for which a firewall ruleset has been created. In the case of file groups, all member applications will use the ruleset of the group.
 - Click '+' next to the name to view the rules which apply to the application/group.
- **Treat as** Name of the ruleset assigned to the application or group.

The controls above the table let you manage the rule sets:

	App	lication Ru	iles				
	The followin	g firewall ap	plication rule	es are active	on this comp	iter.	
(+ Add	" Edit	🗶 Remove	↑ Move Up	↓ Move Down	ନ Purge	
	🗆 Арр	lication			Q Treat	15	۹ ^
		3 System			Custor	n	

- Add Add a new application/application group then create a ruleset for it.
- Edit Modify an application rule/ruleset.
- **Remove** Delete a selected rule.



- **Purge** Check that all applications mentioned in a ruleset are still installed at the paths specified. If not, the rule is removed from the list.
- **Move Up** and **Move Down** Rules are prioritized top-to-bottom, with those at the top having the higher priority. The 'Move Up' and 'Move Down' buttons let you change the priority of a selected rule.

Predefined rulesets

- Although you could create a ruleset from the ground-up by configuring its individual rules, this practice would be time consuming if performed for every program on your system.
- For this reason, Comodo provide a selection of rulesets according to broad application category. For example, the 'Web Browser' ruleset is designed for applications like 'Internet Explorer', 'Firefox' and 'Chrome'.
- Each predefined ruleset optimizes security for a certain type of application. Users can, of course, modify
 these predefined rulesets to suit their environment and requirements. For more details, see Predefined
 Rule Sets.

Create a firewall ruleset

- Step 1 Select the target application or group
- Step 2 Configure the rules

Step 1 - Select the target application or group

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Application Rules'
- Click the 'Add' button

The 'Application Rule' interface appears:

со	MODO Advanced	Settings						?
	eneral Settings ntivirus	Applic	ation Ru	les				
— Fi	irewall	The following f	ïrewall ap	plication rule	s are active	on this	comp	uter.
	Firewall Settings	+	L	×	t		ŧ	Ð
	Application Rules	Add Im	Edit	Remove	Move Up	Move	Down	Purge
	Global Rules	Applica	ation				Q	Treat as
	Rulesets		C:\Progran	n Files (x86)\CC	DMODO\Co	modo 🗆	ISM	Custom
		plication Rule				?		×
	Name:						Brow	se 🔻
	O Use Ruleset:					Web	o Brows	er 🔻
	Use a Custom Rules	et				C	opy fro	m 🔻
	∔ Add Edit	X Remove	↑ Move Up	↓ Move Down				
	Rules							Q
				c	ж	C	ANCEL	
				_				//.

Click the 'Browse' button beside the 'Name' field:

COMODO Application Rule	? 🗆 X	
Name:	Browser	
○ Use Ruleset:	Web File Groups Running Processe	► s

There are three types of target you can add:

- File Groups Apply the ruleset to a predefined file group. All members of the group are covered by the rule. • See File Groups if you need help with file groups.
- Files Apply the ruleset to a specific application. ٠



Running Processes - Apply the ruleset to an application by selecting its running process

Add a File Group

A file group is category of files or folders. For example, 'Executables', 'Media Players', or 'Important Files/Folders'. See **File Groups** more help with them.

• Choose 'File Groups' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

? 🗆 ×	
File Groups	Executables
Web Files Running Processes	All Applications Windows Updater Applications Windows Management 3rd Party Protocol Drivers Metro Apps Email Clients
	File Archivers
	Temporary Files fm
	Shared Spaces
	File Downloaders
	Suspicious Locations
	Containment Folders
	Pseudo File Downloaders
	Windows System Applications
	Web Browsers
	Browser Plugins
	Startup Folders
	Management and Productivity Applications
	Media Players
	COMODO Client - Security
	COMODO Client - Security Manager
	ExceptionGroup
	Important Files/Folders
	Communication Client
	Exclusions for Purchase Dept Profile
	Openoffice
	COMODO Client Files/Folders

- Select a file group from the drop-down. The ruleset will apply to all executable files in the group.
 - The next stage is **Step 2 Configure the rules** for the selected file group.

Add an individual File

• Choose 'Files' from the 'Browse' drop-down:

e:		Browse File C Wei Files	Groups
C Open	9 parate for a second seco		hing roces
← → · ↑ 🦲 « Pi	rograms > Opera > 🗸 🗸 Ö	Search Opera	م ر
Organize 👻 New fold	ler	BEE 👻 [
^	Name	Date modified	Туре
🗸 🖈 Quick access	60.0.3255.124	6/12/2019 1:31 PM	File folde
📃 Desktop 🛛 🖈	Assets	6/12/2019 1:31 PM	File folde
🕂 Downloads 🖈	installation_status.json	6/12/2019 1:31 PM	JSON File
🔮 Documents 🖈	installer_prefs.json	6/12/2019 1:31 PM	JSON File
🗟 📰 Pictures 🛛 🖈	installer_prefs.json.backup	6/12/2019 1:31 PM	BACKUP
Doubt_files	O launcher	5/30/2019 11:05 AM	Applicati
h Music	🔮 launcher.visualelementsmanifest	2/22/2019 11:14 PM	XML Doo
Share	pref_default_overrides	6/12/2019 1:30 PM	File
Suspicious	Resources.pri	2/22/2019 11:14 PM	PRI File
Suspicious	server_tracking_data	6/12/2019 1:31 PM	File
> 🍊 OneDrive			
> 💻 This PC 🗸	<		>

- Navigate to the file you want to add as target and click 'Open'. The rule will apply only to the specific application.
 - The next stage is **Step 2 Configure the rules** for the selected application.

Add a currently running application by choosing its process

• Choose 'Running Processes' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

	Browse
e Ruleset:	Web Files Running Pro
COMODO Browse for Processes	? ×
Application	PID
 explorer.exe MSASCuiL.exe 	4044 ^ 6720
 ▼ G cis.exe ▲ G cis.exe 	7560 8004
 CneDrive.exe svchost.exe 	7000 2204
 svchost.exe svchost.exe 	1380 2400
WyWeather.exe IF sychost.exe	6540 1972
✓ ■ svchost.exe	1760
 Image: Comparison of Comparison	2660 5808
 dasHost.exe cis.exe 	3904 7368
 GoogleCrashHandler64.exe opera.exe 	6864 6880

- Select the target process and click 'OK'. The parent application of the process will be added as the target.
 - The next stage is to configure the rules for the selected application.

Step 2 - Configure the rules in ruleset

There are two broad options for creating a ruleset - Use a Predefined Ruleset or Use a Custom Ruleset.

Use Ruleset

•

- A ruleset is a collection of rules designed to implement optimum security on a specific type of application. You can manage and create rulesets in 'Settings' > 'Firewall Configuration' > 'Firewall Rule Sets'.
- Comodo provides a range of curated rulesets for popular types of application. These include 'Web browser', 'FTP client' and 'Email client'.
- The example below shows us applying the 'Web Browser' ruleset to the Opera browser:

сомо	DO App	lication Rule			?		×
Name: \Us	sers\John\Ap	opData\Local\	Programs\O	pera\60.0.3255.124	4\opera.exe	Brow	se 🔻
Use Rules		+			We	b Brows Web B	rowser
O OSE a Cu	stom Kulese					Email (Ftp Cli	
+ Add	Edit	X Remove	↑ Move Up	↓ Move Down		Blocke	ed Application ed Application ing Only

 Use a Custom Ruleset - Designed for more experienced users, 'Custom Ruleset' lets you fully configure all rules in the ruleset. You can create an entirely new ruleset, or use a predefined set as a starting point.

OMODO Application Rule	? 🗆 X	
me: \Users\John\AppData\Local\Programs\Opera\60.0.3255.124	l\opera.exe Browse ▼	
Use Ruleset:	Web Browser 🔻	
Use a Custom Ruleset	Copy from	_
+ 💉 🗱 I I Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down	Ruleset Web Brov Another Application Email Client Ptp Client	
Rules	Q	Application Application
Allow Access to Loopback Zone	Outgoing	1.5
Allow Outgoing HTTP Requests		
Allow Outgoing FTP Requests		
Allow Outgoing FTP-PASV Requests		
Allow Outgoing DNS Requests		
	×	
ок	CANCEL	
Selecting 'Use a Custom Ruleset' > 'Copy fro will populate the rules window with the con- example shown, individual rules from the ' ruleset to be created. Using this as a startin	stituent rules of the pre-defined rules Web Browser' ruleset are included in	et. In ti the ne

- modify and remove rules to suit to their applications.
- Select the 'Use custom ruleset' radio button
- Add Create individual rules for the set. See 'Add and Edit a Firewall Rule' for an overview of the process.
- Copy From Populate the list with the rules of a Predefined Firewall Rule. Edit/add/remove rules to



create your custom ruleset.

Understand Firewall Rules

At their core, each firewall rule can be thought of as a simple **IF THEN** trigger - a set of **conditions** that a packet of data must meet, and an **action** that is taken if those conditions are met.

As a packet filtering firewall, Comodo firewall analyzes the attributes of every packet of data that attempts to enter or leave your computer. Attributes of a packet include the application that is sending or receiving the packet, the protocol it is using, the direction in which it is traveling, the source and destination IP addresses and the ports it is attempting to traverse. The firewall then tries to find a firewall rule that matches all the conditional attributes of this packet in order to determine whether or not it should be allowed to proceed. If there is no corresponding firewall rule, then the connection is automatically blocked until a rule is created.

If the packet of data meets these conditions	
Anow Access to Loopa	
Allow ICP Out From IF	9 192.111.111.111 To MAC Any Where Source Port Is 25 A
	then the firewall will take this action

The actual **conditions** (attributes)* you see on a particular firewall rule are determined by the protocol chosen while **adding and editing a firewall rule**.

If you chose 'TCP', 'UDP' or 'TCP and 'UDP', then the rule has the form: Action |Protocol | Direction |Source Address | Destination Address | Source Port | Destination Port

If you chose 'ICMP', then the rule has the form: Action |Protocol | Direction | Source Address | Destination Address | ICMP Details

If you chose 'IP', then the rule has the form: Action | Protocol | Direction | Source Address | Destination Address | IP Details

- Action: The action the firewall takes when the conditions of the rule are met. The rule shows 'Allow', 'Block' or 'Ask'.**
- **Protocol**: States the protocol that the target application must be attempting to use when sending or receiving packets of data. The rule shows '**TCP**', '**UDP**', '**TCP** or **UDP**', '**ICMP**' or '**IP**'
- Direction: States the direction of traffic that the data packet must be attempting to negotiate. The rule shows 'In', 'Out' or 'In/Out'
- Source Address: States the source address of the connection attempt. The rule shows 'From' followed by one of the following: IP , IP range, IP Mask , Network Zone, Host Name or Mac Address
- Destination Address: States the address of the connection attempt. The rule shows 'To' followed by one of the following: IP, IP range, IP Mask, Network Zone, Host Name or Mac Address
- **Source Port**: States the port(s) that the application must be attempting to send packets of data through. Shows 'Where Source Port Is' followed by one of the following: 'Any', 'Port #', 'Port Range' or 'Port Set'
- Destination Port: States the port(s) on the remote entity that the application must be attempting to send to. Shows 'Where Source Port Is' followed by one of the following: 'Any', 'Port #', 'Port Range' or 'Port Set'
- ICMP Details: States the ICMP message that must be detected to trigger the action. See Add and Edit a Firewall Rule for details of available messages that can be displayed.

IP Details: States the type of IP protocol that must be detected to trigger the action: See Add and Edit a Firewall Rule to see the list of available IP protocols that can be displayed here.

Once a rule is applied, the firewall monitors all traffic relating to the application and takes the specified action if the conditions are met. Users should also see the section 'Global Rules' to understand the interaction between 'Application Rules' and 'Global Rules'.

* If you chose to add a descriptive name when creating the rule then this name is displayed here rather than it's full parameters. See the next section, 'Add and Edit a Firewall Rule', for more details.

** If you selected 'Log as a firewall event if this rule is fired' then the action is postfixed with 'Log'. (e.g. Block & Log)

Add and Edit a Firewall Rule

The firewall rule interface is used to configure the actions and conditions of an individual rules. If you are not an experienced firewall user or are unsure about the settings in this area, we advise you first gain some background knowledge by reading 'Understanding Firewall Rules', 'Overview of Rules and Policies' and 'Create and Modify Firewall Rulesets'.

- Click 'Add' in the 'Application Rule' interface to create a new rule
- Double click on an existing rule or select a rule and click 'Edit' to edit an existing rule

сомодо	Firewall Rule		?	×
Action:	Allow	Log as firewall event if th	is rule is fired	
Protocol:	TCP or UDP			
Direction:	In or Out			
Description				
SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SOURCE PORT DESTINAT	TION PORT	
Exclude (i.e. N	IOT the choice below)			
Ту	pe: Any Address	•		
		ок	CANCE	L

General Settings

• Action: Specify how firewall should handle the connection request when the conditions of the rule are met. Options available are 'Allow' (*Default*), 'Block' or 'Ask'.

сомодо	Firewall	Rule			?	×
Action:	Allow		•	Log as firewall event if this rule is fire	d	
Protocolo	Allow Block	N	-			
	Ask	3				

Protocol: Specify which protocol the data packet should be using. Options available are 'TCP', 'UDP', 'TCP or UDP' (*Default*), 'ICMP' or 'IP'.

Note: Your choice here alters the choices available to you in the tab structure on the lower half of the interface.

- Direction: Define whether the rule should intercept inbound or outbound traffic. Options available are 'In', 'Out' or 'In/Out' (*Default*).
- Log as a firewall event if this rule is fired: Creates an entry in the firewall event log viewer whenever this rule is triggered. (i.e. when ALL conditions have been met) (*Default = Disabled*).
- **Description**: Enter a friendly name for the rule. For example, 'Allow Outgoing HTTP requests'. The friendly name is shown in the **Application Rules interface**.

Protocol

i. TCP', 'UPD' or 'TCP or UDP'

If you select 'TCP', 'UPD' or 'TCP or UDP' as the protocol, then you also have to set the source and destinations:

SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SOURCE PORT	DESTINATION PO	RT
Exclude (i.e. NOT t	the choice below)			
Туре:	Any Address Any Address Host Name IPv4 Address Range IPv4 Single Address IPv4 Subnet Mask IPv6 Address Range IPv6 Single Address IPv6 Subnet Mask			
	MAC Address Network Zone	0	К	CANCEL

Source Address and Destination Address:

- Any Defaults to an IP range of 0.0.0.0- 255.255.255 to allow connection from all IP addresses.
- Host Name Choose a named host which denotes your IP address. Enter the name in the 'Host Name' text field



- IPv4 Address Range Choose all IP addresses covered by a range for example a range in your private network.
 - Enter the first and last IP addresses in the 'Start IP' and 'End IP' text boxes.
- IPv4 Single Address Choose a single IPv4 address
 - Enter the IP address in the 'IP' text box, e.g., 192.168.200.113.
- IPv4 Subnet mask Choose an IPv4 network. IP networks can be divided into smaller networks called sub-networks (or subnets). An IP address/ Mask is a subnet defined by IP address and mask of the network.
 - Enter the IP address and Mask of the network.
- IPv6 Address Range Choose all IPv6 addresses covered by a range for example a segment in your private network
 - Enter the first and last IPv6 addresses in the 'Start IP' and 'End IP' text boxes.
- Single IPv6 Address Choose an IPv6 address
 - Enter the IP address in the 'IP' text box, e.g., 3ffe:1900:4545:3:200:f8ff:fe21:67cf.
- IPv6 Subnet Mask Choose a IPv6 network. IP networks can be divided into smaller networks called sub-networks (or subnets). An IP address/ Mask is a subnet defined by IP address and mask of the network.
 - Enter the IP address and 'Mask' of the network in the respective fields
 - MAC Address Choose a single source/destination by specifying its physical address
 - Enter the physical address in the 'MAC Address' text box.
- **Network Zone** Choose an entire network. This menu defaults to Local Area Network. But you can also define your own zone by first creating a 'Network Zone' through the 'Network Zones' area.
 - Exclude (i.e. NOT the choice below) Applies the action to all items except the one you specify. For example, you create a block rule, specify an IP address, then select 'Exclude'. The rule will block traffic for every address except the one you specified.

Source Port and Destination Port:

SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SOURCE PORT	DESTINATION PC	DRT
Exclude (i.e. NC)T the choice below)			
Тур	e: Any	•		
	A Port Range			
	A Set of Ports			
	A Single Port			
	Any			
			ок	CANCEL
				CANCEL

- Any Apply the rule to any port number set by default, 0- 65535.
- A Single Port Specify a one port number



- Enter the single port number in the 'Port' drop-down combo-box .
- A Port Range Specify a set of ports covered by a range.
 - Enter the first port number and last port number in the respective fields
- A Set of Ports Choose a predefined Port Set. If you wish to create a custom port set then please see the section 'Port Sets'.

ii. ICMP

When you select ICMP as the protocol in **General Settings**, you are shown a list of ICMP message types in the 'ICMP Details' tab alongside the **Destination Address** tabs. The last two tabs are configured identically to the **explanation above**. You cannot see the source and destination port tabs.

ICMP Details

ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) packets contain error and control information which is used to announce network errors, network congestion, timeouts, and to assist in troubleshooting. It is used mainly for performing traces and pings. Pinging is frequently used to perform a quick test before attempting to initiate communications. If you are using or have used a peer-to-peer file-sharing program, you might find yourself being pinged a lot. So you can create rules to allow / block specific types of ping requests. With Comodo firewall you can create rules to allow/ deny inbound ICMP packets that provide you with information and minimize security risk.

Source' and 'Destination' addresses - Enter the source/ destination IP address. Source IP is the IP address from which the traffic originated and destination IP is the IP address of the computer that is receiving packets of information.

SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	DETAILS	
Type:	ICMPv4		
Message:	Any 🔻		
	Custom		
	Any		
	ICMP Echo Request		
	ICMP Echo Reply		
	ICMP Net Unreachable		
	ICMP Host Unreachable		
	ICMP Protocol Unreachable		
	ICMP Port Unreachable	ок	CANCEL
	ICMP Time Exceeded	UK	CANCEL
	ICMP Source Quench		
	ICMP Fragmentation Needed		

- **Type** Choose the ICMP version.
- **Message** Specify the type of the ICMP Message.

When you select a particular ICMP message, the menu defaults to set its code and type as well. If you select the ICMP message type 'Custom' then you are asked to specify the code and type.

iii. IP

When you select IP as the protocol in **General Settings**, you are shown a list of IP message type in the 'IP Details' tab alongside the **Source Address and Destination Address** tabs. The last two tabs are



configured identically to the explanation above. You cannot see the source and destination port tabs.

All	ion necess to Edopsen	ck ZOne		
SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	IP DETA	ILS	
Exclude (i.e. NOT	the choice below)			
Type:	Network Zone	•		
	Any Address			
Zone	Host Name			
	IPv4 Address Range			
	IPv4 Single Address			
	IPv4 Subnet Mask			
	IPv6 Address Range			
	IPv6 Single Address			
	IPv6 Subnet Mask			
	MAC Address		01	CANCEL
	Network Zone		ОК	CANCEL

• IP Details

Select the types of IP protocol that you wish to be intercepted by the rule, from the ones that are listed.

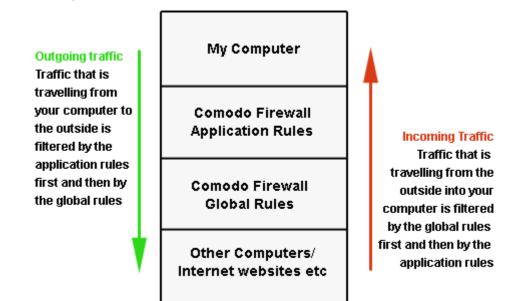
Description			
SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	IP DETAILS	
IP Protoco	ol: Any Custom Any TCP UDP ICMPv4 IGMP Raw IP PUP GGP GRE RSVP	OK	CANCEL
	ICMPv6		

• Click 'OK' to save the firewall rule.



7.3.3. Global Rules

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Global Rules'
- 'Global Rules' apply to all traffic in and out of your computer. This makes them different to application rules, which apply to the traffic of a specific application.
- Comodo firewall analyzes every packet of data in and out of your PC using combination of application rules and global rules.
 - Outgoing connection attempts Application rules are consulted first and the global rules second.
 - Incoming connection attempts Global rules are consulted first and the application rules second.



- So outgoing traffic has to pass the application rule first then any global rules before it is allowed out. Similarly, incoming traffic has to pass the global rules first then the application rules.
- Global rules are mainly, but not exclusively, used to filter incoming traffic for protocols other than TCP or UDP.

Manage Global Rules

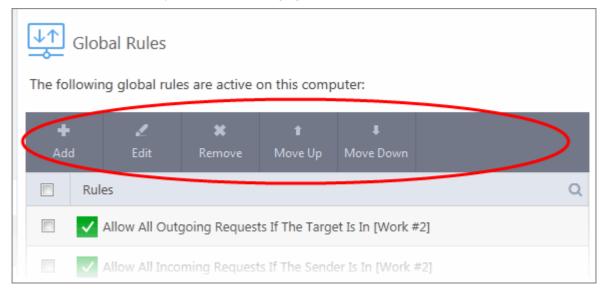
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Global Rules'



COMODO Advance	d Settings					?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	— —	bal Rules	les are active	on this com	puter:				
Firewall Settings Application Rules	+ Add	€. Edit	X Remove	t Move Up	↓ Move Down				
Global Rules	Ru	iles							Q
Rulesets		Allow All Ou	tgoing Reques	ts If The Targ	et Is In [Work #	1]			
Network Zones		Allow All Inc	oming Reques	ts If The Send	ler is in [Work :	#1]			
Portsets		Block ICMPv	4 Out From M	AC Any To M	AC Any Where	ICMP Me	ssage Is	PROTO	со
✓ HIPS		Block ICMPv	4 In From MAG	C Any To MAG	C Any Where IC	MP Mess	age Is 1	7.0	
 Containment 		Block ICMPv	4 In From MAG	C Any To MAG	Any Where IC	MP Mess	age Is 1	5.0	
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection 		Block ICMPv	4 in From MAG	C Any To MAC	C Any Where IC	MP Mess	age Is 1	3.0	
Website Filtering					ок		6	ANCEL	

General Navigation:

The controls above the table let you create and manage global rules:



- Add Create a new global rule. See 'Add and Edit a Firewall Rule' in the previous section 'Application Rules' for guidance on creating a new rule.
- Edit Modify an existing global rule. See 'Add and Edit a Firewall Rule' in the previous section



'Application Rules' for guidance on editing a new rule.

- **Remove** Deletes the selected rule.
- **Purge** Runs a system check to verify that all the applications for which rules are listed are actually installed on the host machine at the path specified. If not, the rule is removed, or 'purged', from the list.
- **Move Up and Move Down** Rules at the top of the list have a higher priority. In the event of a conflict in settings for a piece of traffic, CCS will apply the setting in the rule nearer the top of the list. The 'Move Up' and 'Move Down' buttons let you change the priority of a rule.
- The configuration of global rules is identical to that of application rules. See **Application Rules** for an introduction to the rule setting interface.
- See **Understand Firewall Rules** for an overview of the meaning, construction and importance of individual rules.
- See Add and Edit a Firewall Rule for an explanation of individual rule configuration.

7.3.4. Firewall Rule Sets

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Rulesets'
- A firewall ruleset is a collection of one or more firewall rules which can be deployed to applications on your computer.
- CCS ships with six predefined rulesets that provide a very high level of protection. You can also create your own, custom rulesets.

This section contains advice on the following:

- Predefined Rulesets
- Custom Rulesets
- Create a new ruleset

Open the 'Rulesets' panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Rulesets'



COMODO Advanced	1 Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Rulesets The following rulesets are defined on this computer:				
Firewall Settings Application Rules	+ 💉 🗱 Add Edit Remove				
Global Rules	Ruleset Name				٩
Rulesets	Web Browser				
Network Zones Portsets	Email Client Ftp Client				
HIPSContainment	Allowed Application Blocked Application				
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	Outgoing Only				
 Advanced Protection Website Filtering 					
	ок		C	ANCEL	

- The interface shows all existing rulesets. These may be Comodo predefined rules, or custom rulesets.
- Use the search feature to look for a specific ruleset

Predefined Rulesets

Although each application's firewall ruleset *could* be defined from the ground up by individually configuring separate rules, this practice would prove time consuming if it had to be performed for every single program on your system. For this reason, Comodo Firewall contains a selection of predefined rulesets according to broad application category. For example, you may choose to apply the ruleset 'Web Browser' to the applications 'Internet Explorer', 'Firefox' and 'Chrome'. Each predefined ruleset has been specifically designed by Comodo to optimize the security level of a certain type of application. Users can modify pre-defined policies to suit their environment and requirements. For example, you may wish to keep the 'Web Browsers' name but wish to redefine the parameters of its rules.

CCS ships with six predefined firewall rulesets for different categories of applications:

- Web Browser
- Email Client
- FTP Client
- Allowed Application
- Blocked Application
- Outgoing Only

These rulesets can be edited for adding new rules or re-configuring the existing rules. For more details, see Add and Edit Firewall Rules in 'Application Rules'.



Custom Rulesets

You can create new rulesets with custom network access control rules as per your requirements. These can then be applied to specific applications when **creating an application rule**.

The Firewall Alert

You can apply a firewall ruleset to an application at a firewall alert. Both predefined and custom rulesets are made available. An example alert is shown below:

сом	ODO Firewall		?
	MyRoamer.exe is trying to connect to the int	ternet	\odot
MB	Application:MyRoamer.exeRemote:10.108.56.1 - UDPPort:5351		
	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	(\bigcirc
0	FTP Client		^
0	Allowed Application		
0	Blocked Application		
0	Outgoing Only		
0	Grazing Applications		~
Remem	ber my answer	Show A	<u>ctivities</u>

• See answering firewall alerts if you want more help with alerts.

Add a new ruleset

• Click the 'Add' button at the top of the list of rulesets in the 'Rulesets' panel



ame: Custom ruleset fo	or games		
) Use a Custom Ruleset	Copy from 🔻		
Add Edit Rules	Ruleset Another Application Remove Move Up	 Web Browser Email Client Ftp Client Allowed Applicat Blocked Applicat O bing Only 	Q

- Enter a name for this new ruleset. It is advised that you choose a name that accurately describes the category/type of application you wish to define the ruleset for.
- Next you should add and configure the individual rules for this ruleset. You can choose to use an
 existing ruleset as a starting point and add/edit rules as required. See 'Add and Edit a Firewall Rule'
 for more advice on this.

Once created, this ruleset can be quickly called when **creating or modifying a firewall ruleset** for an application:

ime: C:\	Program File	es (x86)\Drivin	ngSpeed2\Dr	ivingSpeed.exe	Browse 🔻	
Use Rule	set:				Web Browser 💌	
Use a Cu	stom Rulese	et			Copy from 🔻	
					Ruleset	Web Browser
+	<i>.</i>	×	Î	ŧ	Another Application	Email Client
Add	Edit	Remove	Move Up	Move Down		Ftp Client
					0	Allowed Application
Dul					V V	
Rul	es					Blocked Application
Rul	es					Blocked Application Outgoing Only

View or edit an existing predefined Ruleset

• Double click on the ruleset Name in the list

Or

- Select the ruleset name then click the 'Edit' button
- Details of the process from this point on can be found here.



7.3.5. Network Zones

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- A 'Network Zone' can consist of an individual machine (like a home computer connected to the internet), or a network of thousands of machines. Access to any network zone can be easily granted or denied in the network zones panel.
- The 'Network Zones' panel lets you configure:
 - Automatic detection of networks to which your computer can connect
 - Alerts for network connections
 - Trusted network zones which you want to allow
 - Untrusted network zones which you want to block

Open the 'Network Zones' panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'

COMODO Advance	ed Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall Firewall Settings Application Rules Global Rules 	 Network Zones Enable automatic detection of private networks Do not show popup alerts and treat location as Work • The following network zones are defined on this computer: NETWORK ZONES 				
Rulesets Network Zones Portsets	+ X X Add Edit Remove				
 HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Zone Name □ Image: Loopback Zone □ Image: Work #1				a
	ОК		c	ANCEL	

- Enable automatic detection of private networks The firewall monitors attempted connections to any
 new wired or wireless network (*Default = Enabled*). Deselect this option if you are an experienced user and
 wish to manually set-up your own trusted networks (this can be done in 'Network Zones' and through the
 'Stealth Ports Wizard').
- Do not show popup alerts and treat location as CCS can show an alert when your computer attempts to connect to a new network.

- **Disabled** The alert is shown. Select the appropriate network type for your connection. CCS will optimize the firewall for security and usability based on your choice. (*Default*)
- **Enabled** The alert is not shown. You now need to pick a default network type from 'Home', 'Work', or 'Public'. CCS will automatically apply your choice of network type to all new connections.

сом	ODO Network Detected	?
(II.	Join a New Network Wired:	
Please se	elect your location:	
Ē	I am at Home Choose if you are at home and have just connected your computer to a local network	
値	I am at Work Choose if you are at work place and have just connected your computer to a local network	
	I am at a Public Place Choose this option if you are at public place such as a coffee shop, hotel or school, etc.	
Do not	detect new networks again	

• Select 'Do not detect new networks again' If you are an experienced user that wishes to manually set-up their own trusted networks. This can be done in 'Network Zones' and through the 'Stealth Ports Wizard'.

The panel has two tabs:

- Network Zones Define network zones with specific access rights. Application access privileges are specified in the Application Rule interface. See 'Create or Modify Firewall Rules' for more details.
- Blocked Zones Define networks that are not trusted. CCS will deny all connections to blocked zones.

7.3.5.1. Network Zones

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones' > 'Network Zones'
- A 'Network Zone' can consist of an individual machine (like a home computer connected to the internet) or a network of thousands of machines. You can grant or deny access to a network zone as required.

Background Note:

- A computer network is a connection between computers through a cabled or wireless connection.
- A network allows users to share information and resources with other computers/users on the network.
- There are some networks which you trust and want to grant access to, including your home or work network.
- Conversely, there may be other networks with which you want to restrict communication, or even block entirely.



• The network zones panel lets you configure trusted and untrusted networks.

Add and manage network zones

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- Click the 'Network Zones' tab

COMODO Advance	ed Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall Firewall Settings Application Rules Global Rules Rulesets 	 Network Zones Enable automatic detection of private networks Do not show popup alerts and treat location as Work The following network zones are defined on this computer: NETWORK ZONES 				
Network Zones	+ 🗶 🗱 Add Edit Remove				
 Portsets HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Zone Name E Loopback Zone E Work #1				Q
	ОК		C	ANCEL	

The network zones tab shows zones that have already been added to CCS. You can add new zones and manage existing zones.

Note 1: Adding a zone to this area does not, by itself, define any permissions or access rights to the zone. This area lets you define the zones so you can assign such permissions in other areas of the firewall.
Note 2: A network zone can be designated as 'Trusted' and allowed access from the 'Manage Network Connections' interface. An example would be your home computer or network.
Note 3: A network zone can be designated as 'Blocked' and denied access by using the 'Blocked Zones' interface.
Note 4: An application can be assigned specific access rights to and from a network zone when defining an Application Rule. Similarly, a custom Global Rule assigned to a zone will inspect all traffic to/from a zone.
Note 5: By default, Comodo Firewall automatically detects any new networks (LAN, Wireless etc) once you connect



to them. This can be disabled by deselecting the option 'Enable automatic detection of private networks' in the **Firewall Settings** panel.

You can use search for a specific zone by clicking the search icon and entering the name of the zone in part or full.

Defining a new Network Zone

To add a new network zone:

- Step 1 Define a name for the zone.
- Step 2 Select the addresses to be included in the zone.

Step 1 - Define a name for the zone

- Click 'Settings' on CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- Click the 'Network Zones' tab
- Click the 'Add' button at the top of the list and choose 'New Network Zone' from the options.

NETWORK ZONES	BLOCKED ZONES			
+ 🦨	¥ : Remove			
New Network Zo New Address	ne			Q
	Network Zone		?	×
Zone Name				
My Home				
Public Netwo	rk			
		ок	CANCEL	

- Choose a name that accurately describes the network zone you are creating.
- Select 'Public Network' if you are defining a network zone for a network in a public place. For example, when you are connecting to a Wi-Fi network at an airport, restaurant etc. The firewall will optimize the connection accordingly.
- Click 'OK' to confirm your zone name.

This adds your new zone to the 'Network Zones' list.

Step 2 - Select the addresses to be included in this zone

- Select the network zone name then click the 'Add' button at the top
- Choose 'New Address' from the options

.

Alternatively, right click on the network zone and choose 'Add' > 'New Address' from the context sensitive menu

The 'Address' dialog allows you to select an address from the 'Type' drop-down box shown below (*Default* = *Any Address*).

The 'Exclude' check box will become active if you select anything other than 'Any Address'

The following	incerione 2					
NETWORK ZON	IES BLC	OCKED ZONES				
+ Add	& Edit	X Remove				
New Netw						c
New Addr		Zerie				
	Work #1					
	Work#2					
112.2 22.2 21.2 22.4 24.4 24.4 24.4						
	WORKPZ					
\frown	Home					
\frown				-		
С пу	Home	Address			? ×	
СО	Home	Address	e below)		? ×	
СО СО СС СС	Home		e below)		? ×	
СОІ	Home	IOT the choic	e below)		? ×	
СО СО СС	Home	IOT the choic	e below)		? ×	
СО СО СС СС	Home	IOT the choic	e below)		? ×	

Address Types:

- Any Defaults to an IP range of 0.0.0.0- 255.255.255 to block connection from all IP addresses.
- Host Name Choose a named host which denotes your IP address. Enter the name in the 'Host Name' text field
- IPv4 Address Range Choose all IP addresses covered by a range for example a range in your private network.
 - Enter the first and last IP addresses in the 'Start IP' and 'End IP' text boxes.
- IPv4 Single Address Choose a single IPv4 address



- Enter the IP address in the 'IP' text box, e.g., 192.168.200.113.
- IPv4 Subnet mask Choose an IPv4 network. IP networks can be divided into smaller networks called sub-networks (or subnets). An IP address/ Mask is a subnet defined by IP address and mask of the network.
 - Enter the IP address and Mask of the network.
- IPv6 Address Range Choose all IPv6 addresses covered by a range for example a segment in your private network
 - Enter the first and last IPv6 addresses in the 'Start IP' and 'End IP' text boxes.
- Single IPv6 Address Choose an IPv6 address
 - Enter the IP address in the 'IP' text box, e.g., 3ffe:1900:4545:3:200:f8ff:fe21:67cf.
- IPv6 Subnet Mask Choose a IPv6 network. IP networks can be divided into smaller networks called sub-networks (or subnets). An IP address/ Mask is a subnet defined by IP address and mask of the network.
 - Enter the IP address and 'Mask' of the network in the respective fields
- MAC Address Choose a single source/destination by specifying its physical address
 - Enter the physical address in the 'MAC Address' text box.
- Exclude (i.e. NOT the choice below) The opposite of what you specify is applicable.
- Click 'OK' to confirm your choice.
- Click 'OK' in the 'Network Zones' interface.

The new zone now appears in the main list along with the addresses you assigned to it.

Once created, a network zone can be:

• Quickly called as 'Zone' when creating or modifying a firewall ruleset

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

	Firewall Rule ?	×
Action:	Allow Log as firewall event if this rule is fired	
Protocol:	TCP or UDP	
Direction:	In or Out	
Description		
SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS SOURCE PORT DESTINATION PORT	
Exclude (i.e. NO	T the choice below)	
Туре	e: Network Zone	
Zon	e Loopback Zone Loopback Zone Work #1 Work #2 Work #3 Work #4 Talkatives Computers Work #5 OK CANC	EL

• Quickly called and designated as a blocked zone from the 'Blocked Zones' interface

Edit the name of an existing Network Zone

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- Click the 'Network Zones' tab
- Select the zone from the list (e.g., My Home) and click the 'Edit' button from the top or double click on the network zone name.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



COMODO Network Zone		? ×
Zone Name My Home Public Network		
	ОК	CANCEL

• Change the name of the zone and click 'OK'.

To add more addresses to an existing Network Zone

- Select the network name, click the 'Add' > 'New Address' from the top.
- Add new address from the 'Address' interface.

To modify or change the existing address in a zone

- Click the + button beside the network zone name to expand the addresses
- Double click on the address to be edited or select the address, click 'Edit' at the top
- Edit the address from the 'Address' interface.

To remove an existing address in a zone

- Click the '+' button beside the network zone name to expand the addresses
- Select the address and click 'Remove' from the top

7.3.5.2. Blocked Zones

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones' > 'Blocked Zones'
- A computer network lets you share information and resources with other users and computers.
- There are some networks which you trust and want to grant access to, including your home or work network.
- Conversely, there may be other networks with which you want to restrict communication, or even block entirely.
- The 'Blocked Zones' section allows you to configure restrictions on network zones that you do not trust.

Note: We advise new or inexperienced users to first read 'Network Zones', 'Stealth Ports Wizard' and 'Application Rules' before blocking zones in this interface.

Add and manage blocked zones

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- Click the 'Blocked Zones' tab:

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? – D ×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Retwork Zones Enable automatic detection of private networks
Firewall Settings Application Rules	☑ Do not show popup alerts and treat location as Work ▼ The following network zones are defined on this computer:
Global Rules Rulesets	NETWORK ZONES BLOCKED ZONES
Network Zones Portsets	Add Edit Remove
HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention	
 File Rating Advanced Protection 	
Website Filtering	
	OK CANCEL

The 'Blocked Network Zones' tab allows you to:

- Deny access to an existing network zone
- · Deny access to a network by manually defining a new blocked zone

Note 1: You must create a zone before you can block it. There are two ways to do this;

- 1. Using 'Network Zones' to name and specify the network you want to block.
- 2. Directly from this interface using 'New blocked address...'

Note 2: You cannot reconfigure *existing* zones from this interface (e.g., to add or modify IP addresses). You need to use '**Network Zones**' if you want to change the settings of existing zones.

You can search for specific blocked zone by clicking the magnifying glass icon and entering the name of the zone in part or full.

Deny access to an existing network zone

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- Click the 'Blocked Zones' tab
- · Click 'Add' button at the top and choose 'Network Zones' from the options
- Select the particular zone you wish to block.



NETWORK Z	ONES BLOCK	ED ZONES	
+ Add	۲. Edit	XX Remove	
New Blo	k Zones Cocked Address Coffee Cup 1	Loopback Zone Work #1 Work #2 Work #3 Coffee Cup Network	
		Hotel Stale Food Work #6	

The selected zone will appear in the 'Blocked Zones' interface.

∔ Add	Edit	X Remove		
Zo	ne Name			
	🗄 Coffee Cu	up Network	Name of the	
	🗏 Hotel Sta	le Food 🦊	Blocked Network Zone	
	— IP 10.10	.111.111	IP address(es) that are associated with	
	- IP 10.10	.222.222	the Blocked Zone. You can modify these settings under the 'Network Zones' tab	



- Click 'OK' to confirm your choice.
- All traffic to and from devices in this zone is now blocked.

Deny access to a network by manually defining a new blocked zone

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- Click the 'Blocked Zones' tab
- Click the 'Add' button and choose 'New Blocked Address':

	BLOCKED ZONES	
	💒 🗱 Edit Remove	
Network Zone		
New Blocked	Address Network	
] 🖺 🖽 Но	otel Stale Food	
	N	
	N	
сомо	DDO Address ? X	
	Address ? X	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below)	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below)	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below) Any Address Any Address Any Address	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below) Any Address • Any Address • Host Name IPv4 Address Range	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below) Any Address Any Address Host Name 	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below) Any Address Any Address Host Name IPv4 Address Range IPv4 Single Address IPv4 Subnet Mask 	
Exclude	e (i.e. NOT the choice below) Any Address ▼ Any Address ▼ Any Address ■ Host Name ■ IPv4 Address Range ■ IPv4 Single \ddress >	

Select the address type you wish to block from the 'Type' drop-down. Select 'Exclude' if you want to block all IP addresses except for the ones you specify using the drop-down.

Address Types:

- Any Defaults to an IP range of 0.0.0.0- 255.255.255 to block connection from all IP addresses.
- Host Name Choose a named host which denotes your IP address. Enter the name in the 'Host Name' text field
- IPv4 Address Range Choose all IP addresses covered by a range for example a range in your



private network.

- Enter the first and last IP addresses in the 'Start IP' and 'End IP' text boxes.
- IPv4 Single Address Choose a single IPv4 address
 - Enter the IP address in the 'IP' text box, e.g., 192.168.200.113.
- IPv4 Subnet mask Choose an IPv4 network. IP networks can be divided into smaller networks called sub-networks (or subnets). An IP address/ Mask is a subnet defined by IP address and mask of the network.
 - Enter the IP address and Mask of the network.
- IPv6 Address Range Choose all IPv6 addresses covered by a range for example a segment in your private network
 - Enter the first and last IPv6 addresses in the 'Start IP' and 'End IP' text boxes.
- Single IPv6 Address Choose an IPv6 address
 - Enter the IP address in the 'IP' text box, e.g., 3ffe:1900:4545:3:200:f8ff:fe21:67cf.
- IPv6 Subnet Mask Choose a IPv6 network. IP networks can be divided into smaller networks called sub-networks (or subnets). An IP address/ Mask is a subnet defined by IP address and mask of the network.
 - · Enter the IP address and 'Mask' of the network in the respective fields
- MAC Address Choose a single source/destination by specifying its physical address
 - Enter the physical address in the 'MAC Address' text box.
- Exclude (i.e. NOT the choice below) The opposite of what you specify is applicable.
- Select the address to be blocked and click 'OK'

The address(es) you block will appear in the 'Blocked Zones' tab. You can modify these addresses at any time by selecting the entry and clicking 'Edit'.

 Click 'OK' in 'Network Zones' interface to confirm your choice. All traffic intended for and originating from devices in this zone is now blocked.

7.3.6. Port Sets

- Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Portsets'
- Port sets are predefined groups of one or more ports. These sets can be named as the target of
 Application Rules and Global Rules. For example, you might want to block all inbound traffic to certain
 set of ports.
- The port sets panel lets you add, view and manage port sets

Open the Portsets panel

- Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Portsets'



COMODO Advanced	Settings ? — 🗆 🗙]
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Portsets The following portsets are defined on this computer:	
Firewall Settings Application Rules	+ X X Add Edit Remove	
Global Rules Rulesets	Portset Q	
Network Zones	□ E I POP3/SMTP Ports	
Portsets	^{III} III Privileged Ports	
 Containment Data Loss Prevention 		
 File Rating Advanced Protection 		
Website Filtering		
	OK CANCEL	ĺ

- The interface lists all existing port sets. Click the + button to view all ports in a set.
- CCS ships with three default portsets:
 - HTTP Ports: 80, 443 and 8080. These are the default ports for http traffic. Your internet browser uses these ports to connect to the internet and other networks.
 - **POP3/SMTP Ports**: 110, 25, 143, 995, 465 and 587. These ports are typically used for email communication by mail clients like Outlook and Thunderbird.
 - **Privileged Ports:** 0-1023. Privileged ports are so called because it is usually desirable to prevent users from running services on these ports. Network admins usually reserve or prohibit the use of these ports. This set can be deployed if you wish to create a rule that allows or blocks access to the privileged port range.

Define a new port set

After defining a new port set, you can apply it to applications through the **Application Rule** interface. See 'Creating or **Modifying Firewall Rules**' for more details.

Add a new portset

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Portsets'
- Click the 'Add' button at the top.



сомо	?		×			
Name: Spec	ial Ports					
+ Add	K. Edit	X Remove				
Por	ts					Q
			ок		CANCEL	
						1.

- Create a name for the port set
- Click 'Add' to specify ports and port ranges for the set:

COMODO Add Ports	COMODO Add Portset			
Name: Special Ports				
Add Edit R	* emove			
Ports				Q
сомодо	Port	?	×	
Exclude (i.e. NOT	the choice below)			
⊖ Any				
A Single Port	0			
○ A Port Range	0 - 0 +			
	ОК	CANCEL		



- Specify the ports to be included in the new portset:
 - Any to choose all ports
 - A single port Specify the port number
 - A port range Enter the start and end port numbers in the respective combo boxes.
 - Exclude (i.e. NOT the choice below): Means all ports will be included in the portset except the ones you specify here
- Click 'OK' in the 'Port' dialog then click 'OK' in the 'Add Portset' interface

You can now select 'A Set of Ports', then choose this rule-set, when **creating or modifying a Firewall Ruleset**

	rewall Rule ?	×
Action: Al	llow Log as firewall event if this rule is fired 	
Protocol: TC	CP or UDP 🔻	
Direction: In	n or Out	
Description		
SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS SOURCE PORT DESTINATION PORT	
Exclude (i.e. NOT	the choice below)	
Туре:	A Set of Ports	
Ports:	HTTP Ports	
	HTTP Ports	
	POP3/SMTP Ports	
(C	Privileged Ports Special Ports	
	Special Ports	
1		
	OK CANCE	-

Edit an existing port set

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Firewall' > 'Portsets'
- Select the port set from the list
- Click the 'Edit' button
- The editing procedure is similar to adding the portset explained above.



7.4. HIPS Configuration

- Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS'
- The host intrusion protection system (HIPS) constantly monitors system activity and stops processes from modifying important files and interfaces.
- Comodo Client Security ships with a default HIPS ruleset that works 'out of the box' providing extremely high levels of protection.
 - For example, HIPS automatically protects system-critical files, folders and registry keys to prevent unauthorized modifications by malicious programs.
- Advanced users looking to take a firmer grip on their security posture can quickly create custom policies and rulesets using the powerful rules interface.

Configure HIPS settings

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' on the left:

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? - 🗆 🗙
General SettingsAntivirus	HIPS Settings
✓ Firewall	Enable HIPS
- HIPS	Safe Mode Monitoring Settings
HIPS Settings	This option enables the Host Intrusion Protection System, the component that monitors critical operating system activities to protect the computer against malware actions.
HIPS Rules	Do not show popup alerts Allow Requests 🔻
	Set popup alerts to verbose mode
Protected Objects	Create rules for safe applications
HIPS Groups	Set new on-screen alert timeout to 60 secs
✓ Containment	Advanced
 Data Loss Prevention 	Enable adaptive mode under low system resources
 File Rating 	Block all unknown requests when the application is not running
✓ Advanced Protection	
Website Filtering	

- HIPS Settings General settings that govern the overall behavior of the HIPS component.
- HIPS Rules These rules determine what actions an application is allowed to perform, and what level of
 protection it enjoys from other processes.
- Rulesets View predefined rulesets and create new rulesets that can be applied to your applications in your system.
- Protected Objects Define objects to be protected by HIPS such as specific folders, system critical



registry keys and so on.

 HIPS Groups - View and edit predefined 'Registry Groups' and 'COM Groups', create new groups so as to add them to Protected Objects.

Note for beginners:

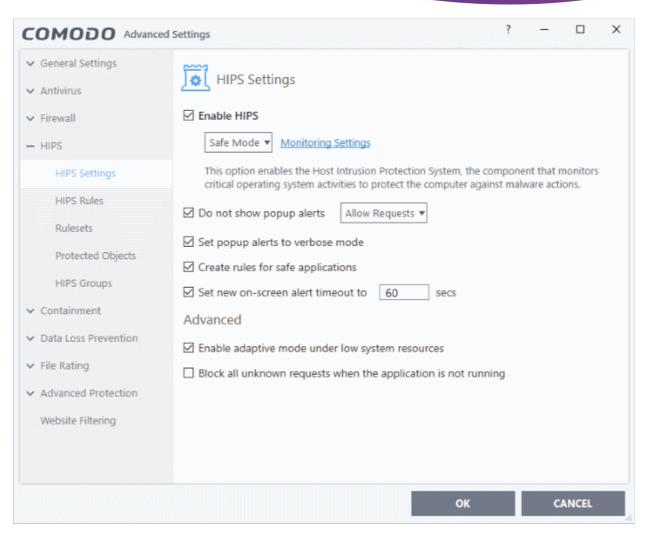
- This section often refers to 'executables' (or 'executable files'). An executable is a file that can instruct your computer to perform a task or function.
- Every program, application and device you run on your computer requires an executable file of some kind to start it.
- The most recognizable type of executable file is the '.exe' file. For example, 'winword.exe' is the name of the executable that instructs your computer to start and run Microsoft Word. Other types of executable files include those with extensions .cpl .dll, .drv, .inf, .ocx, .pf, .scr, .sys.
- Unfortunately, not all executables can be trusted. Some executables, broadly categorized as malware, can
 instruct your computer to delete valuable data, steal your identity, corrupt system files, hand control of your
 PC to a hacker and more. You may also have heard these referred to as Trojans, scripts and worms.

7.4.1. HIPS Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Settings'
- HIPS settings let you enable/disable HIPS, set HIPS security level, and configure the general behavior of the HIPS module.

Open the 'HIPS Settings' panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Settings'



• Enable HIPS - Activate or deactivate the HIPS protection. (Default=Disabled)

If enabled, you can configure the HIPS security level and monitoring settings:

Configure HIPS Security Level

• Choose the security level from the drop-down under the 'Enable HIPS' check-box:

∠ E	nable HIPS	
	Safe Mode Moni	toring Settings
	Paranoid Mode	Host Intrusion Protection
	Safe Modim	
	Training Mode	

The choices available are:

- Paranoid Mode: This is the highest security level setting and means that HIPS monitors and controls all
 executable files apart from those that you have deemed safe. Comodo Client Security does not attempt to
 learn the behavior of any applications even those applications on the safe list and only uses your
 configuration settings to filter critical system activity. Similarly, CCS does not automatically create 'Allow'
 rules for any executables although you still have the option to treat an application as 'Trusted' at the HIPS
 alert. Choosing this option generates the most amount of HIPS alerts and is recommended for advanced
 users that require complete awareness of activity on their system.
- Safe Mode: While monitoring critical system activity, HIPS automatically learns the activity of executables

and applications certified as 'Safe' by Comodo. It also automatically creates 'Allow' rules for these activities, if the checkbox 'Create rules for safe applications' is selected. For non-certified, unknown, applications, you will receive an alert whenever that application attempts to run. Should you choose, you can add that new application to the HIPS rules list by choosing 'Treat as' and selecting 'Allowed Application' at the alert with 'Remember my answer' checked. This instructs the HIPS not to generate an alert the next time it runs. If your machine is not new or known to be free of malware and other threats then 'Safe Mode' is recommended setting for most users - combining the highest levels of security with an easy-to-manage number of HIPS alerts.

• **Training Mode**: HIPS monitors and learns the activity of any and all executables and creates automatic 'Allow' rules until the security level is adjusted. You do not receive any HIPS alerts in 'Training Mode'. If you choose the 'Training Mode' setting, we advise that you are 100% sure that all applications and executables installed on your computer are safe to run.

Configure Monitoring Settings

Click the <u>Monitoring Settings</u> link to select the activities and objects that should be monitored by HIPS

Note: The settings you choose here are universally applied. If you disable monitoring of an activity or object here, it completely switches off monitoring of that activity on a *global* basis - effectively creating a universal '*Allow*' rule for the activity. This 'Allow' setting *over-rules* any specific 'Block' or 'Ask' setting for the activity that you may have created in the 'Access Rights' and 'Protection Settings' interfaces.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

nced Settings	?	-		×
HIPS Settings				
☑ Enable HIPS				
Safe Mode Monitorin Met	tings			
	rusion Protection System, the componen to protect the computer against malwa			5
COMODO Monitoring Settings			?	×
Activities to Monitor				
Interprocess Memory Accesses	Process Execution			
Windows/WinEvent Hooks	Window Messages			
Device Driver Installations	DNS/RPC Client Service			
Processes' Terminations				
Objects to Monitor Against Modi	fications			
Protected COM Interfaces	Protected Registry Keys			
Protected Files/Folders				
Objects to Monitor Against Direct	t Access			
Physical Memory	☑ Disks			
Computer Monitor	🗹 Keyboard			
	ок	C/	ANCEL	

Activities To Monitor:

- Interprocess Memory Access Malware programs use memory space modification to inject malicious code for numerous types of attacks. These include recording your keyboard strokes; modifying the behavior of applications and stealing data by sending confidential information from one process to another. One of the most serious aspects of memory-space breaches is the ability of the offending malware to take the identity of a compromised process to 'impersonate' the application under attack. This makes life harder for traditional virus scanning software and intrusion-detection systems. Leave this box checked and HIPS alerts you when an application attempts to modify the memory space allocated to another application (Default = Enabled).
- Windows/WinEvent Hooks In the Microsoft Windows® operating system, a hook is a mechanism by which a function can intercept events *before* they reach an application. Example intercepted events include messages, mouse actions and keystrokes. Hooks can react to these events and, in some cases, modify or

discard them. Originally developed to allow legitimate software developers to develop more powerful and useful applications, hooks have also been exploited by hackers to create more powerful malware. Examples include malware that can record every stroke on your keyboard; record your mouse movements; monitor and modify all messages on your computer and take remote control of your computer. Leaving this box checked means that you are warned every time a hook is executed by an untrusted application (*Default = Enabled*).

- **Device Driver Installations** Device drivers are small programs that allow applications and/or operating systems to interact with hardware devices on your computer. Hardware devices include your disk drives, graphics card, wireless and LAN network cards, CPU, mouse, USB devices, monitor, DVD player etc.. Even the installation of a perfectly well-intentioned device driver can lead to system instability if it conflicts with other drivers on your computer or even pass control of that device to a hacker. Leaving this box checked means HIPS alerts you every time a device driver is installed on your machine by an untrusted application (*Default* = *Enabled*).
- Processes' Terminations A process is a running instance of a program. (for example, the Open VPN GUI process is called 'openvpn.exe'. Press 'Ctrl+Alt+Delete' and click on 'Processes' to see the full list that are running on your system). Terminating a process, obviously, terminates the program. Viruses and Trojan horses often try to shut down the processes of any security software you have been running in order to bypass it. With this setting enabled, HIPS monitors and alerts you to all attempts by an untrusted application to close down another application (*Default = Enabled*).
- Process Execution Malware such as rootkits and key-loggers often execute as background processes. With this setting enabled, HIPS monitors and alerts you to whenever a process is invoked by an untrusted application. (Default = Enabled).
- Windows Messages This setting means Comodo Client Security monitors and detects if one application attempts to send special Windows Messages to modify the behavior of another application (e.g. by using the WM_PASTE command) (*Default = Enabled*).
- DNS/RPC Client Service This setting alerts you if an application attempts to access the 'Windows DNS service' possibly in order to launch a DNS recursion attack. A DNS recursion attack is a type of Distributed Denial of Service (DDoS) attack whereby a malicious entity sends several thousand spoofed requests to a DNS server. The requests are spoofed so that they appear to come from the target or 'victim' server but in fact come from different sources often a network of 'zombie' PCs which are sending out these requests without their owners' knowledge. The DNS servers are tricked into sending all their replies to the victim server overwhelming it with requests and causing it to crash. Leaving this setting enabled prevents malware from using the DNS Client Service to launch such an attack (*Default = Enabled*).

Background Note: DNS stands for Domain Name System. It is the part of the internet infrastructure that matches a familiar domain name, such as 'example.com' to an IP address like 123.456.789.04. This is essential because the internet routes messages to their destinations using these IP addresses, not the domain name you type into your browser. Whenever you enter a domain name, your internet browser contacts a DNS server and makes a 'DNS Query'. In simple terms, this query is 'What is the IP address of example.com?'. The DNS server replies to your browser, telling it to connect to the IP in question.

Objects To Monitor Against Modifications:

- Protected COM Interfaces HIPS monitors the COM interfaces you specified from the COM Protection pane. (Default = Enabled)
- Protected Registry Keys HIPS monitors the Registry keys you specified from the Registry Protection pane. (*Default = Enabled*).
- Protected Files/Folders HIPS monitors the files and folders you specified from the File Protection pane. (Default = Enabled).

Objects To Monitor Against Direct Access:

 Whether or not Comodo Client Security should monitor access to system critical objects on your computer. Using direct access methods, malicious applications can obtain data from storage devices, modify or infect other executable software, record keystrokes and more. Comodo advises the average user to leave these settings enabled:

- Physical Memory: Monitors your computer's memory for direct access by applications and processes. Malicious programs attempt to access physical memory to run a wide range of exploits - the most famous being the 'Buffer Overflow' exploit. Buffer overruns occur when an interface designed to store a certain amount of data at a specific address in memory allows a malicious process to supply too much data to that address. This overwrites its internal structures and can be used by malware to force the system to execute its code (Default = Enabled).
- Computer Monitor: Comodo Client Security raises an alert every time a process tries to directly access your computer monitor. Although legitimate applications sometimes require this access, spyware can also use such access to take screen shots of your current desktop, record your browsing activities and more. (Default = Enabled).
- **Disks:** Monitors your local disk drives for direct access by running processes. This helps guard against malicious software that need this access to, for example, obtain data stored on the drives, destroy files on a hard disk, format the drive or corrupt the file system by writing junk data (*Default = Enabled*).
- **Keyboard:** Monitors your keyboard for access attempts. Malicious software, known as 'key loggers', can record every stroke you make on your keyboard and can be used to steal your passwords, credit card numbers and other personal data. With this setting checked, Comodo Client Security alerts you every time an application attempts to establish direct access to your keyboard (*Default = Enabled*).

Checkbox Options

 Do not show popup alerts - Whether or not you want to be notified when the HIPS encounters malware. Choosing 'Do NOT show popup alerts' will minimize disturbances but at some loss of user awareness (Default = Disabled).

If you choose not to show alerts then you have a choice of default responses that CCS should automatically take - either 'Block Requests' or 'Allow Requests'.

o not show popup alerts	Allow Requests 🔻
Set popup alerts to verbose n	Allow Requests Block Requests
Create rules for safe application	ons
Set new on-screen alert times	out to 120 secs

- Set popup alerts to verbose mode HIPS alerts provide more information and options for the user to allow or block the requests (Default = Disabled).
- Create rules for safe applications HIPS trusts applications if:
 - The application is on the safe list, a global white-list of trusted software.
 - The application has a 'Trusted' rating in the local file list. See File List if you need more details.
 - The file is published and signed by a trusted vendor. The 'vendor' is the software company that created the file. See **Vendor List** if you need more details.

By default, CCS does not automatically create 'allow' rules for safe applications. This helps to reduce resource usage, to simplify the rules interface by reducing the number of 'Allow' rules, and can reduce the number of pop-up alerts. Enabling this option instructs CCS to begin learning the behavior of safe applications so that it can automatically generate 'Allow' rules. These rules are listed in the **HIPS Rules** interface. Advanced users can edit / modify the rules as they wish.

• Set new on-screen alert time out to: How long a HIPS alert remains on-screen if it is not answered. The default timeout is 120 seconds. You may adjust this setting to your own preference.

Advanced HIPS Settings



Note: These settings are recommended for advanced users only.

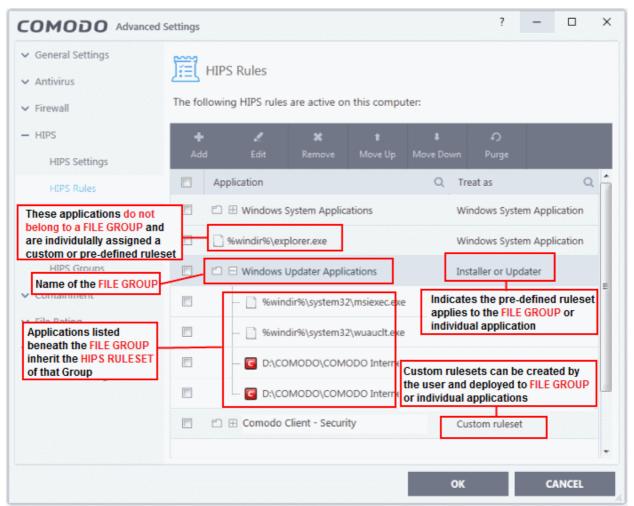
- Enable adaptive mode under low system resources Very rarely (and only in a heavily loaded system), low memory conditions might cause certain CCS functions to fail. With this option enabled, CCS will attempt to locate and utilize memory using adaptive techniques so that it can complete its pending tasks. However, enabling this option may reduce performance in even lightly loaded systems (*Default = Disabled*).
- Block all unknown requests if the application is not running Prohibits execution of unknown applications if CCS is not running/has been shut down. This is option is very strict indeed and in most cases should only be enabled on seriously infested or compromised machines while the user is working to resolve these issues. If you know your machine is already 'clean' and are looking just to enable the highest CCS security settings then it is OK to leave this box unchecked. (Default = Disabled)

7.4.2. Active HIPS Rules

- Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Rules'
- The rules screen shows your installed applications classified into file groups, and the HIPS ruleset that applies to them.
- You can change the ruleset of a specific application or file group, and create your own custom rulesets.

Open the 'HIPS Rules' panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Rules'



The first column, **Application**, displays a list of the applications on your system for which a HIPS ruleset has been defined. If the application belongs to a file group, then all member applications assume the ruleset of the group. The second column, **Treat As**, displays the name of the HIPS ruleset assigned to the application or group of applications.

You can use the search option to find a specific file in the list by clicking the search icon at the far right of the column header and entering the name in full or part.

General Navigation:

The control buttons at the top of the list enable you to create and manage application rule sets.

d Settings					?	-		×
🗮 нір	S Rules							
The followin	ng HIPS rules	are active o	n this compu	iter:				
+ Add	. Edit	XX Remove	🕇 Move Up	↓ Move Down	Ю Purge		>	
ДАр	plication			Q Trea	t As		c	2 ^
	%windir%\ext			Wind	dows Syst	em App	lication	

- Add Allows the user to add a new application to the list and then create its ruleset. See the section 'Creating or Modifying a HIPS Ruleset'.
- Edit Allows the user to modify the HIPS rule of the selected application. See the section 'Creating or Modifying a HIPS Ruleset'.
- **Remove** Deletes the selected ruleset.

Note: You cannot add or remove individual applications from a file group using this interface - you must use the 'File Groups' interface to do this.

- **Purge** Runs a system check to verify that all the applications for which rulesets are listed are actually installed on the host machine at the path specified. If not, the rule is removed, or 'purged', from the list.
- Move UP/Move Down Users can re-order the priority of rules by simply selecting an application name or file group and selecting 'Move Up' or 'Move Down' from the options. To alter the priority of applications that belong to a file group, you must use the 'File Groups' interface.

Creating or Modifying a HIPS Ruleset

•

Defining a HIPS Ruleset for an application or File group involves two steps:

- 1. Select the application or file group that you wish the ruleset to apply to.
- 2. Configure the ruleset for this application.

Step 1 - Select the application or file group that you wish the ruleset to apply to

To define a rule for a new application (i.e. one that is not already listed), click the 'Add' button at the top of the **HIPS Rules pane**.

This brings up the 'HIPS Rule' interface as shown below.



		? 🗆) ×
Name:		В	rowse 🔻
Use Ruleset:		Allowed Appli	cation 🔻
○ Use a Custom Ruleset		Сору	/ from 🤊
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SETTIN	GS		
Access Name	Action	Exclusions	^
📨 Run an executable	<u>Ask</u>	<u>Modify (0\0)</u>	
Run an executable	<u>Ask</u>	<u>Modify (0\0)</u> <u>Modify (0\0)</u>	
_			
Interprocess Memory Accesses	Ask	Modify (0\0)	

The 'Name' box is blank because you are defining a HIPS rule settings for a new application. If you were editing an existing rule, this field would show the application name and its installation path, or the application group name.

• Click 'Browse' to begin.

You now have 3 methods available to choose the application for which you wish to create a Ruleset - File Groups; Applications and Running Processes.

 File Groups - Choosing this option allows you to create a HIPS ruleset for a category of pre-set files or folders. For example, selecting 'Executables' would enable you to create a ruleset for all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl *\cmd.exe, *.bat, *.cmd. Other such categories available include 'Windows System Applications', 'Windows Updater Applications', 'Start Up Folders' etc - each of which provide a fast and convenient way to apply a generic ruleset to important files and folders.

COMODO HIPS Rule		?		
Name:		4	Browse 🔻	
Our State		Allowed App	File Groups Applications	Executables All Applications Important Files/Folders
O Use a Custom Ruleset		Co	py from 💌	Windows Updater Applications
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SETTIN				Windows System Applications Temporary Files COMODO Client Files/Folders
Access Name	Action	Exclusions	^	Comodo Client - Security
		he dit mon		COMODO Applications
Run an executable	<u>Ask</u>	Modify (0\0)		Startup Folders Windows Management
Interprocess memory accesses	Ask	Modify (0\0)		3rd Party Protocol Drivers
				Metro Apps
Windows/WinEvent hooks	<u>Ask</u>	Modify (0\0)		Management and Productivity Applications
Processes' termination	Ask	Modify (0\0)		Web Browsers
				Email Clients
Device drivers' installation	Ask	Modify (0\0)		Suspicious Locations
				Shared Spaces
		ОК СА	NCEL	File Downloaders
				Pseudo File Downloaders
				File Archivers
				Containment Folders
				Browser Plugins
				Media Players

To view the file types and folders that are affected by choosing one of these options, you need to visit the **'File Groups'** interface.

2. **Applications** - This option is the easiest for most users and simply allows you to browse to the location of the application for which you want to deploy the ruleset.

er	855 💌 🛙	. ?
Name	Date modified	Туре
🔄 data	11/9/2016 4:05 PM	File fold
🛷 DrivingSpeed	1/6/2012 3:58 PM	Applica
📄 eula	9/9/2009 9:02 PM	Text Do
e helpfaq	3/20/2010 12:34 PM	HTML
readme	10/11/2011 10:35	Text Do
📄 unins000.dat	11/9/2016 4:06 PM	DAT Fil
🕞 unins000	11/9/2016 4:04 PM	Applica
📓 website	8/26/2007 4:13 PM	Interne
٢		
ame: DrivingSpeed ~	All Files (*.*)	~
	 data DrivingSpeed eula helpfaq readme unins000.dat unins000 website 	data 11/9/2016 4:05 PM

3. **Running Processes** - as the name suggests, this option allows you choose any process that is currently running on your PC in order to create and deploy a ruleset for its parent application.

OMODO Browse for Processes	?	>
Application	PID	
▼ 💷 unit_manager.exe	2624	^
✓ ■ unit.exe	4264	
conhost.exe	4464	
🕫 📊 explorer.exe	2440	
🔺 🝊 OneDrive.exe	3236	
 Ø DrivingSpeed.exe 	4152	
RuntimeBroker.exe	3168	
🛚 🚨 SearchIndexer.exe	3304	
🖉 📄 System	4	
▲ 📧 smss.exe	284	
svchost.exe	8	
🛚 🌅 GeekBuddyRSP.exe	1600	
SearchUl.exe	3808	
Cavwp.exe	2324	
csrss.exe	428	
🛚 🍓 vkise.exe	4040	
svchost.exe	1824	
• Table • •	con	Y

Having selected the individual application, running process or file group, the next stage is to configure the rules for this ruleset.

Step 2 - Configure the HIPS Ruleset for this application

There are two broad options available for selecting a ruleset that applies to an application - Use Ruleset or Use a Custom Ruleset.

 Use Ruleset - Selecting this option allows you to quickly deploy an existing HIPS ruleset on to the target application. Choose the ruleset you wish to use from the drop down menu. In the example below, we have chosen 'Allowed Application'. The name of the ruleset you choose is displayed in the 'Treat As' column for that application in the HIPS Rules interface (*Default = Enabled*).

COMODO HIPS Rule	?		×	
Name: C:\Program Files (x86)\DrivingSpeed2\DrivingSpeed.exe		Brow	se 🔻	
Ose Ruleset:		pplicatio		
O Use a Custom Ruleset	Cont	ows Syst ained Ap	plicatior	
		ed Applio Ier or Up		

Note on 'Installer or Updater' Rule: Applying this rule to an application defines it as a trusted installer. All files created by this application will also be trusted. Some applications may have hidden code that could impair the security of your computer if allowed to create files of their own. Comodo advises you to use this 'Predefined Ruleset' - 'Installer or Updater' with caution. On applying this ruleset to any application, an alert dialog will be displayed, describing the risks involved.

General Note: Predefined Rulesets cannot be modified directly from this interface - they can only be modified and defined using the '**Rulesets**' interface. If you require the ability to add or modify settings for a specific application then you are effectively creating a new, custom ruleset and should choose the more flexible **Use a Custom Ruleset** option instead.

2. **Use a Custom Ruleset** - Designed for more experienced users, the 'Custom Ruleset' option grants full control over the configuration of each rule within that ruleset.

The custom ruleset has two main configuration areas - Access Rights and Protection Settings.

In simplistic terms 'Access Rights' determine what the application *can do to other processes* and objects whereas 'Protection Settings' determine what the application *can have done to it* by other processes.

	Rule	?			
lame: C:\Program Files	(x86)\DrivingSpeed2\DrivingSp	eed.exe	Browse 🔻		
Use Ruleset:		Allowed A	pplication •		
Use a Custom Ruleset		C	copy from 🔻	$\overline{}$	
ACCESS REALTS PROFE	CTROPH SETTIBUIGS		Ruleset Another Applic	ation > Wind	ed Application ows System Applicatio ained Application
Access Name	Action	Exclusions		Limite	ed Application

i. Access Rights - The 'Process Access Rights' area allows you to determine what activities can be performed by the applications in your custom ruleset. These activities are called 'Access Names'.



COMODO HIPS Rule		? 🗆	×
Name: C:\Program Files (x86)\Driv	ingSpeed2\DrivingS	peed.exe Br	owse 🔻
 Use Ruleset: Use a Custom Ruleset 		Allowed Applic	ation 🔻
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SETT	INGS		
Access Name	Action	Exclusions	^
🖅 Run an executable	Ask	Modify (0\0)	
Interprocess Memory Accesses	Ask	Modify (0\0)	
Windows/WinEvent Hooks	Ask	Modify (0\0)	
Processes' Termination	Ask	Modify (0\0)	
Device Drivers' Installation	Ask	Modify (0\0)	~
		OK CANC	EL

See HIPS Settings > Activities to Monitor to see definitions of the 'Action Names' listed above, and the implications of choosing 'Ask', 'Allow' or 'Block':

Interprocess Memory Accesses	Ask	Modify (0\0)
_	Ask	
Windows/WinEvent Hooks	Slock	<u>Modify (0\0)</u>

- Exceptions to your choice of 'Ask', 'Allow' or 'Block' can be specified for the ruleset by clicking the 'Modify' link on the right.
- Select the 'Allowed Files/Folders' or 'Blocked Files/Folders' tab depending on the type of exception you wish to create.



307 Run an executable	Ask	<u>Modify (0\0)</u>	
Interprocess Memory Accesses	Block	<u>Modify (0\0)</u>	
Windows/WinEvent Hooks	Ask	<u>Modify (0\0)</u>	
	ory Accesses	?	
ALLOWED FILES/FOLDERS BLOCKED FI	ILES/FOLDERS		
+ 🗶 😫 Add Edit Remove			
Path			Q
🗌 🖆 🗄 File Downloaders			
		ок	CANCEL

Clicking the 'Add' button at the top allows you to choose which applications or file groups you wish this exception to apply to. (**click here** for an explanation of available options).

In **the example above**, the default action for 'Interprocess Memory Access' is 'Block'. This means HIPS will block the action if 'DrivingSpeed.exe' tries to modify the memory space of any other program. Clicking 'Modify' then adding 'File Downloaders' File Group to the 'Allowed Files\Folders' area creates an exception to this rule. 'DrivingSpeed.exe' can now modify the memory space of files belonging to the 'File Downloaders' File Group.

ii. **Protection Settings -** Protection Settings determine how protected the application or file group in your ruleset is *against* activities by other processes. These protections are called 'Protection Types'.



	Rule		? 🗆 ×
Name: C:\Program File	s (x86)\DrivingSp	eed2\DrivingSpeed.ex	e Browse 🔻
○ Use Ruleset:			Allowed Application 🔻
Output Use a Custom Rulese	t		Copy from 🔻
ACCESS RIGHTS PRO	FECTION SETTINGS		
Protection		State	Exclusions
Interprocess Memor	y Accesses	Inactive	Modify (0)
Windows/WinEvent	Hooks	Inactive	Modify (0)
💀 Processes' Terminati	on	Inactive	Modify (0)
Window Messages		Inactive	Modify (0)
		0	K CANCEL

• Set the 'State' as 'Active' to enable monitoring and protect the application or file group against the process listed in the 'Protection' column. Select 'Inactive' to disable such protection.

Click here to view a list of definitions of the 'Protection Types' listed above and the implications of activating each setting.

Exceptions to your choice of 'Active' or 'Inactive' can be specified in the application's Ruleset by clicking the 'Modify' link on the right.

3. Click 'OK' to confirm your settings.

7.4.3. HIPS Rule Sets

- Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'Rulesets'
- A ruleset is a collection of access rights and protection settings that can be applied to applications on your computer.
- Each ruleset consists of a number of rules, and each of these rules is defined by a set of conditions and parameters. Rulesets govern an application's rights to access memory, other programs, the registry etc.
- CCS ships with six predefined rulesets that provide a very high level of protection. You can also create your own.

Note: This section is for advanced users. If you are new CCS user, we advise you first read the Active HIPS Rules



section in this help guide.

Although each application's ruleset could be defined from the ground up by individually configuring its constituent rules, this practice may prove time consuming if it had to be performed for every single program on your system. For this reason, Comodo provide a set of pre-defined rulesets which optimize security on a range of application types.

- You can modify these predefined rulesets to suit your requirements.
- You can also create new custom rule sets with your own constituent rules
- You can also apply a HIPS ruleset to an application at a HIPS alert. Both predefined and custom rulesets are made available. An example alert is shown below:

сом		?
	SunGazer.exe is trying to modify a protected registry key	' ⊘
SunC	Sazer.exe Modify	key
	Treat as Lets you choose a ruleset to apply	\sim
0	Allowed Application	^
0	Windows System Application	
0	Contained Application	
0	Limited Application	
0	My Fav Games	~
Remen	nber my answer Sho	w Activities

• See answering HIPS alerts if you want more help with alerts.

View the list of HIPS Rulesets

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Rulesets'



COMODO Advance	ed Settings ? — 🗆	×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	The following rulesets are defined on this computer:	
— HIPS HIPS Settings	+ 🗶 🗱 Add Edit Remove	
HIPS Rules	Ruleset Name	Q
Rulesets	Allowed Application	
Protected Objects	Windows System Application	
HIPS Groups	Isolated Application	
 Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Limited Application	
	OK CANCEL	
	OK CANCEL	

· Click the search icon and enter the name of a ruleset name in full or part to search for a specific ruleset.

View or edit a ruleset

• Double click on the 'Ruleset' in the list

or

• Select the 'Ruleset' and click the 'Edit' button at the top of the interface

From here, you can make changes to its 'Access Rights' and 'Protection Settings'. Any changes you make here are automatically rolled out to all applications that are covered by the ruleset.

Create a new ruleset

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Rulesets'
- Click the 'Add' button at the top of the interface



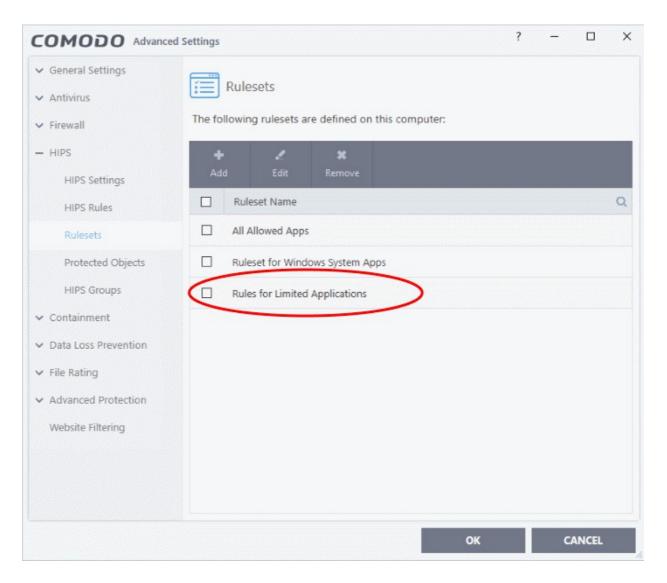
OMODO Advanced Settings			
General Settings	Rulesets		
Firewall The follo	owing rulesets are def	ined on this computer:	
HIPS HIPS Settings		X move	
HIPS Rules	Ruleset Name		ŝ.
	Allowed Application		
			? ×
Name:		C	opy from 🔻
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE	Action	Exclusions	opy from 🔻
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE			
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE	Action Ask	Exclusions	
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE Access Name	Action Ask	Exclusions Modify (0\0)	
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE Access Name Run an executable Interprocess Memory Accesses	Action Ask s Ask	Exclusions Modify (0\0) Modify (0\0)	
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE Access Name Run an executable Interprocess Memory Accesses Windows/WinEvent Hooks	Action Ask s Ask Ask Ask	Exclusions Modify (0\0) Modify (0\0) Modify (0\0)	
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SE Access Name Run an executable Interprocess Memory Accesses Windows/WinEvent Hooks Processes' Termination	Action Ask s Ask Ask Ask Ask Ask	Exclusions Modify (0\0) Modify (0\0) Modify (0\0) Modify (0\0)	

- Enter a name for the new ruleset.
- To copy the Access Rights and Protection Settings from an existing ruleset, click 'Copy From' and choose the ruleset from the drop-down.

со	обом	HIPS Ruleset			?	×	
Name	e: Rules for	Games			Copy fro	m 🔻	
AC	255 MG+P5	PROTECTION SETTING	5	(Rule	eset	Allowed Application Windows System Application Contained Application
/Acco	ess Name		Action	Endusions		h.	Limited Application



- To customize the Access Rights and Protection Settings of this new rule set, follow the procedure explained under Use a Custom Ruleset in the section Active HIPS Rules.
- Click 'OK' to save the new ruleset.



Once created, your ruleset is available for deployment onto specific application or file groups via the **Active HIPS Rules** interface.

СОМ	0G01	HIPS Rule				?		×	
Name:	C:\Progra	am Files (x86)\DrivignS	peed2\DrivingSp	eed.exe			Brow	se 🔻	
O Use	Ruleset:				Allov	ved A	pplicatio	on 🔻	
O Use	a Custom I	Ruleset					ved Appli Iows Syst	cation em Applic	ation
ACCES	5 100-175					Limit	ained Ap ed Applie et for Ga	cation	
Access	s Miarrie		Action	Endlas		Insta	l ler or Up	dater	



7.4.4. HIPS Groups

- Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Groups'
- HIPS groups are collections of one or more COM interfaces or registry keys.
- After defining a HIPS group, it will be available for selection and protection in the Registry Keys and COM Interfaces.
- CCS ships with predefined 'Registry' and 'COM' groups, and allows you to add new groups.
- You can view manage all groups in the 'HIPS Groups' interface.

Open the 'HIPS Groups' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen to open the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- Click 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Groups' on the left:

 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS 			f objects are def	ined on this co	mputer:		
HIPS Settings HIPS Rules Rulesets	+ Add	Edit Stry Groups	X Remove			Q	^
Protected Objects HIPS Groups Containment		Automati COMODO) Keys				
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection 		Internet E Important Temporar	29 11/				-
Website Filtering		I Applicatio	on Keys				~

• Please note, this area is just where you can view and define the groups. You need to select the group in the **Protected Objects** interface to actually apply the protections.

The panel has two sections:

- **Registry Groups** View, edit and create groups of registry keys which you want to protect from changes.
- COM Groups View, edit and create groups of COM interfaces which you want to protect from changes.

7.4.4.1. Registry Groups

Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Groups' > 'Registry Groups'



- Registry groups are predefined batches of one or more registry keys.
- Comodo Client Security ships with a set of important registry groups: 'Automatic Startup' (keys), 'Comodo Keys', 'Internet Explorer Keys', 'Important Keys' and 'Temporary Keys'.
- Creating a registry group allows you to quickly add it to the list of protected keys. See 'Protected Registry Keys' for help with this.

To open the 'Registry Groups' section

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen to open the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- Click 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Groups' on the left.
- Click the 'Registry Groups' tab:

COMODO Advance				
 General Settings 	HIPS Groups			
✓ Antivirus	The solution			
✓ Firewall	The following groups of objects are defined on this compute	er:		
- HIPS	REGISTRY GROUPS COM GROUPS			
HIPS Settings				
HIPS Rules	+ 2 ×			
Rulesets	Add Edit Remove			
Protected Objects	Registry Groups		Q	î
HIPS Groups	🗋 🗄 Automatic Startup			
✓ Containment	🗋 🗄 COMODO Keys			
 Data Loss Prevention 	🔲 🗈 🗄 Internet Explorer Keys			
✓ File Rating	🔲 🖆 🗄 Important Keys			
✓ Advanced Protection	🗌 🗄 Temporary Keys			
Website Filtering	🗋 🗄 Application Keys			
				~
	ок		NCEL	

• Click the search icon on the right to find a specific item. You can enter a full or partial name.

This interface allows you to:

.

- Create a new Registry Group
- Add Registry key(s) to an existing group
- Edit the names of an Existing Registry Group
- Remove existing group(s) or individual key(s) from existing group
- To add a new group or add key(s) to an existing group, click the 'Add' button



The following groups of objects are defined on this o

REGISTRY GROUPS COM GROUPS			
+	ير Edit	X Remove	
New Gro Registry			

Add a new group - Select 'New Group' from the 'Add' drop-down, enter a name for the group in the 'Edit property' dialog and click 'OK'.

COMODO Edit property		?	×
Choose Registry Group Name MediaGet			
	ок	CANCEL	

The group will be added to the list.

•

• Add keys to a group - Select the group from the list, click 'the Add' button and choose 'Registry Keys'. The 'Select Registry Keys' dialog will be opened.



Add new item:		
 BCD00000000 DRIVERS HARDWARE SAM SECURITY SOFTWARE COMODO Classes Clients ComodoGroup Dell Intel Macromedia FlashPlayer FlashPlayerActiveX Microsoft Mozilla CODEC 	-	cromedia\FlashPlaye

- Select a key on the left then click the right arrow to add a new key to the group. You can add a key manually by typing its name in the 'Add new item' field then clicking the '+' button.
- To edit an existing group, select the group from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

COMODO Edit property		? ×
Edit Registry Key MediaGet		
	ОК	CANCEL

- Modify the name of the group as required and click 'OK'.
- To remove a group, select the group from the list and click the 'Remove' button.



ed Settings	?	-	×
HIPS Groups			
The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:			
REGISTRY GROUPS COM GROUPS			
+ Add Edit Remove			
Registry Groups			Q
🔲 🔲 🖽 Automatic Startup			
🔲 🖆 🗄 COLIODO Keys			
🔲 🖆 🖽 internet Explorer Keys			
🔲 🖆 🗄 Important Keys			
🔲 🖻 🗄 Temporary Keys			
🖸 🗈 🗄 MediaGet			

• To remove a key from a group, first expand the group by clicking its '+' symbol, select the key to be removed and click the 'Remove' button.

7.4.4.2. COM Groups

- Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Groups' > 'COM Groups'
- COM groups are predefined collections of COM interfaces. COM interfaces are used by Windows to define how objects interact within a single application or between applications.
- COM is used as the basis for Active X and OLE two favorite targets of hackers and malicious programs to launch attacks. It is therefore essential that COM interfaces are protected.
- Comodo Client Security ships with the following, important COM groups: 'Internet Explorer/Windows Shell', 'Windows Management', 'Miscellaneous Classes', 'Pseudo COM Interfaces - Privileges' and 'Pseudo COM Interfaces - Important Ports'.
- Creating a COM group allows you to quickly add it to the 'COM' protection list. See 'Protected COM Interfaces' for more details.

To open the 'COM Groups' section

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen to open the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- Click 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Groups' on the left.



Click the 'COM Groups' tab:

 General Settings Antivirus 	HIPS Groups
✓ Firewall	The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:
- HIPS	REGISTRY GROUPS COM GROUPS
HIPS Settings	
HIPS Rules	🕂 💉 🗱 Add Edit Remove
Rulesets	
Protected Objects	
HIPS Groups	Internet Explorer/Windows Shell
✓ Containment	🗌 🗈 🗄 Windows Management
✓ Data Loss Prevention	🗌 🗈 🗄 Miscellaneous Classes
✓ File Rating	🔲 🖆 🖻 Pseudo COM Interfaces - Privileges
✓ Advanced Protection	📄 🗄 Pseudo COM Interfaces - Important Ports
Website Filtering	🔲 🗈 🗄 Special COM Group

• Click the search icon on the right to find a specific item. You can enter full or partial names.

This interface allows you to:

- Create a new COM Group
- Add COM Component(s) to an existing group
- Edit the names of an Existing COM Group
- Remove existing group(s) or individual COM Component(s) from existing group
- To add a new group or add new COM Component(s) to an existing group, click the 'Add' button



The	following g	roups of	objects are de	fined on this co
RE	GISTRY GROU	PS CC	OM GROUPS	
	+	1	×	
		Edit	Remove	
	New Group	lps		
	COM Class			

Add a new group - Select 'New Group' from the 'Add' drop-down, enter a name for the group in the 'Edit property' dialog and click 'OK'.

COMODO Edit property		?	×
Add new COM Group Special COM Ports			
	ОК	CANCEL	

The group will be added to the list.

.

• Add COM Components to a group - Select the group, click the 'Add' button and choose 'COM Class'. The 'Select COM Interface' dialog will be opened.



dd new item:			-
AccClientDocMgr.AccClientDoc AccClientDocMgr.AccClientDoc AccDictionary.AccDictionary AccDictionary.AccDictionary.1 AccessControlEntry AccessControlList AccServerDocMgr.AccServerDoc AccServerDocMgr.AccServerDoc ADODB.Command ADODB.Connection ADODB.Connection ADODB.Connection.6.0 ADODB.Error ADODB.Error ADODB.ErrorCookup ADODB.ErrorLookup ADODB.ErrorLookup.6.0 ADODB.Parameter ADODB.Parameter.6.0	*	AccessControlList	

You can add new items by selecting them on the left and clicking the right arrow button. To add items manually, type their name in the 'Add new item' field and press the '+' button.

To edit an existing group, select the group from the list and click the 'Edit' button.

COMODO Edit p	roperty		?	×
Edit COM Group				
Special COM Ports				
		ОК	CANCEL	

- Edit the name of the group in the 'Edit Property' dialog and click 'OK'.
- To remove a group, select the group from the list and click the 'Remove' button.

•

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



Advanced Settings ? - □ ×
HIPS Groups
The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:
REGISTRY GROUPS COM GROUPS
+ Add Edit Remove
ects
□ □ □ Internet/Explorer/Windows Shell
🔲 🗈 🗉 Windows Management
🔲 🗈 🗄 Miscellaneous Classes
Pseudo COM Interfaces - Privileges
🔲 🔁 🗄 Pseudo COM Interfaces - Important Ports
Game Ports
🖸 🗈 🗄 Special COM Ports
·
OK CANCEL

• To remove an individual COM component from a group, click + at the left of the group to expand the group, select the item to be removed and click the 'Remove' button.



7.5. Protected Objects

• The protected objects area lets you protect files, folders, registry keys and COM interfaces against access or modification by unauthorized processes.

There are two basic options you can choose:

•

- Read access only Processes can access but not modify the protected item
 - Click 'Advanced Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects'.
 - See 'Protected Objects HIPS' for more help
- Deny all Applications in the container cannot read or modify the protected item
 - Click 'Advanced Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Protected Objects'
 - · See 'Protected Objects Containment' for more help

7.5.1. Protected Objects - HIPS

- This area lets you protect specific files, folders, registry keys and COM interfaces against modification by unauthorized processes.
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen to open the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' on the left:

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆	×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Protected Objects The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:	
- HIPS HIPS Settings HIPS Rules	PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES	
Rulesets Protected Objects HIPS Groups Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering	Path B Startup Folders B Important Files/Folders B Executables B Windows Management B 3rd Party Protocol Drivers B Metro Apps B Metro Apps B COMODO Client Files/Folders	
	OK CANCE	EL V

The interface has the following sub-sections:



- Protected Files Applications and files which are protected from modification by other processes
- Blocked Files Applications and files that are prevented from running
- Registry Keys Registry keys that are protected from modification by other processes
- COM Interfaces COM interfaces that are protected from modification

7.5.1.1. Protected Files

- The protected files screen shows file groups that are protected from access by other programs.
- Files in this area are 'read only'. They can be accessed and read by other programs, but not modified.
- This prevents malicious programs from hijacking important files. It is also useful for safeguarding valuable files (spreadsheets, databases, documents) against accidental or deliberate sabotage.
- A good example of a file that ought to be protected is your 'hosts' file (c:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts). Adding your host file to this area will allow web browsers to use the file as normal, but will block any attempt to modify it.
- You can create exceptions if you want to allow a trusted application to access a protected file. See **Exceptions** for more details about how to allow access to files placed in 'Protected Files'.

Open the 'Protected Files' area

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' on the left.
- Click the 'Protected Files' tab:



Protected Objects
The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:
PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES
+ .≪ ★ .∽ Add Edit Remove Purge
Path Q
🔲 🗄 El Startup Folders
🔲 🗈 🗄 Important Files/Folders
COMODO Client Files/Folders
E Executables
🗐 🗄 🗄 Windows Management
🗐 🗄 3rd Party Protocol Drivers
OK CANCEL

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

- Add Select files/folders that you want to protect
- Edit Modify the path of the file or group
- **Remove** Delete the currently highlighted item
- **Purge** Runs a system check to verify that all the files listed are actually installed on the host machine at the path specified. If not, the item is removed (purged) from the list.

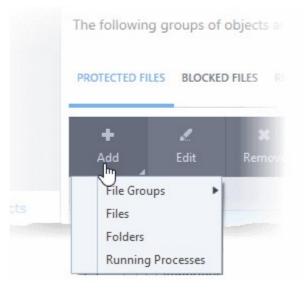
Click the search icon on the right to find a specific item. You can enter full or partial names.

Manually add protected items

You can protect individual files, folders, file groups or processes:

• Click the 'Add' button above the list:





You can add items using any of the following methods:

- Select from File Groups
- Browse to a File
- Browse to a Folder
- Select from currently running processes

Add a File Group

- Choosing 'File Groups' allows you to protect a category of pre-set files or folders.
- For example, selecting 'Executables' allows you to exclude all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl, *\cmd.exe, *.bat, *.cmd.
- Other categories include 'Windows System Applications', 'Windows Updater Applications', 'Start Up Folders' and so on. Each of these provide a fast and convenient way to apply a generic ruleset to important files and folders.
 - Background CCS ships with a set of predefined 'File Groups' which can be viewed in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'. You can also add your own file groups if required.
- Click 'Add' > 'File Groups' and select the type of 'File Group' from the list:



O Protected Objects The following groups of objects are defined on this computer: PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED ED Executables All Applications Windows Updater Applications 1 Windows System Applications Windows Management File Groups 3rd Party Protocol Drivers Files Metro Apps Folders Email Clients **Running Processes File Archivers Temporary Files** 🖆 🗄 COMODO Shared Spaces File Downloaders Suspicious Locations **Containment Folders** Pseudo File Downloaders Web Browsers **Browser Plugins** Startup Folders

The selected group will be added to the 'Protected Files' list:

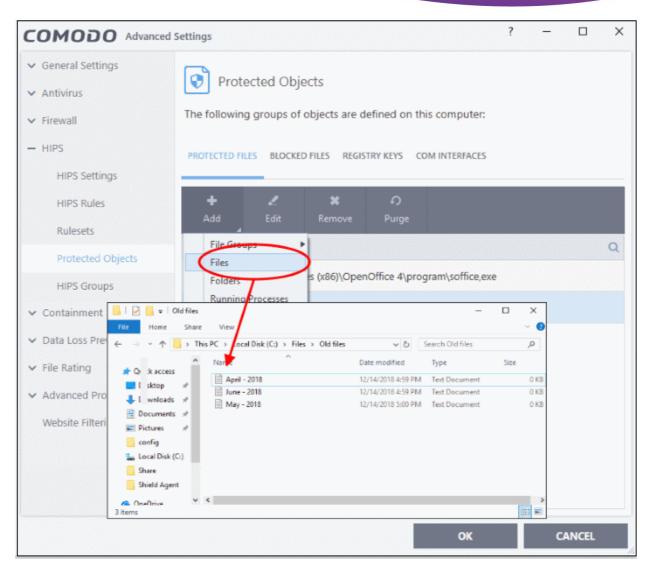


COMODO Advanced	Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS 	Protected Objects The following groups of objects are defined on this computer: PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES				
HIPS Settings HIPS Rules Rulesets	+ 🗶 🗱 🅥 Add Edit Remove Purge				
Protected Objects HIPS Groups	Path C:\Program Files (x86)\OpenOffice 4\program\soffice,exe				Q
 Containment Data Loss Prevention 	□ 🖆 🗄 Web Browsers				
 File Rating Advanced Protection 					
Website Filtering	ок		c	ANCEL	

Add an individual file

• Click 'Add' and choose 'Files' from the options:





• Navigate to the file you want to add to 'Protected Files' in the 'Open' dialog and click 'Open' The file will be added to 'Protected Files'.



COMODO Advanced	Settings ?	-	×
✓ General Settings			
✓ Antivirus	Protected Objects		
✓ Firewall	The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:		
- HIPS	PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES		
HIPS Settings			
HIPS Rules	+ 🗶 🗶 Đ		
Rulesets	Add Edit Remove Purge		
Protected Objects	Path Path		Q
HIPS Groups	C:\Program Files (x86)\OpenOffice 4\program\soffice,exe		
✓ Containment	E Web Browsers		
✓ Data Loss Prevention	C:\Files\Old files\April - 2018.txt		
✓ File Rating			
✓ Advanced Protection			

Add a Drive Partition/Folder

• Click 'Folders' from the 'Add' drop-down.

i ne to				
PROTE	CTED FILES	BLOCKED FILE	S REGIST	
+ Ad		edit R	X emove	Pu
	ile Groups	•		
	olders)	/Folders	
	unn Pro	0Cessee		
Bro	owse For Fo	older		
Bro		older		~
Bro		ocal Disk (C:)		^
Bro	✓ ≝_ L	.ocal Disk (C:) 24x7 CIS Setup		^
Bro	✓ ≝_ L	ocal Disk (C:)		^
Bro	✓ ≝_ L	ocal Disk (C:) 24x7 CIS Setup old man files		
Bro	✓ ≝_ L	ocal Disk (C:) 24x7 CIS Setup old man files Bank Stat PerfLogs Program File	ements s	^
Bro	• • •	ocal Disk (C:) 24x7 CIS Setup old man files Bank Stat PerfLogs Program File Program File	ements s s (x86)	
Bro	✓ ≝_ L > >	ocal Disk (C:) 24x7 CIS Setup old man files Bank Stat PerfLogs Program File	ements s s (x86)	

The 'Browse for Folder' dialog will appear.

• Select the folder/drive and click 'OK'. Repeat the process to add more items.

Add an application from a running process

- Choose 'Running Processes' from the 'Add' drop-down
- This will open a list of processes that are currently running on your computer:

PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INT		
PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM IN		
🕂 🔏 🛪 ଚ		
Add Edit Remove Purge		
File Groups		
Files		
Folders		
Running Profitesses		
Kulling Promoses		
COMODO Browse for Processes	?	>
Application	PID	
	PID 7572	,
✓	7572	
 Imspaint.exe Imspaint.exe Imspaint.exe 	7572 1404	
✓	7572	
 Image: Schedhlp.exe Image: Schedhlp.exe Image: Schedhlp.exe Image: Schedhlp.exe 	7572 1404 6364	•
 Image: Schedhlp.exe Image:	7572 1404 6364 6224	•
 Image: Schedhlp.exe Image:	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304	
 Image: Schedhlp.exe Image:	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532	
 Image: Second Second	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220	
 Image: Schedhlp.exe Image:	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560	
 Image: Second Second	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560 624	
 Image: Second Second	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560 624 760	
 Image: Second Second	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560 624 760 968	
 Image: Second Second	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560 624 760 968 2896	
 Image: Specific Constraint of the system of the s	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560 624 760 968 2896 4132	
 Schedhlp.exe Schedhlp.exe OneDrive.exe OneDrive.exe Openvpn-gui.exe firefox.exe firefox.exe DAP.exe Csrss.exe csrss.exe fontdrvhost.exe fontdrvhost.exe Maxthon.exe Maxthon.exe erl.exe 	7572 1404 6364 6224 8304 7532 8220 560 624 760 968 2896 4132 4260	

- Select the process you want to protect
- Click 'OK'

The parent application will be added to the 'Protected Files' list:

COMODO Advanced Se	ttings	? –	
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Protected Objects The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:		
HIPS HIPS Settings HIPS Rules Rulesets	PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES + . . . Add Edit Remove Purge	PROTECTED DATA	
Protected Objects HIPS Groups Containment	□ Path □ C:\Program Files (x86)\OpenOffice 4\program\soffice,exe □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ ⊡ □ □ <	2	Q
 Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection 	 C:\Files\Old files\April - 2018.txt C:\Program Files (x86)\Mozilla Firefox\firefox.exe 	>	
Website Filtering			
	ок	CAN	ICEL

• Repeat the process to add more files. The items added to the 'Protected Files' will be protected from access by other programs.

To edit an item in the Protected Files list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit Property' dialog will appear.

COMODO Edit property	?	×
Edit File Path C:\Program Files (x86)\DrivingSpeed2\DrivingSpeed.exe		
ОК	CANCEL	

• Edit the file path, if you have relocated the file and click 'OK'

To delete an item from Protected Files list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Remove' button

The selected item will be deleted from the protected files list. CCS will not generate alerts, if the file or program is subjected to unauthorized access.

Exceptions

Users can selectively allow another application (or file group) to modify a protected file by affording the appropriate 'Access Right' in 'Active HIPS Rules' interface.

A simple example would be the imaginary file 'April - 2018.odt'. You would want the 'Open Office Writer' program to be able to modify this file as you are working on it, but you would not want it to be accessed by a potentially malicious program. You would first **add** the document to the 'Protected Files' area. Once added to 'Protected Files', you would go into 'Active HIPS Rules' and create an exception for 'swriter.exe' so that it alone could modify 'June - 2016.odt'.

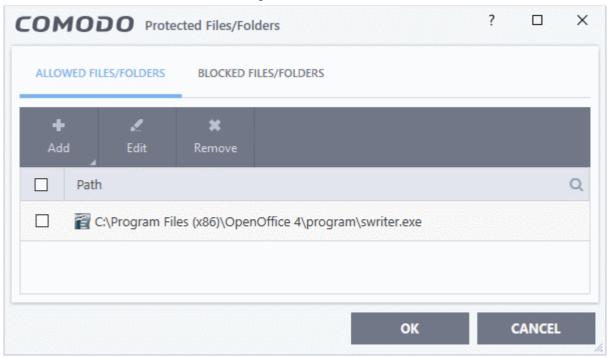
- First add 'April 2017.odt' to 'Protected Files'
- Then go to the 'HIPS Rules' interface and add it to the list of applications.
- Click the 'Edit' button after selecting it.
- In the 'HIPS Rule' interface, select 'Use a Custom Ruleset'.

COMODO Advanced Settings	? —		×
✓ General Settings			
✓ Antivirus			
Firewall The following HIPS rules are active on this computer:			
- HIPS + 🗶 🗶 t I	Ð		
HIPS Settings Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down I	Purge		
HIPS Rules Application Q Treat a	35		Q
Rulesets	d Applicatio	n	
Protected Objects 🔄 🥘 C:\Program Files\Mozilla Firefox\firefox.exe Custon	n ruleset		
COMODO HIPS Rule ?	o ×		
Name: C:\old mane files\Fedaral Bank Statements\April-2017.odt	Browse 🔻		
Use Ruleset: Allowed App	lication v		
	nication +		
Use a Custom Ruleset Cop	py from 🔻		
ACCESS RIGHTS PROTECTION SETTINGS			
Access Name Action Exclusions	*		
Window messages Ask Modify (0\0)			
Protected COM interfaces Ask Modify (0\0)			
Image: wide wide wide wide wide wide wide wide	E		
Protected files/folders <u>Ask</u> <u>Modify (0\0)</u>			
DNS client service Ask			
ОК СА	NCEL		

• Under the 'Access Rights' section, click the link 'Modify' beside the entry 'Protected Files/Folders'. The 'Protected Files/Folders' interface will appear.



Under the 'Allowed Files/Folders' section, click 'Add' > 'Files' and add swriter.exe as exceptions to the 'Ask' or 'Block' rule in the 'Access Rights'.



Another example of where protected files should be given selective access is the Windows system directory at 'c:\windows\system32'. Files in this folder should be off-limits to modification by anything except certain, Trusted, applications like Windows Updater Applications. In this case, you would add the directory c:\windows\system32* to the 'Protected Files area (* = all files in this directory). Next go to 'HIPS Rules', locate the file group 'Windows Updater Applications' in the list and follow the same process outlined above to create an exception for that group of executables.

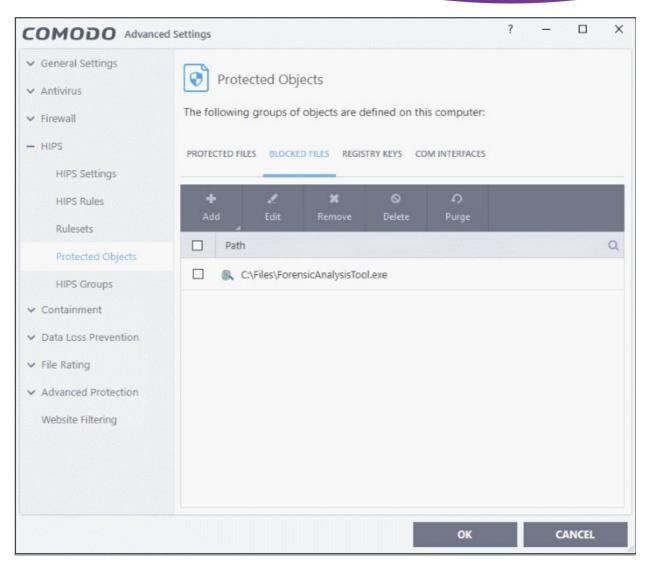
7.5.1.2. Blocked Files

- CCS allows you to lock-down files and folders by denying all access rights to them from other processes or users effectively cutting them off from the rest of your system.
- If the file you block is an executable, then neither you nor anything else is able to run that program.
- Unlike files in 'Protected Files', users cannot selectively allow access to a blocked file.

Open the blocked files section

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' on the left.
- Click the 'Blocked Files' tab:





The buttons at the top provide the following options:

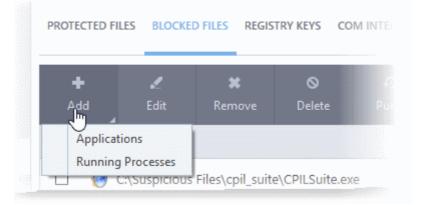
- Add Select files/folders that you want to block
- Edit Modify the path of the file or group
- Remove Releases the currently highlighted file from the blocked files list.
- Delete Deletes the highlighted file from your computer
- **Purge** Runs a system check to verify that all the files listed are actually installed on the host machine at the path specified. If not, the item is removed (purged) from the list.

Click the search icon on the right to find a specific item. You can enter full or partial names.

Manually add an item to the block list

• Click the 'Add' button:



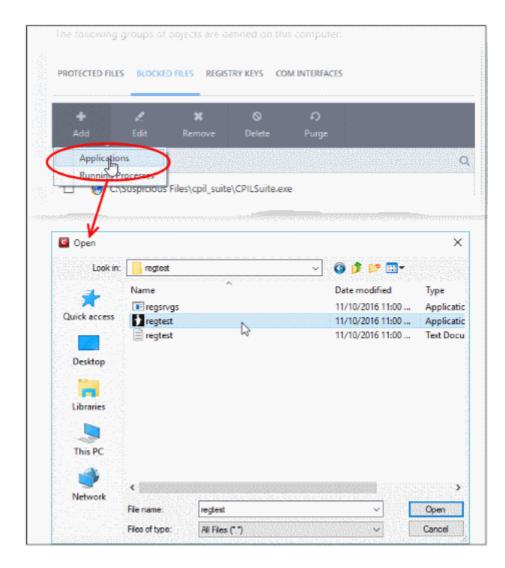


You can add the files by following methods:

- Select a file
- Select a currently running process

Add a File

- Choose 'Applications' from the 'Add' drop-down.
- Navigate to the file you want to add and click 'Open'.





The file will be added to 'Blocked Files' list.

COMODO Advanced	Settings					?	-		×
✓ General Settings									
✓ Antivirus	Pro Pro	tected Obje	ects						
✓ Firewall	The follow	ng groups of	objects are d	lefined on th	s computer:				
- HIPS	PROTECTED	FILES BLOCKE	D FILES REGIS	STRY KEYS CO	M INTERFACES				
HIPS Settings									_
HIPS Rules	+	L	×	0	ę				
Rulesets	Add	Edit 4	Remove	Delete	Purge				
Protected Objects	Pa	th							Q
HIPS Groups	E 1	D:\Suspicious	files\Master_0	Of_The_Voice-	CRACKED-ARG	GENTINA	-CRACK	1.exe	
✓ Containment		C:\Suspiciou	is Files\regte	est\regtest.e	xe				
✓ Data Loss Prevention									

• Repeat the process to add more files.

Add a running process

Choose 'Running Processes' from the 'Add' drop-down

This will open a list of processes that are currently running on your computer:

- Select the process you want to protect
- Click 'OK'

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



🕂 💉 😒 Add Edit Remove Delete	O Purge		
Applications Running Processes			
Files\cpil_suite\CPILSuite.exe	- na ararana ana ana ana ana		L epipip
COMODO Browse for Processes		?	;
Application		PID	
svchostexe		4504	1
🔻 📊 explorer.exe		2528	
🔻 📵 firefox.exe		3124	
Image: plugin-container.exe		3680	
A 🛷 DrivingSpeed.exe		2540	
▲ 🗯 jumper.exe		2176	
4 🚳 vkise.exe		1108	
▼ System		4	
4 📧 smss.exe		288	
4 💽 csrss.exe		448	
▼ 📰 winlogon.exe		484	
 fontdrvhost.exe 		4492	1
4 📧 dwm.exe		732	
4 💽 csrss.exe		380	
I svchost.exe		964	
4 🥘 notepad.exe		1440	
4 🝊 OneDrive.exe		4744	

The parent application will be added to the 'Protected Files' list:



COMODO Advanced	Settings	? – 🗆	×
✓ General Settings			
✓ Antivirus	Protected Objects		
✓ Firewall	The following groups of objects are defined on this computer:		
- HIPS	PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES		
HIPS Settings			
HIPS Rules	+ 🗶 🗰 🛇 🔿		
Rulesets	Add Edit Remove Delete Purge		
Protected Objects	Path Path		Q
HIPS Groups	D:\Suspicious files\Master_Of_The_Voice-CRACKED-AR	GENTINA-CRACK1.exe	
✓ Containment	D:\Suspicious files\ProAgent.exe		
✓ Data Loss Prevention	C:\Suspicious Files\Jumper\Jumper\jumper.exe		
✓ File Rating ^{Protection}			
Website Filtering			6

• Repeat the process to add more files.

To edit an item in the Blocked Files list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit Property' dialog will appear.

COMODO Edit property		?	×
Edit File Path C:\Suspicious Files\Jumper\Jumper\jump	er.exe		
	ОК	CANCEL	

• Edit the file path, if you have relocated the file and click 'OK'

To release an item from Blocked Files list

•

Select the item from the list and click the 'Remove' button

The selected item will be removed from the 'Blocked Files' list. CCS will not block the application or file from execution or opening then onwards.

To permanently delete a blocked file from your system

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Delete' button

The selected item will be deleted from your computer immediately.

Warning: Deleting a file from from the 'Blocked Files' interface permanently deletes the file from your system, rendering it inaccessible in future and it cannot be undone. Ensure that you have selected the correct file to be deleted before clicking 'Delete'.

7.5.1.3. Protected Registry Keys

The 'Registry Keys' area lets you define system critical registry keys which should protected against modification. Irreversible damage can be caused to your system if important registry keys are corrupted or modified.

Open the 'Registry Keys' section

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' on the left.
- Click the 'Registry Keys' tab:

COMODO Advanced Settings ? - General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS HIPS Settings HIPS Rules Rulesets Protected Objects Import Rules Rulesets Import Rules HIPS Groups		×
✓ Antivirus✓ Firewall		
HIPS Settings HIPS Rules	+ <u>*</u> *	
Protected Objects HIPS Groups Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating	Automatic Startup	Q
 Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	OK CANCEL	

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

- Add Select registry groups or individual keys that you want to protect
- Edit Modify the path of the key or key group
- Remove Delete the currently highlighted item
- Click the magnifying glass on the right to search for a specific item.

Manually add individual keys or registry groups

Click the 'Add' button

You can add keys individually or by registry group:

• Add Registry Groups - Adding a registry group allows you to batch select and import groups of important registry keys. Comodo Client Security provides the following, pre-defined groups - 'Automatic Startup' (keys), 'Comodo Keys', 'Internet Explorer Keys', 'Important Keys' and 'Temporary Keys'.



You can also create custom registry groups containing keys you wish to protect.

 To add a new group, click the 'Add' button > 'Registry Groups' and select the predefined group from the list and click 'OK'

		ected Obje g groups of		lefined on this comput	ter:	
	PROTECTED FI	LES BLOCKE	D FILES REGIS	TRY KEYS COM INTERFA	CES	
	+ Add	ير Edit	X Remove			
<u>1</u>	Registry	Groups 🕨	Automatic	Startup		Q
	Registry	Entries	COMODO Internet Exp Important M Temporary	olorer Keys Keys		

See Registry Groups in the HIPS Groups section if you want to read more on this interface.

- Add individual Registry Keys -
 - Click the 'Add' button and then select 'Registry Entries'
 - Choose a key on the left then click the right arrow to add it to the protected list:



dd new item:			
 HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT HKEY_CURRENT_USER HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE BCD0000000 HARDWARE SAM SECURITY SOFTWARE COMODO CA CIS Cam Data DbgTrace Installer Options VolatileData Classes 	HKI	LM\SOFTWARE\C	OMODO\CIS*

• Alternatively, you can type the key name in the field at the top then click '+'.

Edit an item in the Registry Protection list

• Select the key from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit Property' dialog will appear.

COMODO Edit property		? ×
Edit File Path HKLM\SOFTWARE\COMODO\CIS*		
	ОК	CANCEL

• Edit the key path, if you have relocated the key and click 'OK'.

Note: The 'Registry Groups' cannot be edited from this interface. You can edit only from **Registry Groups** in **HIPS Groups** section.

To delete an item from Registry Protection list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Remove' button.

The selected item will be deleted from the 'Registry Keys' protection list. CCS will not generate alerts, if the key or the group is modified by other programs.



7.5.1.4. Protected COM interfaces

- The Component Object Model (COM) is Microsoft's object-oriented programming model. It defines how objects interact within a single application, or between applications.
- COM is used as the basis for Active X and OLE two favorite targets of hackers and malware for launching attacks on your computer.
- Comodo Client Security automatically protects COM interfaces against modification and manipulation by malicious processes.
- 'Protected Objects' > 'COM Interfaces' lets you view, add and edit these protected interfaces.
 - Background CCS ships with a set of COM groups category based collections of COM interface components.
 - Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS Groups' > 'COM Groups' if you want to view these groups. You can create custom groups if required. See COM Groups for the help page on this area.

Open the protected COM interfaces area

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' on the left.
- Click the 'COM Interfaces' tab:

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆	×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS 	Protected Objects The following groups of objects are defined on this computer: PROTECTED FILES BLOCKED FILES REGISTRY KEYS COM INTERFACES	
HIPS Settings HIPS Rules Rulesets	+ X Add Edit Remove	
 Protected Objects HIPS Groups Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Interfaces Image: Internet Explorer/Windows Shell Image: Windows Management Image: Ima	Q
	OK CANCEL	

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

• Add - Select COM groups or individual components that you want to protect



- Edit Edit the COM Class.
- Remove Deletes the currently highlighted COM group or COM component.

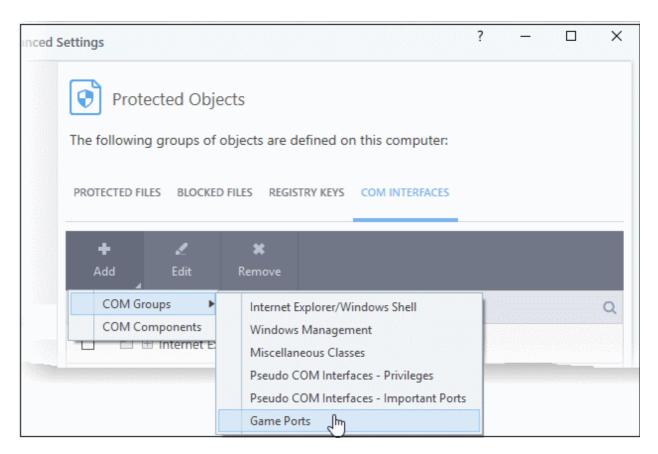
You can search for a specific interface by clicking the magnifying glass icon at the far right of the column header.

Manually add a COM group or individual component

• Click the 'Add' button

You can add items as follows:

- Add COM Groups Batch select and import predefined groups of important COM components.
 - Click 'Add' > 'COM Groups'
 - Select the group you want to add
 - Click 'OK'



For explanations on editing existing 'COM Groups' and creating new groups, see COM Groups.

- Add individual components
 - Click the 'Add' button then 'COM Components'.
 - Select a component on the left
 - Click the right arrow to add it to the protected list:



dd new item:				
AccClientDocMgr.AccClientDoc AccClientDocMgr.AccClientDoc AccDictionary.AccDictionary AccDictionary.AccDictionary.1 AccessControlEntry AccessControlList AccServerDocMgr.AccServerDoc ACCServerDocMgr.AccServerDoc ADODB.Command ADODB.Command.6.0 ADODB.Connection ADODB.Connection.6.0 ADODB.Connection.6.0 ADODB.Error ADODB.Error ADODB.ErrorLookup ADODB.ErrorLookup ADODB.Parameter ADODB.Parameter.6.0	*		AccessControlList	

Click 'OK' to add the items to the list

Edit an item in the COM Interfaces protection list

• Select the COM component from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit Property' dialog will appear.

COMODO Edit property		? ×
Edit File Path AccessControlList		
	ок	CANCEL

• Edit the COM Class file path and click 'OK'

Note: The COM Groups cannot be edited from this interface. You can edit only from **COM Groups** in **HIPS Groups** section.

To delete an item from COM Interfaces protection list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Remove' button.

The selected item will be deleted from the 'COM Interfaces' protection list. CCS will not generate alerts, if the COM component or the group is modified by other programs or processes.



7.5.2. Protected Objects - Containment

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Protected Objects'
- Items that you add to this area cannot be read or modified by applications running in the container.
- Examples items you can add are files, folders and registry keys.
- This prevents unknown/untrusted applications from causing damage to, or stealing data from, important items

COMODO Advanced	I Settings	? – 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment 	Protected Objects The following objects are protected from applic PROTECTED DATA PROTECTED KEYS	cations running in the container:
Containment Settings Auto-Containment	+ X X Add Edit Remove	_ ^
Protected Objects Virtual Desktop	Path	Q "
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	- *\maxthon.exe	
 Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	- *\dragon.exe - *\icedragon.exe	
	*\chromiumsecure.exe	~
		OK CANCEL

Click the following links for more details:

- Protected Files and Folders
- Protected Keys

7.5.2.1. Protected Files and Folders

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Protected Objects' > 'Protected Data'
- Items in 'Protected Data' cannot be seen, accessed or modified by applications running in the container.
- This fortifies files containing sensitive data from unrecognized and potentially malicious programs.

Protected Files versus Protected Data

Items in 'Protected Files' ('Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' > 'Protected Files') can be read by any
program, but not modified by them. This contrasts to items in 'Protected Data', which are totally hidden to
contained programs.



- If you want a file/folder to be read by other programs, but protected from modification, then add it to 'Protected Files' list.
- If you want to totally conceal an item from contained programs, but allow read/write access to trusted programs, then add it to 'Protected Data'.
- You can add the same item to both areas. This means trusted programs have read-only access to the file, and contained programs have no access rights.

Add and manage protected data

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'Containment' > 'Protected Objects'
- Select the 'Protected Data' tab

 General Settings Antivirus 	Protected Objects	
✓ Firewall	The following objects are protected from applications running	in the container:
✓ HIPS	PROTECTED DATA PROTECTED KEYS	
- Containment		
Containment Settings	+ 🧷 🗙	
Auto-Containment	Add Edit Remove	
Protected Objects	Path	Q
Virtual Desktop	🔲 🗈 🗄 Open Office	
 Data Loss Prevention 	🔲 🗈 🖽 Important Files/Folders	
 File Rating 		
 Advanced Protection 		
Website Filtering		

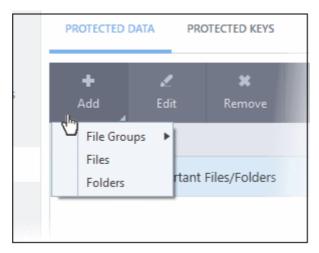
The buttons at the top provide the following options:

- Add Select files/folders that you want to protect
- Edit Modify the path of the file or group.
- Remove Delete the currently highlighted item
- · Click the search icon at the far right to search for a specific item

Manually add a file, folder or file group

Click the 'Add' button





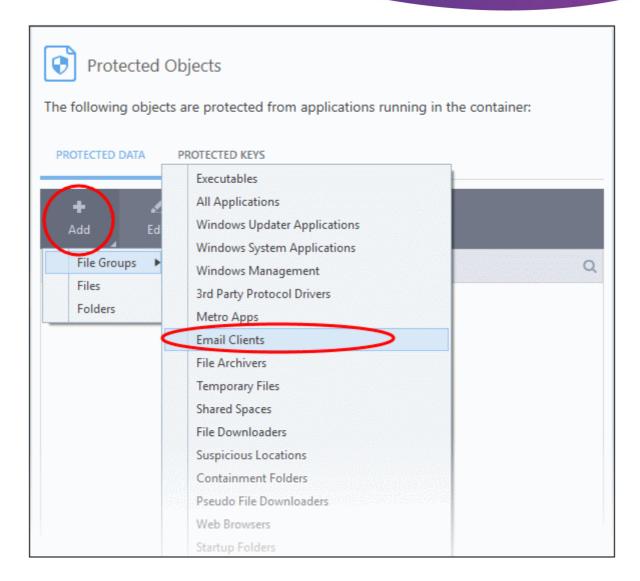
You can add items using any of the following methods:

- Select from File Groups
- Browse to a File
- Browse to a Folder

Add a File Group

- Choose 'File Groups' from the 'Add' drop-down and select a file group
- CCS ships with a set of predefined 'File Groups' which can be viewed in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'. You can also add your own file groups if required.
- For example, selecting 'Executables' allows you to exclude all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl, *\cmd.exe, *.bat, *.cmd.
- Other categories include 'Windows System Applications', 'Windows Updater Applications', 'Start Up Folders' and so on. Each of these provide a fast and convenient way to apply a generic ruleset to important files and folders.





The selected group will be added to the 'Protected Files' list:

Add an Individual File

• Click 'Add' and choose 'Files' from the options:

сомодо	Advanced S	ettings			? – 🗆	
 General Setting Antivirus 	gs	Protected Obje		tions running	in the container;	
 Firewall HIPS 			TECTED KEYS	5		
- Containment						
Containmer	t Settings	🕂 🦨	X Remove			
Auto-Conta	inment	File Groups				C
Protected C	bjects	Files Folders	'S			
Virtual Desk	top					
🗧 Open	¥			×		
Look in:	11-10-18		✓ G Ø ▷ □•			
Quick access Desktop Libraries	Name brutus.exe iamangel.e jupiter.exe moon.exe trustme.exe	exe	Date modified 10/11/2018 3:32 PM 10/11/2018 3:30 PM 10/11/2018 3:35 PM 10/11/2018 3:35 PM 10/11/2018 3:29 PM	Type Applicatic Applicatic Applicatic Applicatic		
This PC	۲			>	CANCEL	
TETTOR	File name:	1	<u> </u>	Open		
	Files of type:	All Files (*.*)	~	Cancel		

• Navigate to the file you want to add to 'Protected Files' in the 'Open' dialog and click 'Open' The file will be added to 'Protected Files'.

Add a Drive Partition / Folder

• Click 'Folders' from the 'Add' drop-down.



+ Add	🖌 🗱 Edit Remove	
File Grou Files Folders	ups Clients	
D Prover	e ForFolder	×
Browse		^
DIOWS	Dome SWG	^
	N	^
	Dome SWG	

The 'Browse for Folder' dialog will appear.

• Select the folder/drive and click 'OK'. Repeat the process to add more items. The items added to the 'Protected Files' will be protected from programs that are contained.

Edit an item in the Protected Files list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit Property' dialog will appear.

COMODO Edit property		? ×
Edit File Path E:\CCAV\11-10-18\jupiter.exe		
	ОК	CANCEL

• Update as required and click 'OK'

Delete an item from Protected Files list

- Select the item from the list and click the 'Remove' button
- The selected item will be deleted from the protected files list.



7.5.2.2. Protected Keys

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Protected Objects' > 'Protected Keys'
- Registry items in 'Protected Keys' cannot be seen, accessed or modified by applications running in the container.
- Adding important registry keys to this area will protect them from unknown and potentially malicious programs.

Open the 'Protected Keys' section

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'Containment' > 'Protected Objects'
- Select the 'Protected Keys' tab

COMODO Advanced	Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS 	Protected Objects The following objects are protected from applications ru PROTECTED DATA PROTECTED KEYS	nning in the	container	:	
 Containment Containment Settings Auto-Containment Protected Objects Virtual Desktop Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Add Edit Keys Permove Remove				Q
		ок	c,	ANCEL	

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

- Add Select registry groups or individual keys that you want to protect
- Edit Modify the path of a key or key group
- Remove Delete the currently highlighted item
- · Click the search icon at the far-right to search for a specific item

Manually add individual keys or registry groups

• Click the 'Add' button

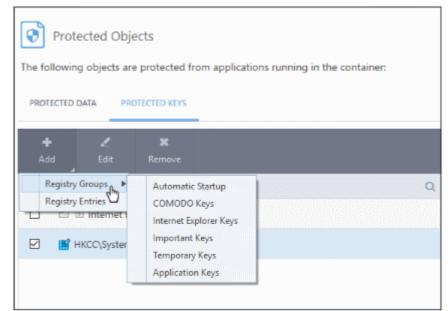


1	1	×	
	Edit	Remove	
inter Cro			-
		plorer Kevs	
	gistry Entr	gistry Groups 🕨	gistry Groups

- Registry Groups Select a pre-defined group of important registry keys. CCS ships with the following, predefined groups:
 - Automatic Startup keys
 - Comodo Keys
 - Internet Explorer Keys
 - Important Keys
 - Temporary Keys

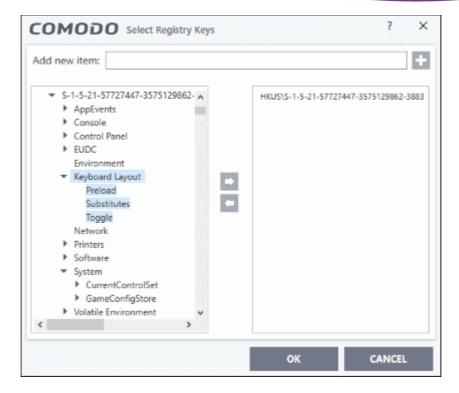
You can also create custom groups of the keys you want to protect. See **Registry Groups** in **HIPS Groups** if you want help on this.

• Click the 'Add' button > 'Registry Groups' > Select a key group from the list > Click 'OK'



- Registry Entries Add individual keys to the protected list
 - Click 'Add' > 'Registry Entries'
 - Select the keys you want to protect in the left-pane
 - Click the right-arrow to move them to the protected list:





- Alternatively, you can type the key name in the field at the top then click the '+' button
- Click OK. All items in the right pane will be added to the protected keys list

Edit an item in the list

• Select the key from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit Property' dialog will appear.

COMODO Edit property		? ×
Edit File Path HKCC\System*		
	ок	CANCEL

Update as required and click 'OK'

Note: Click 'Settings' > 'HIPS' > 'HIPS groups' > 'Registry Groups' to edit registry groups. See **Registry Groups** if you need more help.

Delete an item from Registry Protection list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Remove' button.

The selected item will be deleted from the protected register list.

7.6. Data Loss Prevention

Click 'Settings' > 'Data loss prevention'

 The data loss prevention (DLP) section lets you identify and control the movement of sensitive data from your device.



There are three components:

DLP Monitoring Rules

- · Rules which allow or block files copied to USB and other storage devices.
- Monitoring rules are created by your Endpoint Manager administrator and added to the EM profile applied to your device. You can view the monitoring rules active on your device from the CCS interface.

DLP Discovery Rules

- Rules which scan your computer for files which contain sensitive information. For example, The rules can search for credit card numbers, social security numbers, bank routing numbers etc.
- Discovery rules are created by your Endpoint Manager administrator and added to the EM profile applied to your device. You can view the rules active on your device from the CCS interface.
 - Click 'Tasks' > 'DLP Tasks' > 'Data Loss Prevention Scan' to run DLP scans to identify the files containing sensitive information defined in the rules
 - See Run Data Loss Prevention Scans for help to run scans and view results

DLP Keyword Groups

- A keyword group is a list of search-terms. For example, the 'Names' group is a list of common first names and surnames.
- Keyword groups are used in the construction of DLP discovery rules.
- The 'Names' group must be populated in order for many of the patterns in a discovery rule to work.
- Keyword groups are created by your Endpoint Manager administrator at the portal. You can view the keywords added to the groups from the CCS interface.

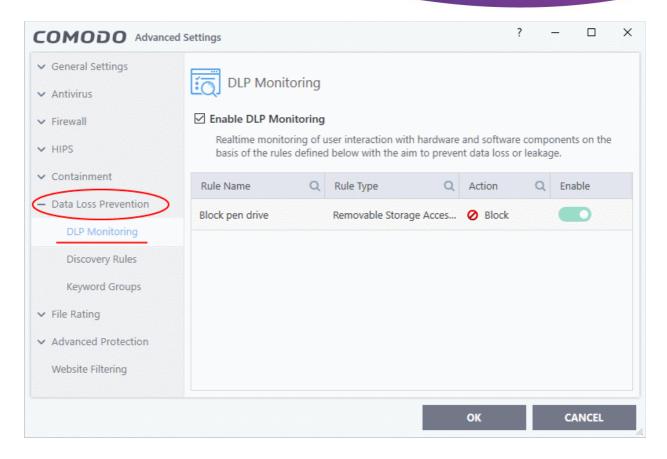
7.6.1. DLP Monitoring Rules

Click 'Settings' > 'Data Loss Prevention' > 'DLP Monitoring'

- DLP monitoring rules allow or block copying files to external storage devices.
- Monitoring rules are configured by your Endpoint Manager admin. Rules are applied to your device by adding them to the EM profile active on your device.
- CCS continuously monitors attempted data transfers to devices like USB drives and allows/blocks the transfer as per the rules in real time. The the following storage devices are covered:
 - USB Data Devices like pen drives
 - External HDDs /SSDs
 - USB connected external optical disk drives (CD/DVD)
 - SD, Micro SD Cards, SDXC-SDHC cards
 - eSata removable drives
 - FireWire connected devices
 - Devices using MTP protocol
- You can view the log details in CCS Logs.
 - Click 'Logs' on the top and select 'Data Loss Prevention Events' in the 'Show' drop-down'
 - See Data Loss Prevention Event Logs to read more about DLP logs
- The 'DLP Monitoring' interface shows you the monitoring rules active on your device.

View DLP monitoring rules

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'Data Loss Prevention' > 'DLP Monitoring'



See the online help page at https://help.comodo.com/topic-399-1-786-10262-Create-DLP-Monitoring-Rules-and-Add-Them-to-Profiles.html to read more about configuring monitoring rules in Endpoint Manager portal.

7.6.2. DLP Discovery Rules

Click 'Settings' > 'Data Loss Prevention' > 'Discovery Rules':

- Discovery rules are used to identify files containing sensitive information like credit card numbers, social security numbers, bank account numbers and so on.
- Each rule defines the areas to scan, the type of information to search for, and the action to take on discovered files.
- You can run DLP scans to discover the files containing sensitive information as defined in the rules
 - Click 'Tasks' > 'DLP Tasks' > 'Data Loss Prevention Scan' to run a scan
 - See **Run Data Loss Prevention Scans** for help to run DLP discovery scans and view the files identified by the scans.
- Discovery rules are configured by your Endpoint Manager admin. Rules are applied to your device by adding them to the EM profile active on your device.
- The 'Discovery Rules' interface shows the discovery rules active on your device.

View discovery rules

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'Data Loss Prevention' > 'Discovery Rules'

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

COMODO Advance	ed Settings		?	- 🗆 X
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	The fo	Discovery Rules llowing Data Loss Prevention discovery rul	es are defined on this co	mputer:
✓ HIPS		Rule Name	۹	Enable
✓ Containment		Herald Files		
- Data Loss Prevention		Alice Desktop Files		
DLP Monitoring		Files with CC numbers		
Discovery Rules				
Keyword Groups				
✓ File Rating				
 Advanced Protection 				
Website Filtering				
		I	ок	CANCEL

 See the online help page at https://help.comodo.com/topic-399-1-786-15419-Create-DLP-Discovery-Rules-and-Add-them-to-Profiles.html to read more about configuring discovery rules in Endpoint Manager portal.

7.6.3. DLP Keyword Groups

Click 'Settings' > 'Data Loss Prevention' > 'Keyword Groups'

- Keyword groups are used by DLP rules to identify sensitive data. They are a list of specific items which the scan searches for. For example, the 'Names' group is a list of common first names and surnames.
- Keyword groups are used in combination with an 'information format' to form a 'pattern'. An information format is the notation used by the type of data you want to find. For example, the information format of an SSN is a nine digit number in a 3-2-4 formation, like '123-45-6789'.
- The information formats are used in discovery rules to specify the type of sensitive information to be identified by a rule.
- Keyword groups are configured by your Endpoint Manager admin.
- The 'Keyword Groups' shows the available keyword groups and entries in each group.

View keyword groups

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'Data Loss Prevention' > 'Keyword Groups'

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Keyword Groups The following Data Loss Prevention keywords are defined on this computer:
✓ HIPS	Keyword Groups Q
✓ Containment	El Network terms
 Data Loss Prevention DLP Monitoring Discovery Rules Keyword Groups File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	□ ■ Names
	OK CANCEL

• Click the '+' icon to expand a group and view its entries:

Keyword Groups	Q ^
🖾 🗄 Network terms	
Names	
John	
— Bob	
— Joe	
- Alice	
— Hercules Popular	
- RodeoHercules	
— Raymond	
	~

• See the online help page at https://help.comodo.com/topic-399-1-786-15423-View-and-Manage-

Keyword-Groups.html to read more about configuring keyword groups in Endpoint Manager portal.

7.7. Containment Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' to open this interface.
- If CCS encounters a file that has a trust status of 'Unknown' then you have the option to automatically run that file in the container.
- The container is a secure, virtual environment where unknown files can run, but cannot affect the rest of your computer.
 - Files in the container are isolated from other processes, write to a virtual file system and registry, and cannot access your user data.
- Shared Space Because applications in the container cannot save files to your local file system, CCS creates a special folder at 'C:\ProgramData\Shared Space' for you to save files from the container. You can access files in this folder from your local desktop.
- If required, you can also allow contained applications save files to external storage devices. For example, to USB sticks and external storage drives.
- The containment settings area lets you configure all aspects of the container:

COMODO Advanced	I Settings ? - 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Containment Settings Shared Space(s) are the locations that contained applications and other applications share, i.e. reading or writing to these locations are not virtualized.
✓ HIPS— Containment	 Do not virtualize access to the specified files/folders Do not virtualize access to the specified registry keys/values
Containment Settings	Do not virtualize access to the removable media
Auto-Containment	Do not restrict access to COM/DCOM for these applications
Protected Objects	Advanced
Virtual Desktop	Enable automatic startup for services installed in the container
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Show highlight frame for contained applications
✓ File Rating	Detect programs which require elevated privileges e.g. installers or updaters
✓ Advanced Protection	Do not show privilege elevation alerts Run inside the Container 🔻
Website Filtering	
	OK CANCEL

See the following sections for more help:

- Containment Settings Configure exceptions to virtualization and other general settings
- Auto-Containment Rules Create and manage rules which tell CCS how to handle unknown files.



- **Protected Objects Containment** Define files, folders and registry keys which cannot be accessed by applications running in the container.
- Virtual Desktop Settings Configure options related to the Virtual Desktop application.
- Containment An Overview Background information about the containment process
- Unknown Files: The Scanning Processes Background information on how CCS determines the reputation of a file.

Note: The containment feature is not supported on the following platforms:

- Windows XP 64 bit
- Windows Server 2003 64 bit

7.7.1. Containment Settings

• Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Containment Settings'.

The settings area lets you configure how proactive the auto-containment feature should be, and which types of files it should check.

Configure containment settings

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Containment' > 'Containment Settings'

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? - □ ×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS 	Containment Settings Shared Space(s) are the locations that contained applications and other applications share, i.e. reading or writing to these locations are not virtualized.
- Containment	Do not virtualize access to the specified registry keys/values
Containment Settings	Do not virtualize access to the removable media
Auto-Containment	Do not restrict access to COM/DCOM for these applications
Protected Objects	Advanced
Virtual Desktop	Enable automatic startup for services installed in the container
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Show highlight frame for contained applications
✓ File Rating	Detect programs which require elevated privileges e.g. installers or updaters
 Advanced Protection 	Do not show privilege elevation alerts Run inside the Container 💌
Website Filtering	
	OK CANCEL

• By default, contained applications can access folders, files and registry keys on your local system, but cannot make changes to them.



- Contained apps are also prevented from accessing Component Object Model (COM) and Distributed
 Component Object Model (DCOM) components on your computer
- The settings screen lets you create exceptions to these policies if required.
- You can also allow contained applications to access removable storage like USB sticks and external hard disk drives.

Do not virtualize access to the specified files/folders - Specify files/folders on the host computer that contained applications are allowed to write to. By default, contained applications write to a virtual file system, and cannot access files/folders on the host system.

- Select the option then click 'the specified files/folders' link.
- The 'Manage Exclusions' dialog shows files and folders that can be modified by contained applications. By default, 'Shared Space' is the only folder they can write to:

сомо	COMODO Manage Exclusions			?		×	
+ Add	Edit	X Remove	€ Purge				
Path	ı						Q
	🗄 Shared Spa	aces					
				OK	(CANCEL	

Define an exception:

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'Manage Exclusions' dialog:





- File Groups Choose a category of files or folders to which access should be granted. For example, select 'Executables' to create an exception for all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl, *\cmd.exe *.bat, *.cmd. See 'File Groups', for more details on file groups.
- · Files Pick specific files or applications that contained applications can access
- **Folders** Specify folders that can be accessed by contained applications. Access is granted to all files in the folder.
- Running Processes Choose a process currently running on your computer. The parent
 application of the process is added to the exclusions.
- Edit Select an item and click 'Edit' to change the target file or folder
- **Remove** Select an item and click 'Remove' to delete an exception
- Purge Checks that all files and folders covered in exceptions are still present on your computer. Purge
 automatically removes any items it can no longer locate.
- Click 'OK' to implement your settings

Do not virtualize access to the specified registry keys/values - Specify registry keys on the host computer that contained applications are allowed to write to. By default, contained applications write to a virtual registry, and cannot access the real registry on the host system.

- Select the option then click 'the specified registry keys/values' link.
- The 'Manage Exclusions' dialog shows keys which you have allowed contained applications to access:

COMODO Advanced	Settings	? —
✓ General Settings	c [₩] λ a literation is a literation of the liter	
✓ Antivirus	Containment Settings	
✓ Firewall	Shared Space(s) are the locations that contained applications a i.e. reading or writing to these locations are not virtualized.	and other applic
✓ HIPS	Do not virtualize access to the specified files/folders	
- Containment	Do not virtualize access to the specified registry keys/value	
Containment Settings	Advanced	
Auto-Containment	DO Manage Exclusions ?	×
+ Add	Edit Remove	
Excl	usions O	Ł
	OK CANCEL	

Add a registry key exception:

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'Manage Exclusions' dialog.

сомодо м	?	×	
+ Add Edit	X Remove		
Registry Groups Registry Entries	Automatic Startup COMODO Keys Internet Explorer Keys Important Keys		Q
	Temporary Keys		

- **Registry Groups** Batch select a predefined group of important registry keys as exclusions. See 'Registry Groups' for an explanation of registry groups defined in CCS.
- **Registry Entries** Browse to individual Windows registry keys and add them as exclusions:



Add new item:	
 HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT HKEY_CURRENT_USER HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE BCD0000000 HARDWARE SAM SECURITY SOFTWARE AVAST Software COMODO Classes Clients ComodoGroup Google Intel Macromedia Microsoft 	

- Edit Select an item and click 'Edit' to change the target path
- Remove Select a key or group and click 'Remove' to delete the exception
- Click 'OK' to implement your settings

Do not virtualize access to the removable storage media - Allow contained applications and virtual desktop applications to write to external storage devices. Example devices include USB sticks and external hard drives. (*Default = Disabled*)

Do not restrict access to COM/DCOM for these applications - By default, contained applications cannot access the COM and DCOM components running on your computer. This setting lets you specify applications that can access COM / DCOM components, even if the app is in the container.

• Select the option then click the 'these applications' link.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

O Advance	ed Settings	?	-		×
	Containment Settings				
	Shared Space(s) are the locations that contained applications an i.e. reading or writing to these locations are not virtualized.	d other	applica	tions sł	nare,
	☑ Do not virtualize access to <u>the specified files/folders</u>				
	Do not virtualize access to the specified registry keys/values				
ient Settings	Do not virtualize access to the removable media				
tainment	Do not restrict access to COM/DCOM or these applications	\mathbf{b}			
Objects	Advanced				
				_	
	COMODO Manage Exclusions ?		×		
	 ✓ ✓ Add Edit Remove Purge				
	Path		Q		
	ОК	CANCE	ïL	8	

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'Manage Exclusions' dialog.



+X+AddEditRemovePurge		
File Groups Executables Files All Applications Folders Windows Updater Applications Running Processes Windows Management 3rd Party Protocol Drivers Metro Apps Email Clients File Archivers Temporary Files Suspicious Locations Shared Spaces File Downloaders Veb Browsers Browser Plugins Startup Folders Open Office Management and Productivity Appli COMODO Client - Security Media Players COMODO Client Files/Folders Important Files/Folders Important Files/Folders		Q

- File Groups Choose a category of files or folders to which access should be granted. For example, select 'Executables' to create an exception for all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl, *\cmd.exe *.bat, *.cmd. See 'File Groups', for more details on file groups.
- Files Pick specific files or applications that can access COM / DCOM when run inside the containment.
- **Folders** Specify folders as exclusions. Access to COM and DCOM is granted to all files in the folder even if they are run inside the containment.
- **Running Processes** Choose a process currently running on your computer. The parent application of the process is added to the exclusions.
- Edit Select an item and click 'Edit' to change the target file or folder

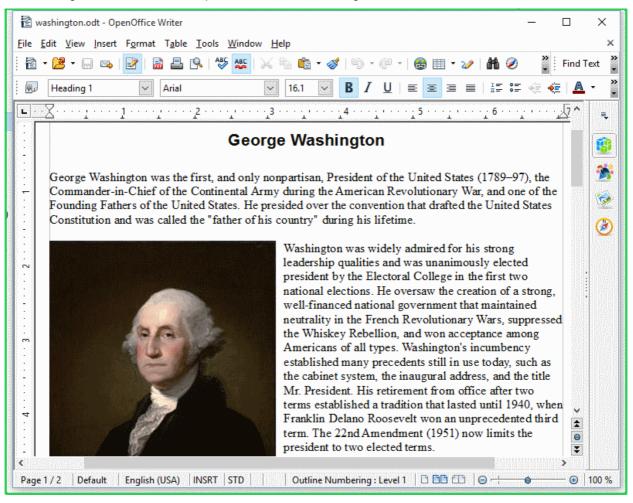


- Remove Select an item and click 'Remove' to delete an exception
- **Purge** Checks that all files and folders covered in exceptions are still present on your computer. Purge automatically removes any items it can no longer locate.
- Click 'OK' to implement your settings

Advanced Settings:

- Enable automatic startup for services installed in the container CCS launches contained services at Windows startup if this option is enabled. (*Default = Enabled*)
- Show highlight frame for contained applications CCS displays a green border around the windows of
 programs that are running in the container. (*Default = Enabled*)

The following screenshot shows an Open Office document running in the container:



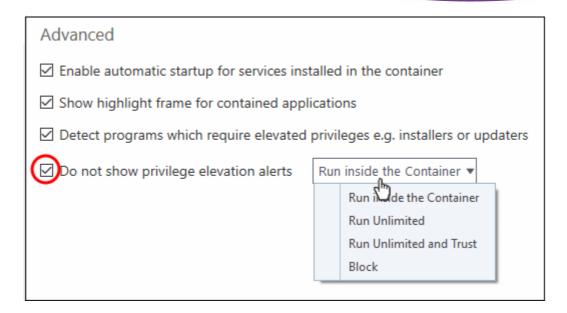
- Detect programs which require elevated privileges, e.g., installer or updaters: CCS generates an alert when it detects an installer/updater that requires admin/elevated privileges to run. An installer that is allowed to run with elevated privileges can make changes to important areas of your computer such as the registry. (*Default = Enabled*)
- Example alert:



сом	Containment ?
	TrojanSimulator.exe could not be recognized and requests unlimited access to your computer
1	<u>TrojanSimulator.exe</u> Unidentified Publisher
(!)	Run Isolated (Default) Runs the application with limited access rights
\bigcirc	Run Unlimited Grants unlimited access to the application above
\bigcirc	Block Stops execution of the application above
Trust th	is application

- **Run Isolated** Runs the installer/updater in the container
- Run Unlimited Runs the installer/updater on your local computer, outside the container.
- Block Terminates the installer/updater.
- See 'Understand Security Alerts' for more details.
- Disable this option if you want CCS not to monitor applications that request elevated privileges on your computer
- **Do not show privilege elevation alerts**: CCS will not show alerts (as shown above) when a new or unrecognized application requires admin or elevated privileges to run.
 - If you disable alerts, you need to choose a default action that CCS should implement when it detects such an application:





Note. You may see an error if an app on the host tries to update itself at the same time as that app is updating itself in the container. This is a classic Windows sharing violation which is shown when an app attempts to write to a file that is already in use. Please shut down the contained version of the app then run the update on the locally hosted version. The contained version will function correctly once the update to the local version is complete.

7.7.2. Auto-Containment Rules

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Auto-Containment'
- Auto-containment rules determine whether a program is allowed to run as normal, run with restrictions, or run in the virtual environment.
- A contained application has much less opportunity to damage your computer because it is isolated from your operating system, important system files and personal data.
- CCS consults these rules whenever you open an application. Rules at the top of the list have a higher priority. You can re-prioritize rules using the 'Move Up' and 'Move Down' buttons.
- Programs running in the container have a green border around them.
- CCS ships with a set of pre-configured rules which provide maximum protection against unknown, potentially malicious applications. You can also create your own custom rules.

Click the following links for help on specific areas:

- The rules interface
- Containment rules explained
- Predefined rules
- Create a containment rule
 - Choose the rule action
 - Choose the rule target
 - Choose additional rule options

The rules interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Containment' > 'Auto-Containment'



(사) Auto-Cont	ainment		
This option enab	les automatic containment of e	executable files and scrip	ts according to the
+ 2	¥ 1	↓ Cr Move Down Reset t	0 t
Action	Q Target		Q Enable Rule
Block Block Block	Suspicious	Loca Any	
 □ → Ignore □ → Ignore 	Communic	ation Trusted	
Run Virtu Block			
	Enable Auto-Cor This option enab policy defined be Add Add Action Action Block Block Block Block Block Indication Indication </td <td>This option enables automatic containment of policy defined below. + 2 * t Add Edit Remove Move Up □ Action Q Target □ Action Q Target □ Action Q Target □ Ø Block</td> <td> Enable Auto-Containment This option enables automatic containment of executable files and scrip policy defined below. Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down Reset t Default Action Q Target Q Rating Action Q Target Q Rating Block All Applications Malicious Block Any Block Any Block Any Suspicious Loca Any Block Any Ignore Any All Applications Trusted Ignore Any Run Virtually All Applications Unrecognized </td>	This option enables automatic containment of policy defined below. + 2 * t Add Edit Remove Move Up □ Action Q Target □ Action Q Target □ Action Q Target □ Ø Block	 Enable Auto-Containment This option enables automatic containment of executable files and scrip policy defined below. Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down Reset t Default Action Q Target Q Rating Action Q Target Q Rating Block All Applications Malicious Block Any Block Any Block Any Suspicious Loca Any Block Any Ignore Any All Applications Trusted Ignore Any Run Virtually All Applications Unrecognized

- The higher a rule is in the list, the higher priority it has. Use the move up/down buttons to change a rule's priority. In the event of a conflict in settings, CCS will obey the rule that is higher in the list.
- You can also add new rules and manage existing rules from this panel.

General Settings

• Enable Auto-Containment - Enable or disable the containment system. If enabled, applications are run in the container as per the rules in this interface. (*Default = Enabled*)

Containment rules explained

A rule performs a specific action on targets which have a certain reputation.

Containment Rules - Column Descriptions					
Column Header Description					
Action	The operation that the containment system should perform on the target if the rule is triggered.				
Target	The file, file group, or location on which the rule should run.				
Rating	The trust status of the target item - 'Malware', 'Trusted', 'Unrecognized' or 'Any'.				
	The rule will apply to target items which have the reputation you choose here.				
Enable Rule	Activate / deactivate the rule				



- CCS ships with a set of pre-defined auto-containment rules which provide maximum protection for your system.
- There are five 'Block' rules, seven 'Run Virtually' rules, and one 'Ignore' rule.
- The rule numbers indicate their default priority in CCS. If there is a conflict, CCS implements the rule with the highest priority. You can, of course, rearrange priorities as required.
- Click the following links to view the details of each rule:
 - Block rules
 - Run virtually rules
 - Ignore rule

'Block' Rules

- 1 Block and quarantine any malicious application
- 2 Block any file in the 'Suspicious locations' file group (i.e. anything in CCS quarantine and recycle bin)
- 3 Block any file in the folders Comodo uses for the container (i.e. anything in the \vtroot\ folder)

9 - Block pseudo file downloaders which are downloaded by browsers. Example downloaders are wscript.exe, powershell.exe, perl.exe etc.

13 - Block any file in the 'File Transfer Protocols' file group (i.e. any file in a URL starting with 'http:// or https://'. This blocks installation of MSI packages via URL in a command line)

	Rule Number		1	2	3	9	13
Target		Block	Block	Block	Block	Block	
		File Group - All Applications	File Group - Suspicious Locations	File Group - Containme nt Folders	File Group - Pseudo File Downloader s	File Group - File Transfer Protocols	
	File	e Reputation	Malicious	Any	Any	Any	Any
File	Source	Application	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
origi n	of file creatio n	Process(es)	Any	Any	Any	Web Browsers Rating = Any	Any
		user(s)	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
	C	Downloaded from	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
		Vendor	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
		Age of file	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
	L	og Action	On	On	On	On	On
	Restriction Level		N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	Limit M	aximum Memory	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
L	imit Prog	ram Execution Time	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A



Quarantine	On	Off	Off	Off	On
Exclude child processes from the action	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

'Run Virtually' Rules

- 5 Virtualize unrecognized files which are less than three days old
- 6 Virtualize unrecognized files downloaded from the intranet, internet or removable storage devices.
- 7 Virtualize unrecognized files created by applications that belong to any of these file groups:
 - Web Browsers
 - Email Clients
 - File Downloaders
 - Pseudo File Downloaders
 - File Archivers
 - Management and Productivity Applications
 - Browser Plug-ins
 - Media Players
- 8 Virtualize any unrecognized file in the 'Shared Spaces' file group

10 - Virtualize 'msiexec.exe' if it was started by any process in the 'Management and Productivity Applications' group. The rule will search back ten parent levels of the process tree. 'msiexec.exe' is the MSI installer application.

- 11 Virtualize 'cmd.exe' if it was started by 'eqnedt32.exe'
- 12 Virtualize 'powershell.exe' if it was started by 'eqnedt32.exe'

'cmd.exe' is the name of the command shell executable, and 'powershell.exe' runs the task automation framework in Windows. 'eqnedt32.exe' is Microsoft's Equation Editor program. Rules 11 and 12 block malware which is impersonating or using the editor to launch attacks.

	Rule Number		5	6	7	8	10	11	12
	Action		Run Virtually	Run Virtually	Run Virtually	Run Virtually	Run Virtually	Run Virtually	Run Virtually
	Target		File Group - All Applications	File Group - All Applications	File Group - All Applications	File Group - Shared Spaces	File Location - *.msiexec.exe	File Location - *\cmd.exe	File Location - *\powershell.exe
F	ile Reputation		Unrecognized	Unrecognized	Unrecognized	Unrecognized	Any	Any	Any
File origin	Source of file creation	Applicati on	Any	Any	Web Browsers Email Clients File Downloaders Pseudo File Downloaders File Archivers Management and Productivity Applications Browser Plug-ins Media Players	Any	Any	*\EQNEDT32.EX E	*\EQNEDT32.EX E
		Process(es)	Any	Any	Any	Any	File Group - Management and Productivity Applications	Any	Any

					Number of parent process levels to be analyzed = 10		
user(s)	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
Downloaded from	Any	Intranet Removable media Internet	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
Vendor	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
Age of file	Less than 3 days	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any
Log Action	On	On	On	On	On	On	On
Restriction Level	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Limit Maximum Memory	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Limit Program Execution Time	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Quarantine	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Exclude child processes from the action	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Ignore Rule

4 - Do not auto-contain metro apps

	F	Rule Number	4		
	Action		Ignore		
		Target	File Group - Metro Apps		
	Fi	le Reputation	Any		
File	Source of file	Application	Any		
origi n	creation	Process(es)	Any		
		user(s)	Any		
		Downloaded from	Any		
		Vendor	Any		
		Age of file	Any		
		Log Action	On		
	Re	striction Level	N/A		
	Limit Maximum Memory		N/A		
Limit Program Execution Time		gram Execution Time	N/A		
		Quarantine	N/A		
Ex	clude child	processes from the action	Off		

Add an Auto-Containment Rule

- Auto-containment rules can be created for a single application, for all applications in a folder/file group, for running processes, or for a file/process hash value.
- You can create precision rules by specifying 'file creation source', 'file rating of the source', 'file origin', 'file rating' or 'file age'.
- You can also create simple rules to run an application in the container just by specifying the action and the target application.
- Click the 'Add' button at the top of the list in the Auto-Containment panel:

Settings	?	_		×	
Auto-Containment					
Enable Auto-Containment This option enables automatic containment of executable files and policy defined below.	scripts	accord	ling to	the	
+ * t + Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down R	ပ္ Reset to Default				
Action Q Target Q Reputation Block D:\Suspicious f Any	Q	Enable	e Rule		
COMODO Manage Contained Program			?		×
Action Run Virtually The selected containment action will be applied if file properties monopolity CRITERIA OPTIONS	natch t	he foll	owing	criteria	•
			E	dit	
No criteria selected					

The 'Manage Contained Program' dialog will appear. The 'Manage Contained Program' displays the action at the top and contains two tabs:

- Criteria Allows you to define conditions upon which the rule should be applied.
- Options Allows you to configure additional actions like logging, setting memory usage and execution time restrictions.

Creating a new containment rule involves the following steps:

- Step 1 Choose the action
- Step 2 Select the target file/group and set the filter criteria for the target files
- Step 3 Select the options

Step 1 - Choose the action

The settings in the 'Action' drop-down combined with the restriction level in the 'Options' tab determine the privileges of an auto-contained application. This determines what right it has to access other processes and hardware resources on your computer.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



сомо	DDO Manage Contained Program	?		×
Action	Run Virtually		(•
	Run Restricted			$\overline{}$
The select	Run Virtually			
	Block			
CRITERIA	Ignore			

The options available under the 'Action' drop-down are:

- **Run Virtually** The application will be run in a virtual environment completely isolated from your operating system and files on the rest of your computer.
- Run Restricted The application is allowed to access very few operating system resources. The
 application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run with very limited
 access rights. Some applications, like computer games, may not work properly under this setting.
- **Block** The application is not allowed to run at all.
- **Ignore** The application will not be contained and allowed to run with all privileges.
- Choose the action from the options.

Step 2 - Select the target file/group and set the filter criteria

- The next step is to select the target files and configure filters.
- You can filter a rule so it applies to specific types of file.
 - For example, you can specify 'All executables' as the target, then add a filter so it only affects executables from the internet.
 - Another example is if you want to allow unrecognized files created by a specific user to run outside the container. You would create an 'Ignore' rule with 'All Applications' as the target, then add 'Files created by a specific user' as the filter.

Select the target and set the filters

• Click the 'Criteria' tab.

The target and the filter criteria, if any, configured for the rule will be displayed.

• To add new target and filter criteria, click the 'Edit' button at the far right

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

COMODO Manage Contained Program		?		×
Action Run Virtually				•
The selected containment action will be applied if file properties match	the foll	owing	criteria	:
CRITERIA OPTIONS				
	\checkmark	E	dit	\mathbf{D}
No criteria selected				
COMODO File Criteria	?		×	
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File location:		Browse		
		browse		
File created by applications: Any	Ad	ld 🔻	^	
File started by processes: Any	Ad	ld ▼	~	
File created by users: Any	Ad	ld	\sim	
File origin: Any	Ad	ld 🔻	\mathbf{v}	
File rating: Any	Sele	ect 🔻	\sim	
File signed by vendors: Any	Ad	ld 🔻	\sim	
File age: Any	Sele	ect	\sim	
ОК	C		-	4

The 'File Criteria' dialog will open. The file criteria dialog allows you:

- Select the target
- Configure the filter criteria

Select the target

• To select the target, click the 'Browse' button beside the 'File Location' field

COMODO File Criteria	? ×	
Please select the criteria to be applied.		
File location:	Browse	
File created by applications:	Any Run by Processes	
	File Groups Folder	۲
	File Hash Process Hash	

There are six types of target you can add:

- Files Apply the rule to specific files.
- Running Processes Apply the rule to a process that is currently running on your computer.
- File Groups Apply the rule to predefined file groups. See File Groups for help to add or modify a file group.
- Folder Apply the rule to a folder or drive.
- File Hash Create a hash value from a file and use it as the rule target. A hash value is a large number which is generated by passing the file through a hashing algorithm. The number uniquely identifies and represents the file, and it is extremely unlikely that two files will ever generate the same hash value. The benefit of using a file hash is that the rule will still work even if the file name changes.
- **Process Hash** Create a hash value of a process and use it as the rule target. Please see description above if required.

Add an individual File

• Choose 'Files' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

COMODO File	e Criteria	? 🗆 ×
Please select the criteri	a to be applied.	
File location:		
File created by applicat	tions:	Any Files File Groups Folder File Hash Process Hash
Open → → ↑ 🛄 « Pr Drganize ▼ New fold	og → MB Free Astrolog 🗸 🖑	Search MB Free Astrology Birt 🔎
 ▲ ↓ Quick access ↓ Desktop ↓ Downloads ↓ Documents ↓ Documents ↓ Music ↓ Old man files ↓ Suspicious 	Name Image: Second system Image: Second system	Date modified Type 16-07-2000 16:20 Applicati 17-03-2010 16:12 Applicati 17-03-2010 15:23 Applicati
 Videos OneDrive This PC 	<	>
File r	iame: 🗸 🗸	Executable Files (*.exe, *.dll, *.o₁ ∨ Open ▼ Cancel

• Navigate to the file you want to add as target in the 'Open' dialog and click 'Open' The file will be added as target and will be run as per the action chosen in **Step 1**.

COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File location: C:\Program Files (x86)\MB Free Astrology	Birth Chart\MBFreeAstr	в	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	^

 Click 'OK', if you want to just add an application for a particular action as selected in Step 1 without specifying any filters or options.

The default values for filter criteria and file rating will be 'Any' and for 'Options' it will be 'Log when this action is performed'.

• If required you can **configure filter criteria** and file rating and **options** for the rule.

Add a currently running application by choosing its process

• Choose 'Running Processes' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

Please select the criteria to be applied.	
File location:	
	Browse 🗸
	Files
File created by applications:	Any Ruffing Processe
	File Groups
	Folder
	File Hash
	Process Hash
COMODO Browse for Processes	?
Application	PID
🔺 🌻 chrome.exe	4212
🔺 🌻 chrome.exe	3840
🔺 💿 chrome.exe	5928
🖌 💿 chrome.exe	2452
🖌 💿 chrome.exe	4332
🖌 💿 chrome.exe	908
🖌 💿 chrome.exe	3940
🖌 😨 chrome.exe	2384
🔺 💿 chrome.exe	4220
	3732
🔻 🐂 explorer.exe	6120
 explorer.exe cis.exe 	
 explorer.exe cis.exe cis.exe 	6348
▼ 🖸 cis,exe	6348 5916
 cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe 	
 cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe MSASCuiL.exe 	5916
 cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe 	5916 4428

A list of currently running processes in your computer will be displayed.

• Select the process, whose target application is to be added to target and click 'OK' from the 'Browse for Process' dialog.

The parent application of the process is added as the target and run as per the action in Step 1.



OMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File location: C:\Program Files (x86)\MB Free Astrology Birth Chart\MBF	rooAstro	Bri	owse	-
C:(Program Files (xoo)(ind Free Astrology birth Chart(indF	reeAstri	Ы	owse	
File created by applications:	Any	Add		$\mathbf{\Lambda}$

 Click 'OK', if you want to just add the application for a particular action as selected in Step 1 without specifying any filters or options.

The default values for filter criteria and file rating will be 'Any' and for 'Options' it will be 'Log when this action is performed'.

• If required you can **configure filter criteria** and file rating and **options** for the rule.

Add a File Group

Choose 'File Groups' from the 'Browse' drop-down. Choosing File Groups allows you to include a category
of files or folders configured as a 'File Group'. See File Groups, for more details on viewing and managing
pre-defined and user-defined file groups.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



COMODO File Criteria	?		
Please select the criteria to be applied.			
File location:	_		
		Browse 🔻	
		Files	
File created by applications:	Any	Running Processes	
		File Groups	Executables
		Folder	All Applications
		File Hash	Important Files/Folders
		Process Hash	Windows Updater Applications
			Windows System Applications
			Temporary Files
			COMODO Client Files/Folders
			COMODO Internet Security
			COMODO Applications
			Startup Folders
			Windows Management
			3rd Party Protocol Drivers
			Metro Apps
			Management and Productivity Applications
			Web Browsers
			Email Clients
			Suspicious Locations
			Shared Spaces
			File Downloaders
			Pseudo File Downloaders
			File Archivers
			Containment Folders
			Browser Plugins
			Media Players

• Select the file group from the drop-down.

The file group will be added as target and will be run as per the action chosen in Step 1.

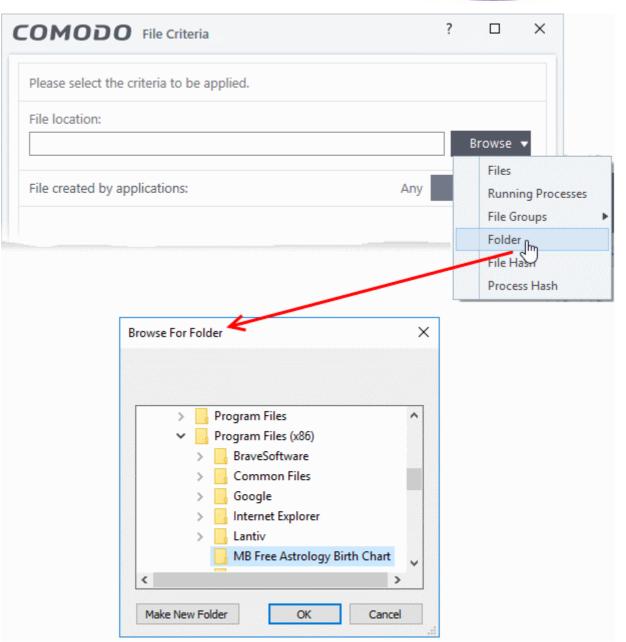
• Click 'OK', if you want to just add the file group for a particular action as selected in Step 1 without specifying any filters or options.

The default values for filter criteria and file rating will be 'Any' and for 'Options' it will be 'Log when this action is performed'.

• If required you can configure filter criteria and file rating and options for the rule.

Add a folder/drive partition

• Choose 'Folder' from the 'Browse' drop-down.



The 'Browse for Folder' dialog will appear.

• Navigate to the drive partition or folder you want to add as target and click 'OK'

The drive partition/folder will be added as the target. All executable files in the folder will be run as per the action chosen in **step 1**.

• Click 'OK', if you want to just add the applications for a particular action as selected in **step 1** without specifying any filters or options.

The default values for filter criteria and file rating will be 'Any' and for 'Options' it will be 'Log when this action is performed'.

• If required you can **configure filter criteria** and file rating and **options** for the rule.

Add a file based on its hash value

• Choose 'File Hash' from the 'Browse' drop-down

оморо	File Criteria	?	,	<
Please select the	riteria to be applied.			
File location:				
File created by a	lications:	Any	Browse V Files Running Proce File Groups Folder File Hash Process Ash	sses
Open - → × ↑ Organize ▼ Ne	≪ Prog → MB Free Astrolog ✓	C Search N	//B Free Astrology ≣≣≣ ▼	× ۱ Birt ۹
 Quick access Desktop Downloads Documents Pictures Music old man files Suspicious Videos 	 ▲ Name ▲ Bmp2Jpeg.dll ▲ MBFreeAstrologyBirthChart ▲ Unwise 	16	ate modified 5-07-2000 16:20 7-03-2010 16:12 7-03-2010 15:23	Type Applicat Applicat
 OneDrive This PC 	 ✓ < 			
	File name:	✓ Executa Ope	ble Files (*.exe, *. :n 🚽 C	dll, *.or ∨ Cancel

- Navigate to the file whose hash value you want to add as target in the 'Open' dialog and click 'Open'
- Click 'OK', if you want to just add the file for a particular action as selected in **step 1** without specifying any filters or options.
- If required you can **configure filter criteria** and file rating and **options** for the rule.
- CCS generates the hash value of the parent file and stores that as the target.
- CCS uses this hash value to identify the file and apply the rule, so that the rule intercepts the target even if the file name changes.



Add an application from a running process based on its hash value

• Choose 'Process Hash' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

OMODO File Criteria	?		
Please select the criteria to be applied.			
File location:		\frown	
		Browse 🚽	
		Files	
File created by applications:	Any	Running Proc	esses
		File Groups	
		Folder	
		File Hash	
		Process Hash	Ռո
	E		÷.
COMODO Browse for Processes		?	×
Application		PID	91210
▲ 🟮 chrome.exe		4212	^
 chrome.exe chrome.exe 		4212 3840	^
 Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928	^
 Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928 2452	^
 Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332	^
 Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908	^
 Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940	^
 Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384	•
 Chrome.exe 		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220	
 Chrome.exe <		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220 3732	~
 Chrome.exe <		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220 3732 6120	^
 Chrome.exe <		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220 3732 6120 6348	^
 Chrome.exe <		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220 3732 6120 6348 5916	^
 Chrome.exe <		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220 3732 6120 6348	^
 Chrome.exe <		4212 3840 5928 2452 4332 908 3940 2384 4220 3732 6120 6348 5916 4428	^

A list of currently running processes in your computer is shown.

- Select the process, to add the hash value of its parent application as the target and click 'OK'
- Click 'OK', if you want to just add the application for a particular action as selected in step 1 without



specifying any filters or options.

- If required you can **configure filter criteria** and file rating and **options** for the rule.
- CCS generates the hash value of the parent file and stores that as the target.
- CCS uses this hash value to identify the file and apply the rule, so that the rule intercepts the target even if the process name changes.

Configure the Filter Criteria and File Rating

You can apply an action to a file if the file meets certain criteria.

The available criteria are:

- By application that created the file
- By process that created the file
- By user that created the file
- By file origin
- By file rating
- By vendor who signed the file
- By file age

Auto-contain a file if it was created by a specific application

- You can create a filter to apply an action to a file based on its source application.
- You can also specify the file rating of the source application. The rule will then only contain a file if its parent app has a certain trust rating.

Specify source application(s):

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File Created by applications' stripe.

COMODO File Criteria	?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.			
File Belongs to (File Group):			
Temporary Files		Browse	•
File created by applications:	Alv A	Add 🔻	
		Files	
		Run Ug F	
		File Group Folder	5
		File Hash	
		Process H	ash

The options available are same as those available under the 'Browse' button beside 'File location', as explained **above**. See the previous section for each of options for more details.

The selected source application, file group or the folder will be added.

• Click the 'Any' link beside 'File Rating' and select the file rating of the source



омо	DO File Criteria		? 🗆	×
Please sele	ct the criteria to be applied.			
File Belong	is to (File Group):			
Temporal	ry Files		Brows	e 🔻
File created	d by applications:	1 process(es)	Add 🗖	^
Executat File Rati	\sim			×
	Any Trusted			
	Unrecognized Malicious			

• Repeat the process to add more applications or groups/folders.

Auto-contain a file if it was created by a specific process

- You can create a filter to apply an action to a file based on its parent process.
- Optionally, you can also specify:
 - The file rating of the source. The rule will then only contain a file if its parent process has a certain trust rating.
 - The number of levels in the process chain that should be inspected.

To specify source process(es)

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File Created by Process(es)' stripe.

OMODO File Criteria	? 🗆 X	č
Please select the criteria to be applied.		
File Belongs to (File Group):		
Temporary Files	Browse 🔻	
File created by applications:	Any Add 🗸 🗸	
File started by processes:	Any Add 🗸 🔨	
	Files	
	Running Proce	sse
	File Groops	
	Folder	
	File Hash	
	Process Hash	

- The options available are same as those available under the 'Browse' button beside 'Target', as explained **above**.
- The selected source application, file group or the folder will be added. The file created / invoked by the process, started by the selected source will be added as the target for the rule.
- ? × COMODO File Criteria Please select the criteria to be applied. File Belongs to (File Group): **Temporary Files** Browse File created by applications: Add Any Add File started by processes: 1 process(es) All Applications × File Rating: Any Any * Number vels to be analyzed: Trusted Unrecognized Malicious
- Click the 'Any' link beside 'File Rating' and select the file rating of the source

'Number of parent process levels to be analyzed' - Specify how far up the process tree CCS should check when inspecting the file's sources. 1 = will only check the file's parent process. 2 = will check the parent process and the grand-parent process, etc., etc.

	File started by processes:	1 process(es)	Add 🔻	^
<	All Applications File Rating: <u>Malicious</u>	red:	1	×
	File created by users:	Any	Add	~

• Repeat the process to add more process(es)

Auto-contain a file created by specific user(s)

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File Created by User(s)' stripe.

COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):				
Temporary Files		Br	owse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ado	•	v
File started by processes:	Any	Ado	l 🔻	\sim
File created by users:	Any	Ądo	1	
Select User or Group			×	
Select this object type:				
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Оь	ject Types		
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location:				
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location: DESKTOP-FKQF9QT		ject Types		
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location:		ocations		
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location: DESKTOP-FKQF9QT				
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location: DESKTOP-FKQF9QT		ocations		

- The 'Select User or Group' dialog will appear.
 - Type the names of the users to be added to the rule. Use the format <domain name>\<user/group name> or <user/group name>@<domain name>.
 - Alternatively, click 'Advanced' then 'Find Now' to locate specific users. Click 'OK' to confirm the addition of the users.



elect User or Group	×
Select this object type:	
User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types
From this location:	
DESKTOP-1N2US38	Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	
	Check Names
Advanced OK	Cancel
Select User or Group	
Select this object type:	
User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types
From this location:	
DESKTOP-1N2US38	Locations
Common Queries	
Name: Starts with \checkmark	Colum
Description: Starts with ~	Find 1
Disabled accounts	Sto
Non expiring password	
Days since last logon: 🛛 🗸 🗸	
	OK Can
Search results:	
Name In Folder	
Distributed C DESKTOP-1N2	
Event Log Re DESKTOP-1N2	
Guest DESKTOP-1N2	
Guests DESKTOP-1N2	
Keyper-V Admi DESKTOP-1N2	
ha	
IIS_IUSRS DESKTOP-1N2	
IIS_IUSRS DESKTOP-1N2 infra DESKTOP-1N2 Network Confi DESKTOP-1N2	

The user will be added to the list.

COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):				
Temporary Files		Bro	owse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Add	•	\sim
File started by processes:	Any	Add	•	\sim
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Add		^
Guests				×

- Repeat the process to add more users.
- To remove the user added by mistake or no longer needed in the list, click the 'X' icon at the right end of the user name.

Auto-contain a file downloaded/copied from a specific source

- Click the 'Add' button in the 'File Origin(s)' stripe.
- Choose the source from the options:

COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):				
Temporary Files			Browse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ac	dd 🔻	\checkmark
File started by processes:	Any	Ac	dd 🔻	\sim
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Ac	bb	\sim
File origin:	Any	Ac	dd 🔻	^
		- I	nternet	
			Rec ^{lin} val	ble Med

- Internet The rule will only apply to files that were downloaded from the internet.
- **Removable Media** The rule will only apply to items copied to the computer from removable devices like a USB drive, CD/DVD or external storage.



- Intranet The rule will only apply to files that were downloaded from the local intranet.
- Repeat the process to add more sources

Select the file rating as filter criteria

•

• Click the 'Select' button in the 'File Rating' stripe:

COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):				
Temporary Files		Br	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ado	1 -	\sim
File started by processes:	Any	Ado	i 🔻	\checkmark
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Ado	ł	\checkmark
File origin:	2 origin(s)	Ado	i -	\checkmark
File rating:	Any	Sele	ct 🔻	^
		Tru	usted	
		Un	recogi	nized
	de er en le freid er en geleraaf de gemeent en finde met de sterde en gele de gelere en de sterde en de gelere	M	aliciou	s d

- This will apply the rule to files which match the trust rating you set. You can choose from the following trust ratings:
 - **Trusted** Applications are categorized as 'Trusted' if:
 - The file is on the global whitelist of safe files
 - The file is signed by a trusted company in the Vendor List
 - The file was installed by a trusted installer
 - The file was given a trusted rating in the File List by a user
 - See File Rating Settings for more information.
 - **Unrecognized** Files that do not have a current trust rating. The file is on neither the blacklist nor the safelist, so is given an 'unknown' trust rating. See File List for more information.
 - Malware Malicious files those that are on the blacklist of known harmful files..

Auto-contain a file based on the software vendor

- You can apply an action to a file based on the vendor who digitally signed the file. The vendor is the software company that created the file.
- You can also specify the file rating of the vendor. The rule will only contain a file if its vendor has the stated trust rating.

Specify vendors

- Click the 'Add' button in the 'File signed by vendors' stripe.
- There are three ways you can add a vendor:
 - 1. Directly select a vendor

OMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):		_		
Temporary Files		Bi	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ado	t 🔻	\sim
File started by processes:	Any	Ado	d ▼	~
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Ado	ł	~
File origin:	2 origin(s)	Ado	t 🔻	\sim
File rating:	Unrecognized	Sele	ct 🔻	~
File signed by vendors:	Any	Ada والس	d 🔻	^
		Ve Fil	e Sign	rom Vendor Li er Process Signe

- Choose 'Vendor from a Vendor List' from the drop-down
- The 'Add Vendor' dialog opens with a list of vendors in the Vendor List

Vendor	Q	Rated By	Y	Rating	Y	
Itannex B.V.		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Neo IT Solutions Ltd.		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Festo Didactic SE		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
FTPPro.com		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Timo Bingmann		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Shearwell Data Ltd		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Boyishsoft		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Integrated Scuba Systems, Ilc		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
TeacherWeb, Inc.		Comodo		✓ Trusted		

- Use the sort and filter options in the column headers to search for the vendor to be specified
- Choose the vendor and click 'OK'. The vendor will be added as a criterion.

2. Specify an executable file on your local drive

- Choose 'File Signer' from the drop-down
- Navigate to the executable file whose publisher you want to add as the criteria and click 'Open'.
- CCS checks that the .exe file is signed by the vendor and counter-signed by a Trusted CA. If so, the vendor is added as a criteria

3. Select a currently running process

- Choose 'Running Process Signer' from the drop-down
- A list of all processes running at present on your computer is shown
- Select the process to specify the publisher of the application that started the process and click 'OK'
- CCS checks that the .exe file that started the process is signed by the vendor and counter-signed by a Trusted CA. If so, the vendor is added as a criteria

The selected vendor is added:

endor(s)	Add	· ^
		×

- Vendor Rating The rule will only apply to the vendor's files IF the vendor has this rating at the time the file is checked. Note, the rating you set here can be different to the actual vendor rating in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List' > 'Vendor Rating'.
 - Example. If you select 'Trusted' here, then CCS will apply the rule if the vendor is trusted at the time the file is checked. If the vendor's rating changes to 'Malicious' or 'Unrecognized', then the rule isn't applied.

File rating:		Unrecognized Select	· · ·
File signed by v	rendors:	1 vendor(s) Add	^
Girlssoft Vendor Ratin	g: <u>Any</u>		×
	Any Trusted		
	Unrecognized Malicious		

• Repeat the process to add more vendors

Set the file age as filter criteria

• Click the 'Select' button in the 'File age' stripe.

COMODO File Criteria	? 🗆 X
Please select the criteria to be applied.	
File location:	
	Browse 🔻
File created by applications:	Any Add 🗸 🗸
File started by processes:	Any Add 🗸 🗸
File created by users:	Any Add 🗸
File origin:	Any Add 🗸 🗸
File rating:	Any Select 🔻 🗸
File signed by vendors:	Any Add 🗸 🗸
File age:	Ary Select
COMODO File age:	? ×
File creation date:	5
Before 🔻 04/15/2019 👻 4:11:24 PM ≑	
O File age:	-
Less Than 🔻 1 🖨 day(s) 🔻	
ОК	CANCEL

The 'File Age' dialog will appear. You can set the file age in two ways:

- File Creation Date To set a threshold date to include the files created before or after that date, choose this option, choose 'Before'/'After' from the first drop-down and set the threshold date and time in the respective combo-boxes.
- File age To select the files whose age is less than or more than a certain period, choose this option and specify the period.
 - Less Than CCS will check for reputation if a file is younger than the age you set here. Select the interval in hours or days from the first drop-down combo box and set hours or days in the second drop-down box. (Default and recommended = 1 hours)

.



- **More Than** CCS will check for reputation if a file is older than the age you set here. Select the interval in hours or days from the first drop-down combo box and set hours or days in the second drop-down box. (Default and recommended = 1 hours)
- Click 'OK' in the File Criteria dialog after selecting the filters to save your settings to the rule. The list of criteria will be displayed under the Criteria tab in the 'Manage Contained Program' dialog.

COMODO Manage Contained Program		?		×
Action Run Virtually				•
The selected containment action will be applied if file propertie	s match the f	ollowing	g criteria	a:
CRITERIA OPTIONS				
			Edit	
File Belongs to (File Group): Temporary Files				
File created by users: Guests				
File origin: Removable Media Internet				
File rating: Unrecognized				
File signed by vendors: Girlssoft Vendor Rating: Any				
	ОК		CANCEL	

Step 3 - Select Options

The next step is to choose additional options and restrictions on items contained by the rule.

• Click the 'Options' tab.



COMODO Manage Contained Program	?		×
Action Run Virtually			•
The selected containment action will be applied if file properties match the	following	g criteria	a:
CRITERIA OPTIONS			
✓ Log when this action is performed			
Set Restriction Level Partially Limited •			
□ Limit maximum memory consumption to 1 📮 MB			
Limit program execution time to 1 secs			
Prohibit SMB shared resources			
Don't allow access to other processes' memory			
ОК		CANCEL	

The options available depend on the 'Action' chosen in Step 1.

The 'Ignore' action has the following options:

- Log when this action is performed CCS will create a containment log when the rule is triggered.
- **Don't apply the selected action to child processes** Child processes are those started by the target application.
 - This option is disabled by default, so the ignore rule also applies to child processes.
 - If enabled, the ignore rule does not apply to child processes. Each child process will be inspected individually and all relevant rules applied.

The 'Run Restricted' and 'Run Virtually' actions have the following options:

- Log when this action is performed CCS will create a containment log when the rule is triggered.
- Set Restriction Level If you choose 'Run restricted' or 'Run virtual' as the action, then you can also choose a restriction level. Here are the possible levels:
 - Partially Limited The application is allowed to access all operating system files and resources like the clipboard. Modification of protected files/registry keys is not allowed. Privileged operations like loading drivers or debugging other applications are also not allowed. (*Default*)
 - Limited Only selected operating system resources can be accessed by the application. The application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run without Administrator account privileges.
 - Restricted The application is allowed to access very few operating system resources. The
 application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run with very limited
 access rights. Some applications, like computer games, may not work properly under this setting.

- **Untrusted** The application is not allowed to access any operating system resources. The application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run with very limited access rights. Some applications that require user interaction may not work properly under this setting.
- Limit maximum memory consumption to Enter the memory consumption value in MB that the process should be allowed.
- Limit program execution time to Enter the maximum time in seconds the program should run. After the specified time, the program will be terminated.
- **Prohibit SMB shared resources** Programs contained by the rule cannot access network resources over the server message block (SMB) protocol. This includes, for example, shared disks, printers, folders, data or storage devices.
- **Don't allow access to other processes' memory** Available only if you chose 'Run restricted' or 'Run virtual' as the action in step 1.
 - By default, contained applications are allowed to read the memory of other applications.
 - Enable this option if you want block this read capability.
 - This is useful, for example, to prevent unknown applications in the container from reading sensitive data loaded into memory by other programs. However, it may cause some contained programs to run incorrectly.

The 'Block' action has the following options:

- Log when this action is performed CCS will create a containment log when the rule is triggered.
- Quarantine program If checked, the programs will be automatically quarantined. See Manage Quarantined Items for more information.
- Choose the options and click 'OK' to save them for the rule. The rule will be added and displayed in the list.



 General Settings Antivirus 	(IJ) Aut	to-Containm	ient				
 Firewall HIPS 	This op	Auto-Contain otion enables au defined below.		ainment of e	xecutable files	and scripts a	eccording to the
 Containment Containment Settings 	+ Add	۲. Edit	X Remove	t Move Up	₽ Move Down	C) Reset to Default	
Auto-Containment		tion	Q Tai	rget	O Reput		Enable Rule
Protected Objects		Run Virtually	đ	Temporary I	Files Unrec	ognized	
Virtual Desktop Data Loss Prevention 	0	Block	<u>P</u>	All Applicat	ions Malici	ous	
✓ File Rating		Block	ß		Loca Any		
 Advanced Protection 		Block	₽	Containmer	nt Fo Any		
Website Filtering		Ignore	ß	Communica	ation Truste	d	
	□ →	Ignore	ß	Metro Apps	s Any		
		Run Virtually	ß	All Applicat	ions Unrec	ognized	
	□ ⊘	Block		Pseudo File	Do Any		
					ОК		CANCEL

You can move the rule up or down the list to change its priority.

Edit an Auto-Containment Rule

- Select a rule from the list in the Auto-Containment panel and click 'Edit' from the top.
- The edit procedure is similar to adding an auto-containment rule.
- Click 'OK' to save the rule changes.

Important Note: Please make sure auto-containment rules do not conflict. In the event of a conflict, the setting in the rule that is higher in the list prevails. The 'Reset to Default' button lets you restore the original rules.

7.7.3. Virtual Desktop Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
- Virtual desktop settings let you set password protection, automatic login for specific users, and more.
- You can also configure desktop and start-menu shortcuts which will launch applications in the virtual desktop

Configure virtual desktop settings

• Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen



Click 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'

.

COMODO Advanced	i Settings ? - 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Containment Settings Auto-Containment 	Virtual Desktop Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop <u>Create/Change password</u> Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup <u>Edit Disclaimer</u> Protect paused Virtual Desktop session with PIN Duration of paused Virtual Desktop session before its automatic for min(s)
Protected Objects Virtual Desktop Vata Loss Prevention	Applications quickly accessible via Virtual Desktop shortcuts or start menu: + * C Add Remove Reset to Default
 File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Application Q Desktop Start Menu C:\Windows\explorer.exe Image: C:\Windows\explorer.exe Image: C:\Program Files\Internet Explorer\iexplore.exe Image: C:\Program Files\Internet Explorer\iexplore.exe
	OK CANCEL

The interface allows you to:

- Set an exit password for virtual desktop
- Configure 'Disclaimer' shown during startup of virtual desktop
- Secure virtual desktop sessions with a PIN
- Set time-out period for paused virtual desktop sessions
- Add applications to virtual desktop
- Set virtual desktop to start automatically when selected users / users in selected user group log-in
- **Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop** Create an 'exit' password for the virtual desktop. Users need to enter the password in order to close the virtual desktop.

COMODO Enter password				
Password:				
	ок с	ANCEL		

This prevent users from closing the virtual desktop and accessing the host, potentially exposing the



computer to danger. (Default = Disabled)

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
- Enable 'Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop'
- Click the 'Create/Change password' link:

	Virtual Deskto	q		
	Request password w	hen exiting Virtual Des	ktop <u>Create/Change p</u>	assword
	Show disclaimer upo	n Virtual Desktop start	up Edit Disclaimer	
e	сомодо	Create/Change passwo	rd ? ×	
Ð	Create/0	hange password		60 🔺
	Password:			
		Your password will expi	re in 90 days.	
1	Retype:			
	consist of lower- ar	t be different from the p d uppercase Latin letters d length should be from	, numbers and special	Start Mer
		ОК	CANCEL	

- Type a password that cannot easily be guessed.
- It should be 8-16 characters long and contain a mix of upper case letters, lower case letters, numbers, and special characters.
- Confirm the password then click 'OK'.
- The validity of the password is 90 days. You need to reset the password when it expires.
- **Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup** Create a disclaimer which is shown when the virtual desktop starts. Users must accept the disclaimer before they can access the virtual desktop. Default = Enabled.

Create Virtual Desktop disclaimer

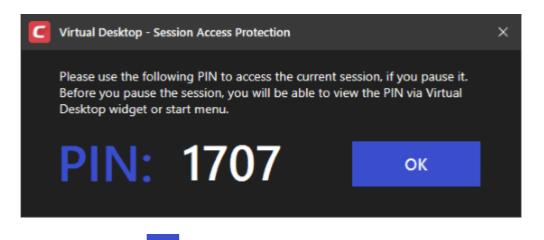
- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
- Enable 'Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup'
- Click the 'Edit Disclaimer' link:

Advanced		-		
	Virtual Desktop			
			ssword	
t Sattinger	Protect paused Virtual Desktop session with PIN		1	min(c)
сом	DDO Edit Disclaimer		? [x c
<inser< td=""><td>rt disclaimer text here≻</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></inser<>	rt disclaimer text here≻			
l	SA	/E	CAN	ICEL

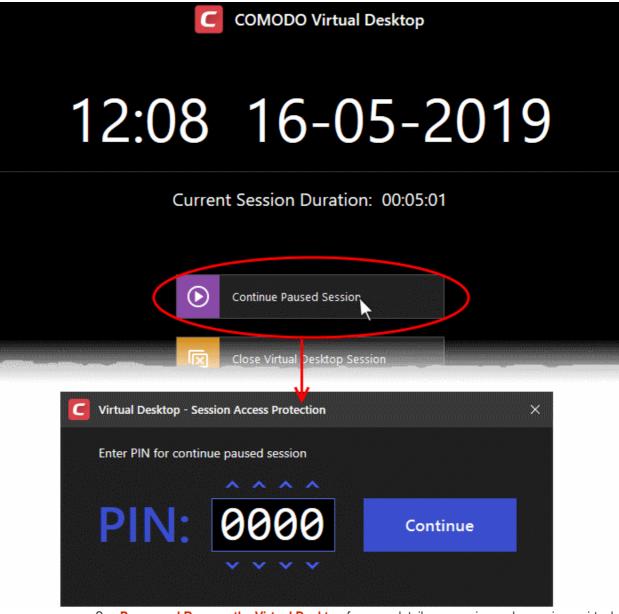
- Enter the disclaimer message and click 'Save'.
- The message is shown when the virtual desktop starts.
- Users should read the disclaimer and click 'Accept':

С	Virtual Desktop - Disc	laimer		×
	You are about to laur before you continue.	nch new Virtual Desktop s	ession. Please read the fo	llowing carefully
	<insert discla<="" td=""><td>imer text here≻</td><td></td><td></td></insert>	imer text here≻		
		Accept	Decline	

- Protect paused Virtual Desktop session with a PIN Generates a session specific PIN number during virtual desktop startup. The PIN is required to resume the session from a paused state. This creates a second layer of authentication on top of the regular Windows username/password for any sensitive data in the virtual desktop. The feature is also useful on shared computers as it prevents other users from accessing the session. (*Default = Disabled*).
 - Select this option if you want to secure virtual desktop sessions with a PIN



- Click 'Show PIN' **** in the start menu to view the number at any time.
- The user needs to make a note of the PIN. If they pause the virtual desktop session they will need to enter the PIN to resume.



See Pause and Resume the Virtual Desktop for more details on pausing and resuming a virtual desktop session

 Duration of paused Virtual Desktop session before its automatic termination - Set the maximum length of time a virtual desktop session can be left in paused state. The session gets automatically terminated when this period elapses. (*Default = Disabled*)

Add applications to virtual desktop

- The virtual desktop start menu has shortcuts for Windows explorer and your installed browsers.
- You can also add shortcuts in the virtual desktop for any other application.
- Alternatively, you can open any application inside the virtual desktop by navigating to the executable file.
- This section explains how to add and shortcuts for applications that you want to run inside the virtual desktop

Add application shortcuts and start menu items to virtual desktop

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
- · Click 'Add' under 'Applications' in the 'Virtual Desktop' settings interface



COMODO Advanced	I Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Containment Settings Auto-Containment Protected Objects Virtual Desktop 	 Virtual Desktop Request password when exiting Virtual Desktop <u>Create/Char</u> Show disclaimer upon Virtual Desktop startup <u>Edit Disclaime</u> Protect paused Virtual Desktop session with PIN Duration of paused Virtual Desktop session before its automatermination APPLICATIONS USERS Applications quickly accessible via Virtual Desktop shortcuts or start 	<u>er</u> atic	60	• mir	n(s)
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Add Remove Reset to Default Applications Running Processes C:\Windows\explorer.exe C:\Program Files\Internet Explorer\iexplore.exe			t Menu	
	ок		c	ANCEL	

You can add applications in two ways:

- Application Navigate to the location of the executable file for the application and select 'Open'
- **Running Processes** Select the process from the list of currently running processes, whose parent application is to be added click 'OK'.

Browse for Processes		? ×
Application	PID	
 ITSMAgent.exe 	6652	2
🕫 🐂 explorer.exe	180	
🔺 🖶 MSASCuiL.exe	4264	+ §
🕶 🧕 firefox.exe	6980) 🕴
4 👲 firefox.exe	3170	5 👔
4 🚯 firefox.exe	252	
🔺 📵 firefox.exe	1960	3
I O browser_assistant.exe	4024	
🔺 🧧 cis.exe	6120) []
4 😡 MyWeather.exe	5016	5
4 💹 Evemote.exe	7060)
🖌 🎕 LanTime.exe	1480) <u>(</u>
📧 svchost.exe	6200	3
• O opera.exe	5976	5
🗸 🔘 operalexe	324	3
 opera_crashreporter.exe 	4430	5
• O opera.exe	437	2
	ок с	ANCEL

The applications will be added to the list:

	Application	ns quickly acce	essible via Virtual I	Desktop short	cuts or start me	nu:
	+ Add	XX Remove	C t Reset to Default			
1	ДАр	plication		Q	Desktop	Start Menu
	C:\/	Windows\expl	orer.exe			
	C:\	Program Files	Internet Explorer\	iexplore.exe		
	C:\	Program Files	(x86)\Google\Chro	ome\Applic		
	C:\	Program Files	(x86)\MyFreeWea	ther\MyWe		

- Use the 'Desktop' and 'Start Menu' switches to enable/disable each type of shortcut per application.
- Click 'OK' to save your settings
- Click OK in the 'Advanced Settings' dialog for your changes to take effect

Add users who should log straight into the virtual desktop

• You can configure the virtual desktop to start automatically whenever certain users login to the system.



t Settings	termination	1 min(s)
nment	APPLICATIONS USERS	
bje cts top	Users for whom Virtual Desktop will be launched	d as a primary working environment:
	+ ≭ C Add Remove Reset to Default	
ection	User or Group	Q Enable
	Guests	
	Alice	
		OK CANCEL

This means the virtual desktop becomes the default operating environment for those users.

Add users

•

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Containment' > 'Virtual Desktop'
- Select the 'Users' tab
- Click 'Add'

	Litermination		min(s)
ntainment	APPLICATIONS USERS		
d Objects esktop	Users for whom Virtual Desktop will be launched	as a primary working enviror	nment:
rotection	Adding Remove Reset to Default		
Totection	User or Group	Q Enable	
	Guests		
	Alice		
		ОК	CANCEL
	V		_
	Select User or Group	>	
	Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types	
	From this location:	Object Types	
	DESKTOP-BGTT5H7	Locations	
	Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	Check Names	
	Advanced	OK Cancel	

- Select the users or user groups to whom you want this rule to apply.
 - Type the names of users or groups in the format <domain name>\<user/group name> or <user/group name>@<domain name>.
 - Alternatively, click 'Advanced' then 'Find Now' to locate specific users/user groups.
 - Click 'OK' to confirm.



Select User or Gro	up			×
Select this object ty	vpe:			
	ilt-in security principal	Object Types		
From this location:				
DESKTOP-BGTT5	iH7	Locations		
Enter the object na	me to select (<u>examples</u>):		Check Name	S
Advanced)	ОК	Cancel	
Select User or Gro	-			×
Select this object ty User, Group, or Bu	/pe: ilt-in security principal		Object	Types
From this location:				
DESKTOP-BGTT5	iH7		Locati	ons
Common Queries				
Name: S	itarts with \sim			Columns
Description: S	itarts with $$		2	Find Now
Disabled acc	counts			Stop
Non expiring	password			
Days since last	logon: 🗸 🗸			P
Search results: 🛩		[OK	Cancel
Name	In Folder			
Access Contr	DESKTOP-BGT			
Administrator	DESKTOP-BGT			
🛃 Administrators 🛃 Alice	DESKTOP-BGT DESKTOP-BGT			
Backup Oper	DESKTOP-BGT			
Bob	DESKTOP-BGT			
Cryptographic	DESKTOP-BGT			
DefaultAccount	DESKTOP-BGT DESKTOP-BGT			
Distributed C				

The user / user group will be added to the list.

at Settings	La termination	1 mil(5)
ainment	APPLICATIONS USERS	
Objects		
	Users for whom Virtual Desktop will be launched	d as a primary working environment:
tection	User or Group	Q Enable
	Guests	
	Alice	
	Bob	
		OK CANCEL

- Repeat the process to add more users.
- Click 'OK' to save your settings
- Click OK in the 'Advanced Settings' dialog for your changes to take effect

The virtual desktop starts automatically when the user signs-in to the computer.



C	COMODO Virtual Desktop
10:39	16-05-2019
Last	t Session Duration: 00:04:22
	Start Virtual Desktop Session
	Switch to Windows View
	ENG
	ENG

- The user can decide whether to continue with the virtual desktop or switch to the host OS.
- If so configured, users will need to provide a password to close the virtual desktop.

7.7.4. Containment - An Overview

- The container is an isolated operating environment for unknown and untrusted applications.
- Running an application in the container means that it cannot make changes to other processes, programs
 or data on your local computer. Applications in the container are executed under a carefully selected set of
 privileges and write to a virtual file system and registry instead of you real system.
- This delivers a smooth user experience by letting unknown applications run as normal while denying them the potential to cause damage.
- After an unknown application has been placed in the container, CCS also submits it to Valkyrie for behavior analysis. Valkyrie tests include:
 - Static analysis
 - Dynamic analysis
 - Valkyrie plugins and embedded detectors
 - Signature-based detection
 - Trusted vendor and certificate validation
 - Reputation system
 - Human expert analysis
 - If Valkyrie discovers that a file is malicious then it is added to the antivirus black list. The file is quarantined on the local machine and the user is alerted.
- Users can print documents from within the container. This is useful, for example, if a suspicious PDF has
 valid information that should be printed.



By uniquely deploying 'containment as security', CCS offers improved security, fewer pop-ups and greater ease of use than ever before.

7.7.5. Unknown Files: The Scanning Processes

- When an executable is first run it passes through the following CCS security inspections:
 - Antivirus scan
 - HIPS Heuristic check
 - Buffer Overflow check
- If the processes above determine that the file is malware then the user is alerted and the file is quarantined or deleted
- An application can become recognized as 'safe' by CCS (and therefore not scanned in the cloud) in the following ways:
 - Because it is on the local Comodo White List of known safe applications
 - Because the user has rated the file as 'Trusted' in the File List
 - Because the software publisher is rated as 'Trusted' in the Vendor List.
 - By the user granting the installer elevated privileges (CCS detects if an executable requires administrative privileges. If it does, it **asks the user**. If they choose to trust, CCS regards the installer and all files generated by the installer as safe)
- Additionally, a file is not sent for analysis in the cloud if it is defined as an Installer or Updater in HIPS Ruleset (See Active HIPS Rules for more details)
- Cloud Scanning

Step 1 - Comodo File Look-up Server (FLS)

- In order to try to establish whether a file is safe or not, CCS will first consult Comodo's File Look-Up Server (FLS) to check the latest signature databases:
 - A digital hash of the unrecognized process or file is created.
 - These hashes are uploaded to the FLS to check whether the signature of the file is present on the latest databases. This database contains the latest, global black list of the signatures of all known malware and a white list of the signatures of the 'safe' files.
 - First, our servers check these hashes against the latest available black-list
 - If the hash is discovered on this blacklist then it is malware
 - The result is sent back to the local installation of CCS
 - If the hash is not on the latest black-list, it's signature is checked against the latest white-list
 - If the hash is discovered on this white-list then it is trusted
 - The result is sent back to local installation of CCS
 - The local white-list is updated
 - The FLS checks detailed above are near instantaneous.
 - If the hash is not on the latest black-list or white-list then it remains as 'unrecognized'.

Step 2 - Vendor Rating

- If a file is still 'unrecognized' after FLS check up, CCS checks the rating of the software publisher.
 - 'Trusted' vendor rating CCS will award trusted status to the file.
 - 'Malicious' vendor rating CCS will award malicious status to the software file and place it in quarantine.
 - **'Unrecognized' vendor rating** The file will keep its unknown status and is run in the container. The file is also sent to Valkyrie for analysis.

Step 3 - Valkyrie Analysis

 Applications that have neither file rating nor vendor rating are first contained then submitted to Valkyrie for analysis.



- Unrecognized files uploaded to Valkyrie undergo a battery of static and dynamic analysis. At the end of the automated tests, files are analyzed by human experts for confirmation.
- Valkyrie returns its verdicts to CCS which will quarantine, allow or contain the file as appropriate.
- Click here to view Valkyrie online help guide

Important Note: In order for the software to submit unknown files to our file rating and malware analysis servers, please make sure the following IP addresses and ports are allowed on your network firewall:

- To allow communication with our FLSs:
 - IPs that need to be allowed:
 - 91.209.196.27
 - 91.209.196.28
 - 199.66.201.20
 - 199.66.201.21
 - 199.66.201.22
 - 199.66.201.25
 - 199.66.201.26
 - Ports that need to be allowed: 53 UDP and 80 TCP
 - Direction: Outgoing (Endpoints to FLSs)

7.8. File Rating Configuration

Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' to open this interface.

- The file rating area lets you view and manage all trusted, malicious and unrecognized files.
- File ratings in CCS are obtained from our online file look-up service (FLS). This is a huge database of trust ratings of known files.
- When a file is first opened, CCS will consult the FLS to check the file's reputation on our global whitelist and blacklists.
- CCS will award 'Trusted' status to the file if:
 - The application is on our global whitelist of safe files.
 - The application has a 'Trusted' status in the CCS File List
 - The application is from a vendor rated as 'Trusted' in the Vendor List
- Trusted files are excluded from monitoring by HIPS reducing hardware and software resource use.
- Conversely, files which are on the blacklist of harmful files are given a status of 'Malicious'. These files are quarantined or deleted automatically.
- Files which are on neither the blacklist nor the whitelist are awarded 'Unrecognized' status.
- You can review unrecognized files in the File List interface ('Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List').
- You can also submit unknown files to Comodo for further analysis, or to run an on-demand file-lookup.

Important Note: In order to submit unknown files to our file rating and malware analysis servers, please make sure the following IP addresses and ports are allowed on your network firewall:

- FLS communication please allows the software to access the following IP addresses:
 - 91.209.196.27
 - 91.209.196.28



- 199.66.201.20
- 199.66.201.21
- 199.66.201.22
- 199.66.201.25
- 199.66.201.26
- Allow ports 53 UDP and 80 TCP
- Direction: Outgoing (Endpoints to FLS)

The file ratings area lets you:

- Manually add files to the file list and assign them a rating.
- Submit unrecognized files for a file look-up, and view all files you have submitted previously.
- View and manage the vendor list, and assign trust ratings to vendors.
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating':

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus 	File Rating Settings
✓ Firewall	Enable Cloud Lookup (Recommended)
✓ HIPS	 Analyze unknown files in the cloud by uploading them for instant analysis (Privacy Policy)
✓ Containment	Upload metadata of unknown files to the cloud
 Data Loss Prevention 	☑ Do not show popup alerts
— File Rating	This option, when enabled, automatically terminates and quarantines malware detected by rating scan.
File Rating Settings	☑ Rate applications according to their <u>vendor rating</u>
File Groups File List	 Trust files installed by trusted installers Detect potentially unwanted applications
Submitted Files Vendor List	Automatically purge the file list from invalid records every 4 hour(s) The file list will be cleaned from records on files no longer existing on this computer. It will not affect records on guarantined files and files rated by administrators.
 Advanced Protection Website Filtering 	Use proxy when performing Cloud Lookup
income mening	Automatically scan unrecognized files at equal intervals Edit scan options
	Automatically re-evaluate quarantined files at equal intervals Edit scan options
	OK CANCEL

Click the following links to jump to the section you need help with:

- File Rating Settings Configure settings that govern the overall behavior of file rating.
- File Groups Create predefined groups of one or more file types.



- File List View, manage and investigate executable files on your computer and their current trust rating.
- Submitted Files View any files already submitted to Comodo for analysis.
- Vendor List View and manage the list of software publishers. Manually add vendors and assign trust ratings to them.

7.8.1. File Rating Settings

Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Rating Settings'

- A file rating determines how CCS interacts with a file:
 - 'Trusted' files are safe to run.
 - 'Untrusted' files are malware so they get quarantined or deleted.
 - 'Unknown' files are run in the container until they get rated as trusted or untrusted.
- The rating of a file can change over time, especially in the case of 'unknown' files. For example, an
 unknown file might be re-classified as 'trusted' or 'untrusted' after it has been tested.
- You can also configure whether CCS should auto-upload unknown files to Comodo for analysis.

Open the 'File Rating Settings' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File Rating Settings'

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? - \Box X				
 General Settings Antivirus 	File Rating Settings				
✓ Firewall	Enable Cloud Lookup (Recommended)				
✓ HIPS	 Analyze unknown files in the cloud by uploading them for instant analysis (Privacy Policy) 				
✓ Containment	Upload metadata of unknown files to the cloud				
➤ Data Loss Prevention	☑ Do not show popup alerts				
File Rating	This option, when enabled, automatically terminates and quarantines malware detected by rating scan.				
File Rating Settings	☑ Rate applications according to their <u>vendor rating</u>				
	☑ Trust files installed by trusted installers				
File List	Detect potentially unwanted applications				
Submitted Files	Automatically purge the file list from invalid records every 4 🔹 hour(s) 💌				
Vendor List	The file list will be cleaned from records on files no longer existing on this computer. It will not affect records on quarantined files and files rated by administrators.				
 Advanced Protection 					
Website Filtering	Use proxy when performing Cloud Lookup				
	Automatically scan unrecognized files at equal intervals Edit scan options				
	Automatically re-evaluate quarantined files at equal intervals Edit scan options				
	OK CANCEL				

• Enable Cloud Lookup - CCS checks a file's trust rating on our cloud severs as part of the real-time scan



process.(Default and recommended = Enabled)

- Analyze unknown files in the cloud by uploading them for instant analysis CCS uploads files with an 'unknown' trust rating to Comodo for further analysis. Our experts will analyze the file, award it a trust rating, and add it to the global whitelist or blacklist as appropriate. (*Default = Disabled*)
- Upload metadata of unknown files to the cloud Metadata is basic file information such as file source, author, date of creation and so on. If enabled, CCS will also send the file metadata when uploading unknown files to Comodo. (Default = Enabled)
- **Do not show popup alerts** Whether or not CCS should show an alert when malware is detected by the cloud scanner (FLS). (**Default = Enabled**)
 - Enabled No alerts are shown. This minimizes disturbances but at some loss of user awareness.
 CCS will automatically block and guarantine the threat.

COMODO Ratin	g Scanner Alert ?
Policy.User@F	@1
Location: C:\S More information: Una	uspicious\AntiTest\AntiTest.exe vailable
Clean (Recon Quarantines the	-
Ignore Ignores the aler	t and allows the file operation \checkmark
	Show Activities

Disabled - A rating scanner alert is shown for malicious files.

You can choose from these actions:

- Clean The program is blocked and quarantined
- **Ignore** Allows the file to run. Does not attempt to clean the file or move it to quarantine. Only click 'Ignore' if you are absolutely sure the file is safe. Clicking 'Ignore' will open three further options:

(!)	Ignore Ignores the alert and allows the file operation	
0	Ignore Once	
0	Ignore and Add to Exclusions	
0	Ignore and Report as False Alert	
	Show Activiti	ies



- **Ignore Once** The file is allowed to run this time, but it will still be flagged as a threat by future scans.
- Ignore and Add to Exclusions The file is allowed to run this time, and will not be flagged as
 a threat in future scans. The file is placed on the Exclusions list, meaning it is ignored
 permanently by the scanner.
- **Ignore and Report as a False Alert** The file is allowed to run this time, and submitted to Comodo for analysis. Select this option if you think the file is safe, and that CCS was wrong to flag it as a threat. Comodo will re-examine the file.
- Rate applications according to their vendor rating CCS will give files the same rating as the trust rating
 of the publisher (software creator). For example if the vendor is trusted, then all files created by the vendor
 will be trusted. (*Default =Enabled*)
 - The vendor is the software company who created and digitally signed the file.
 - You can view vendor trust ratings in 'Advanced Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'.
 - CCS ships with a list of vendors with 'Trusted' status. You can add new vendors to the list and set your own vendor ratings as required.
 - The vendor rating priority is shown below:
 - Admin
 - User
 - Comodo
 - Click the 'Vendor Rating' link to open the 'Vendor List' screen. See Vendor List for more details.
- Trust files installed by trusted installers CCS awards trusted status to files whose parent applications are listed in the 'Installer or Updater' rule in HIPS Rules. (Default = Enabled)
- Detect potentially unwanted applications (PUA) CCS scans will flag applications that:

(i) a user may or may not be aware is installed on their computer

(ii) may contain functionality and objectives that are not clear to the user.

Example PUA's include adware and browser toolbars.

PUA's are often installed as an additional extra when the user is installing an unrelated piece of software. Unlike malware, many PUA's are legitimate pieces of software with their own EULA agreements. However, the true functionality of the software might not have been made clear to the end-user at the time of installation. For example, a browser toolbar that tells you the weather may also contain code that tracks your online activity (**Default = Enabled**).

- Automatically purge unrecognized files every NN hour(s) CCS periodically checks that all unrecognized files in the list are still installed at the path specified. If not, the file is removed from the list. Select the interval in hours from the drop-down box. (*Default = Enabled, 4 Hours*)
- Use proxy when performing Cloud Lookup CCS submits files to FLS for analysis through a proxy. The proxy server is same one that is defined for program and database updates.
 - See 'Configure Program and Virus Database Updates' for more details. (Default = Disabled)
- Automatically scan unrecognized files at equal intervals CCS can periodically re-scan unknown files to check whether a new trust rating is available for them. (*Default = Enabled and set for every 4 hours*)
 - Click 'Edit Scan Options' to configure the scan settings and schedule.



сомо	DO Scan						?		х
Scan Name:	Unrecogniz	ed Files Scan							
Define items	to be scanned	d, scanning op SCHEDULE	tions and run	ning schedul	e				
[] Add Files	I ₽ Add Folder	🜌 Add Area	X Remove						
Pro	ofile								
🗌 Un	recognized File	es							
						ОК		CANCEL	

- Scan Name The label of the scan. This is pre-configured and cannot be edited.
- Items The files that are scanned by the profile. 'Unrecognized Files' is the default. You cannot edit or add files to this profile.
- Scan Options Configure scan technologies, how to handle threats, and more. See Configure scan
 options for the profile in Scan Profiles for help with this.
- Schedule Specify the frequency of the automated scans. See Configure a scan schedule in Scan Profiles for help with this. (Default = Every 4 hours).
- Automatically re-evaluate quarantined files at equal intervals CCS checks our master online database for the latest trust rating on currently quarantined files. (*Default = Enabled and set for once every day*)
 - Click 'Edit Scan Options' to configure the scan schedule.



COMODO Scan						?		×	
Scan Name:	Quarantined Files Scan								
	to be scanned	, scanning opt	tions and rur	ning schedul	e				
ITEMS	SCHEDULE								
C a Add Files	₽ Add Folder	🖸 Add Area	X Remove						
Pro	file								
Quarantined Files									
						ОК		CANCEL	

- Scan Name The label of the scan. This cannot be edited.
- Items The files that are scanned by the profile. 'Quarantined Files' is the default. You cannot edit or add files to this profile.
- Schedule Specify the frequency of the automated scans. See Configure a scan schedule in Scan Profiles for help with this. (*Default = Once every day*).
- Click 'OK' to save your changes
- Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' screen for your settings to take effect.

7.8.2. File Groups

- Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'
- As the name suggests, a file group is a collection of one or more file types. For example, the 'Executables' group is a list of file types that can run code on your computer.
- Once created, file groups can be named as the target of a rule in other areas of CCS. This makes it easy to add an entire class of files to exclusions, HIPS rules, firewall rules, containment rules and more.
- CCS ships with a set of predefined file groups. You can also create your own groups and edit existing groups as required.

Open the 'File Groups' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'



COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆	×
General SettingsAntivirus	File Groups	
✓ Firewall✓ HIPS	+ X D Add Edit Remove Purge	
Containment Data Loss Prevention	File Groups Executables	a ^
- File Rating	All Applications	
File Rating Settings	 Windows Updater Applications Windows Management 	
File List Submitted Files	🗌 🗈 🗄 3rd Party Protocol Drivers	
Vendor List Advanced Protection	Email Clients	
Website Filtering	File Archivers	
	E Temporary Files E Shared Spaces	
	OK CANCEL	1.000

Search Option:

• Click the search icon at upper-right and enter the name of a file group in full or part.

Controls:

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

- Add Create a new file group. Add files, folders or running processes to an existing group.
- Edit Rename a group. Change the file path of items in a file group.
- **Remove** Delete a file group, or specific items in a group.
- **Purge** Runs a check to verify that all files in a group are actually installed at the path specified. If not, the file or file group is removed from the list.

See the following links if you need more help:

- Create a new File Group
- Edit the names of an Existing File Group
- Add a file to an existing file group
- Remove existing file group(s) or individual file(s) from existing group

Create a File Group

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'

•



Click the 'Add' button and select 'New Group':

E F	File Gro	oups				
+ Add		🖌 Edit	🗶 Remove	P urge		
File Fol	es Iders		5			Q
	со	мот	O Edit pr	operty		? ×
		ose File G Confidenti	roup Name ial Files			
					ОК	CANCEL

• Create a label for the file group and click 'OK'.

The new group will be added and shown in the list:



COMODO Advanced	Settings	?	_		×
 General Settings Antivirus 	File Groups				
 ✓ Firewall ✓ HIPS 	+ 🗶 🗱 🗩 Add Edit Remove Purge				
✓ Containment	File Groups			Q	^
✓ Data Loss Prevention	🗌 🗈 🗄 Email Clients				
- File Rating	🔲 🖽 Suspicious Locations				
File Rating Settings	🔲 🖽 Shared Spaces				
File Groups	🔲 🗇 🗄 File Downloaders				
	Li				
	🗋 🗄 Media Players				
(🗹 🖆 My Confidential Files				>
	ок		c	ANCEL	

Add files or folder to a group

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'
- Select the group from the list
- Click the 'Add' button > Choose from 'Files', 'Folders' or 'Running Processes'

Add individual files or folders

• Choose 'Files' or 'Folders' from the 'Add' drop-down menu.

COM	000	Advanced Settin	ngs				?	-		×
✓ Gene✓ Antiv	eral Settings virus		File Groups							
✓ Firew✓ HIPS✓ Cont			+ Add Edit New Group Files	¥ Remove	e) Purge				Q	
— File F	Loss Preventi Rating ile Rating Setti ile Groups	_ /-	Running Processes	ations Updater Appl	ications					
	Open Look in:	Application] E ⊞ Windows	-	∮ 🗗 🛄 •	X				
✓ Ac Wi	Quíck access Desktop	Name 79.0.3945.1 SetupMetri chrome chrome.Vis chrome.pr	cs ualElementsManifest oxy	1// 1// 1// 1// 1//	te modified 23/2020 2:52 PM 23/2020 2:52 PM 16/2020 7:31 AM 23/2020 2:52 PM 16/2020 7:31 AM 23/2020 2:51 PM	Type File folder File folder Applicatic XML Docu Applicatic File				
	Libraries						nimimimim	Cł	ANCEL	-
	Network	< File name: Files of type:	All Files (*.*)		~) ~	> Open Cancel				

• Navigate to the file or folder you want to add to the group. Click 'OK'

🖆 🗄 Media Players	
🖆 🗏 My Confidential Files	
— C:\old man files\give_a_dog_a_bone.exe	
- 📧 C:\old man files\knack.exe	
— 📧 C:\old man files\knick.exe	
C:\old man files\paddy_whack.exe	
	~
OK CANCEL	

Repeat the process to add more files or folders.

•

Add an application from a running process

- Click the 'Add' button then 'Running Processes'
- This opens a list of processes currently running on your computer:



+ . ★ . Add Edit Remove Purge		
New Group	Q	^
Files Folders e Downloaders		
Running Processes		
- In Internet Internet		
Containment Folders		
COMODO Browse for Processes	?	>
Application	PID	
👻 🖸 cis.exe	4204	^
👻 🧧 cis.exe	4712	
🖌 🧰 cis.exe	2580	
cis.exe	4312	
4 👰 wermgr.exe	1548	
taskhostw.exe	1332	
 dxgiadaptercache.exe 	2240	
sihost.exe	3232	
taskhostw.exe	3932	
▼ III svchost.exe	1008	
 Ctfmon.exe 	3924	
✓ ■ svchost.exe	1168	
svchost.exe	108	
✓ ■ svchost.exe	260	
✓ I svchost.exe	1660	
svchost.exe	844	
svchost.exe	1280	~

- Select the desired process. The parent application of the process will be added to the group.
- Click 'OK'.

Edit an item in the 'Files Groups' list

• Select the item from the list and click the 'Edit' button. The 'Edit property' dialog is shown:



COMODO Edit property		?	Х
Edit File Path C:\Windows\System32\RuntimeBroker.exe	2		
	ОК	CANCEL	

• Edit the file path if required and click 'OK'.

Delete a file group, or an individual file from a group

• To remove a file group, select it from the list and click the 'Remove' button.

	File Groups	
+ Ado		
	File Groups Q	^
	🗇 🗄 Suspicious ocations	
	🗈 🗄 Shared Spaces	
	🗈 🗄 File Downloaders	
	🗈 🗄 Pseudo File Downloaders	
	🗂 🕀 File Archivers	
	□ ⊞ Sandbox Folders	
	🗈 🗄 Browser Plugins	
	🗇 🗄 Media Players	
	🗂 🗄 My Confidential Files	~
	OK CANCEL	

- To remove an individual file from a group expand the group by clicking '+' at the left of the group, select the file to be removed and click the 'Remove' button.
- Alternatively, right-click on a file and choose remove from drop-down menu.



7.8.3. File List

Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List'

The file list is an inventory of executable files and applications discovered on your computer. The list also shows the file vendor, the date the file was discovered, and the file's trust rating.

CCS rates files as:

- **Trusted** the file is safe to run outside the container.
- **Unrecognized** no trust-rating was found for the file, so it will be run in the container.
- Malicious the file is known malware and will be quarantined or deleted.

Trusted Files

Files can be awarded a 'Trusted' status in the following ways:

- Cloud-based file lookup service (FLS) When a file is first opened, CCS will check the file's reputation on our global whitelist and blacklists. It will award trusted status if the file is on the global whitelist of safe files.
- Vendor rating The application is from a software publisher who has a 'Trusted' status in the Vendor List.
- Administrator rating Admins can elect to trust files on a local endpoints and networks. Only applies if
 your CCS installation is remotely managed by an administrator.
- User Rating You can manually assign a trusted rating to a file as follows:
 - Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List'
 - Select the target file then click the 'File Details' button
 - Click the 'File Rating' tab
 - Click the 'Rate Now' link
 - Set the rating as 'Trusted'
 - Click 'OK'
 - See change the file rating in File Details if you want more help on this.

Unrecognized Files

- Once installed, HIPS monitors and verifies all file activity on your computer.
- Every new executable file is first scanned against the virus blacklist (known 'bad' files) and the file whitelist (known 'good' files).
- If the file is on neither list it is given an 'Unrecognized' file rating.
- Any executable that is modified is also given 'Unrecognized' status. This protects you against malware changing the behavior of a previously trusted application.

You can review pending files to determine whether or not they are to be trusted. If they are trustworthy, they can be given a 'Trusted' rating. See 'Change the file rating' for more details. You can also submit files to Comodo for analysis. Experts at Comodo will test the files and add them to global white-list or black-list accordingly.

Malicious Files

Files identified as malware are given a 'Malicious' rating, and are blocked and quarantined.

Open the 'File List' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'

General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS	View of Show	detail	List s and manage ra Executables 🔻	_			les. Jarantined	•			
 Containment 	•		l.	×	Q		~		1	Ð	
 Data Loss Prevention 	Ac	ld	File Details	Remove	Looki	qı	Submit	Exch	nange ⊿	Purge	
- File Rating		Fil	e path 🔍 🔍	Company	y Q	First	Observed	Í	Rating	Y	
File Rating Settings			C:\Windows\	Microsoft	t Dyn	2/3/2	020 10:46:3	1 AM	✓ Trus	sted	
File Groups			C:\Windows\	Microsoft	t Dyn	2/3/2	020 10:43:3	2 AM	✓ Trus	sted	
File List			C:\Windows\	Microsoft	t Cor	2/3/2	020 10:43:2	4 AM	✓ <u>Tru</u>	sted	
Submitted Files			C:\Windows\	Microsoft	t Cor	2/3/2	020 10:43:2	3 AM	✓ Trus	sted	
Vendor List Advanced Protection			C:\Windows\	Microsoft	t Cor	2/3/2	020 10:42:5	8 AM	✓ Trus	sted	
Website Filtering			C:\Windows\	Microsoft	t Cor	2/3/2	020 10:42:5	8 AM	✓ Tru:	sted	
			C:\Windows\S	Microsoft	t Win	1/31/	2020 3:45:1	8 AM	✓ Trus	sted	
			C:\Windows\S	Microsoft	t Win	1/31/	2020 3:45:1	6 AM	V Trus	sted	

The file list shows applications and executable files discovered on your computer.

- File Path The location of the file on your computer
- Company The software vendor that published/created the file
- First Observed Date and time at which the file was first discovered by CCS.
- File Rating Current trust rating of the file. The possible values are:
 - Trusted
 - Unrecognized
 - Malicious

CCS obeys ratings in the following order of priority:

- 1. Administrator rating Rating set by the Endpoint Manager admin who remotely manages your CCS installation.
- 2. User rating A rating that you, or another user, gave to the file in the local CCS installation.
- 3. FLS rating The rating of the file on Comodo's master database. CCS automatically fetches this rating from the file-lookup server (FLS) when it scans a file.

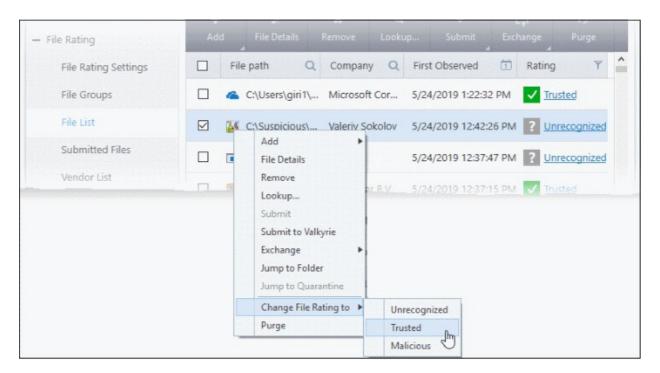
There are three ways you can set user rating for a file:

- 1. Right-click on a file in the file list
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'

.



Right-click on a file > Select 'Change File Rating to' > Choose a new rating:



- 2. In the file rating column
- Click on the rating of a file in the 'Rating' column
- Choose a new rating from the options:

	-	.e.102012/Bittin	Cor Cor	5/24/2015 NZ2.52 FIVI	Ľ	rusted
	14	C:\Suspicious\	Valeriy Sokolov	5/24/2019 12:42:26 PM	? L	Inrecognized
_						Unrecognized
		C:\Suspicious\		5/24/2019 12:37:47 PM		Trusted
						Malicious

- 3. From the 'File Details' dialog
- Select a file in the file list
- Click the 'File Details' button at the top
- Click the 'File Rating' tab
- Click the 'Rate Now' link
- Set the rating as required
- Click 'OK'

Context Sensitive Menu

• Right-click on a file to open a context sensitive menu that allows you to view the 'File Details' dialog, remove the file from the list, submit the file to Comodo for analysis and more.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

O Advanced S	settings				?	- 🗆 ×
	File List					
	View details and m	anage rating of kno	own exec	utables.		
	Show files Execut	ables 🔻 Quarantir	ned and r	not quarantined 🔻	r	
	+ 🦨		Q Lookup	Submit	L L Exchange	ච Purge
Settings	🗌 🔺 File path	Q Compar	ny Q	First Observed	İ Ratii	ng 🍸 ^
	🗌 🧣 C:\Susp	icious\h Threatst	ar B.V.	5/24/2019 12:37	:15 PM 🗸	Trusted
	✓ C:\9	Add	•	5/24/2019 12:37	:47 PM 🤶 !	Unrecognized
	C:\S	File Details Remove Lookup Submit Submit to Valkyrie Exchange Jump to Folder Jump to Quarantine Change File Rating to Purge		5/24/2019 12:42	:26 PM ? 1	Unrecognized

- Add Manually add a file to the list and specify its trust rating
- File Details View information about the selected item. You can also set the file rating from here.
- **Remove** Delete files from the list.
- Lookup Check the file-lookup server for more details about the file, including the latest trust rating.
- Submit to Valkyrie Upload an item to Valkyrie, Comodo's file analysis system.
- Exchange Consists of two options (Import and Export).
 - Import Add files to the list from an XML file
 - Export Save the current list as an XML file
- Jump to Folder Opens the folder containing the file in Windows Explorer.
- Jump to Quarantine Opens the 'Quarantine' interface of CCS to view or restore the file. Available only for items moved to quarantine. See Manage Quarantined Items for more details.
- Change File Rating to Set user defined trust rating to the file.
- **Purge** Check that all files in the list are still installed at the path specified. If not, the file is removed from the list.

Sort, search and filter options

Sort option

 Click any column header to sort the items in alphabetical / ascending / descending order of entries in that column

Search options

You can use the search option to find a specific file based on the file path, file name or the publisher, from the list. Also, you can filter the list of files based on the installation/storage date and 'File rating'.

• Click the search icon at the far right in the 'File path' and/or 'Company' column header.

+ Add	File Details Remove Lookup		Submit	다. Exchange	€ Purge		
	Q Search	x • Q	×	First Ob:	served 🗇	Rating	

• Enter the file path and/or the name of company in part or full as per the selected criteria in the search field The result for the entered criteria will be listed automatically. Click the 'X' icon to clear the search criteria and display all the items again in the list.

Filter options

The 'Show files' filter lets you view the following file types:

- **Executables** Files capable of running code. Example extensions include .exe, .msi, .com, .bin, .vbs, etc. These files are usually applications, scripts or installers.
- **Non-executables** Files that were created by executables, but which are not capable of running code themselves. Note User-created files, like Word documents, saved emails and spreadsheets etc, are not shown with this option.
- All types Show both executable and non-executable files.

COMODO Advan	ced Settings		7	' —	×
 General Settings Antivirus 	File	List			
✓ Firewall	View details Show files	and manage rating of known executab			
✓ HIPS	Show mes	Executables Executables			
✓ Containment	+	Non-executa s Q All types			

- Select the file type from the drop-down on the left
- Select whether you want to view quarantined items, non-quarantined items, or both:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



COMODO Adva	nced Settings			?	—		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	File List View details and manage ra	ating	of known executables.				
✓ HIPS	Show files Executables ▼	Qua	arantined and not quarantined	1			
			Not quarantined			^	

- Click the calendar icon at the right of the 'First Observed' column
- Choose the time period you require
- This will show only those files discovered in the time-frame you set:

Search Search First Observed Rating C:\Windows\Sys. O Within last O Within last O Within last O Except last O Trusted Trusted Trusted Trusted O Today O Current week O Current month	Add	🖉 File Details	X Q. Remove Lookup	Submit	다. Exchange	€) Purge	
□ ○ Within last 1 ÷ hour(s) • □ ○ C:\Windows\Sys. ○ Except last 1 ÷ hour(s) • □ □ C:\Windows\Sys. ○ Trusted □ □ □ C:\Windows\Sys. ○ Trusted □ □ □ □ □ C:\Windows\Sys. ○ Today □ </th <th></th> <th>Search 🗙</th> <th>Q Search</th> <th>First Obs</th> <th>erved 📋</th> <th>Rating</th> <th></th>		Search 🗙	Q Search	First Obs	erved 📋	Rating	
C:\Windows\Sys. C:\Sys. C:\Sys		C:\Windows\Sys	(No filtering)			Trusted	
CaWindowskiew O Today O Current week		C:\Windows\Sys	, The second sec			Trusted	
	D		 Today 			Tostad.	
O Current month			O Current week				
			O Current month				
			05/24/2019	- 05/24/2	019 🔻		

• Click the funnel icon at the right of the 'File Rating' column to filter files by rating:

	+) Purge	L ∦ Exchange	Submit	Lookup	Remove	File Details	
7	Rating	erved 🗇	First Obs	earch 🗙	C C Se	C Search	
	Truste	9 1:06:53 PM	5/15/201	oft Windows	/s Microso	C:\Windows\S	
gnized							
LS S	Malicio						

Control Buttons

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

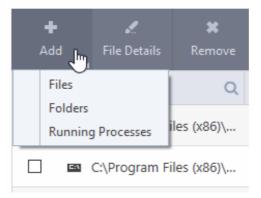


	+ Add	File Details	X Remove	Q Lookup	✓ Submit	Ľ₁ Exchang	မ pe Purge	
ttings	E F	ile path (Q 🔻 Compa	iny Q Fir	rst Observed	1	Rating	Y

- Add Manually add files to the 'File List' with user defined rating
- File Details View the information about the selected item. You can also set user defined rating to the selected file
- Remove Delete files from 'File List'.
- Lookup... Check the details of the selected file from the master Comodo safelist
- **Submit to Valkyrie** Uploads selected files to Valkyrie for behavior analysis. Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdicting system.
- Exchange Consists of two options (Import and Export).
 - Import Fetch the files from a file list saved as an XML file
 - Export Save the current file list with existing ratings as an XML file
- **Purge** Runs a system check to verify that all the files for which the ratings are listed are actually installed on the host machine at the path specified. If not, the fie is removed from the list.

Manually add files to 'File list'

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'
- Click the 'Add' button at the top



Tip: Alternatively, right click inside the File List page and choose 'Add' from the context sensitive menu.

You can add three types of items:

- Files Browse to the file you want to add and assign a rating.
- Folders Browse to the folder you want to add an assign a rating. All files in the folder will inherit the rating you gave to the folder.
- Running Processes Select a currently active process and assign a rating. The parent application of the
 process will be added to the file list with the rating you assign.

View the 'File Details' and change the rating

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'

Select a file and click the 'File Details' button.

•

Fi	ile List	
View deta	ails and manage rating of known executables.	
Show file	es Executables 🔻 Quarantined and not quarantined 🔻	
		_
+		
Add	File Details Remove Lookup Submit Exchange Purge	
F F	File path Q - Company Q First Observed 🛅 Rating 🍸	î
(I) 🛛	C:\Suspicious\ Valeriy Sokolov 5/24/2019 12:42:26 PM <table-cell> Unrecognized</table-cell>	
	🌠 C:\Suspicious\ Threatstar B.V. 5/24/2019 12:37:15 PM 🗸 Trusted	
	COMODO File Details ? ×	
	OVERVIEW FILE RATING	
	File Name: Jump to Folder	
	File Rating: Unrecognized First Observed: 5/24/2019 12:42:26 PM	
	Last Quarantined: (n/a)	
	Certificate Signer: Valeriy Sokolov	
	Origin: (unknown)	
	Created by: System File Hash (SHA-1): 5C7EBFA561269F2AD4DE783B3281AF1AAE274B0E	
	Reset COMODO Info	
	OK CANCEL	

Tip: Alternatively, right click on the selected file and choose 'File Details' from the context sensitive menu.

The 'File Details' dialog will open. The dialog has two tabs:

Comodo Client Security User Guide | © ITarian 2020 | All rights reserved.

- Overview
- File Rating

Overview

The 'Overview' tab shows general details such as the file rating, discovery date, hash value and publisher (signer):

OVERVIEW	FILE RATING
File Name: WorkingTimeManage	Jump to Folder
File Rating:	Unrecognized
First Observed:	5/24/2019 12:42:26 PM
Last Quarantined:	(n/a
Certificate Signer:	Valeriy Sokolov
Origin:	(unknown
Created by:	System
File Hash (SHA-1): 50	7EBFA561269F2AD4DE783B3281AF1AAE274B08
	Reset COMODO Info

- Click the file name to open the Windows 'File Properties' dialog.
- Click 'Jump to folder' to open the folder containing the file in Windows Explorer, with the respective file selected.
- Click 'Reset COMODO Info' to refresh the information from Comodo FLS database

File Rating

• Shows the file's current trust rating from Comodo and lets you set your own rating:



OMODO File Details	? ×
OVERVIEW	FILE RATING
Final Rating:	Unrecognized
Provider Date	File Rating
Administrator	? Unrecognized
User	? Rate Now
Comodo	? Unrecognized

Note: If your CCS installation is remotely managed by Endpoint Manager, your administrator's file rating for individual file will override your user file rating.

Change the user rating of the file

- Select the file from the 'File List' pane and click the 'File Details' button
- Click the 'File Rating' tab
- Click the 'Rate Now' link and choose the rating from the drop-down:

	e Details	? >
OVERVIEW	I	FILE RATING
Final Rating:		Unrecognized
Provider	Date	File Rating
Administrator		? Unrecognized
User		? Rate Now
Comodo		Unrecognized 7 Trusted Malicious
		OK CANCEL

The options available are:

- Trusted The file(s) will be assigned the 'Trusted' status and allowed to run without any alerts
- **Unrecognized** The file(s) will be assigned the 'Unrecognized' status. Depending on your HIPS settings, the file(s) will be allowed to run with an alert generation.
- Malicious The file will be deleted or placed in quarantine and will not be allowed to run.
- Click 'OK' in the 'Files Details' dialog

Tip: Alternatively, right click on a file then choose 'Change File Rating to'

• Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface to save your settings.

Remove files from the file list

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'
- Select the file(s) to be removed
- Click the 'Remove' button at the top. The file(s) is / are only removed from the list and not deleted from your system.

Tip: Alternatively, right click on a file then choose 'Remove' from context sensitive menu.

• Click 'OK' for your changes to take effect.

Perform an online lookup for files

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'
- Select the file(s) to be checked from the 'File list' pane.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



• Click the 'Lookup...' button at the top from the 'File list' pane.

Tip: Alternatively, right click on a file then choose 'Lookup' from the context sensitive menu.

Comodo servers will be contacted immediately to conduct a search of Comodo's master safe list database to check if any information is available about the files in question and the results will be displayed.

	Show fi	es Executables 🔻	Quarantined and	not quarantined 🔻			
	∔ Add	€ File Details R	* Q emove Looky	p Submit	ট귀 Exchange	Ю Purge	
tings		▲ File path Q	Company	First Observed	T Rating	Y	^
		C:\ProgramData	Microsoft Cor	5/15/2019 10:55:5	2 A 🗸 Tru	usted	
		C:\Suspicious\A		5/24/2019 12:11:2	0 PM 👲 <u>M</u>	alicious	
		🥰 C:\Suspicious\h	Threatstar B.V.	5/24/2019 12:37:1	5 PM 🗸 Tru	usted	
		C:\Suspicious\w		5/24/2019 12:37:4	7 PM ? Ur	recognized	
tion		C:\Suspicious\	Valeriy Sokolov	5/24/2019 12:42:2	6 PM ? Ur	recognized	
	- A	C\Ucorc\airi1\A	Google U.C.	5/16/2010 1-26-26	DM 🔽 To	utad	
сомо 100		ookup C:\Suspicious\AntiTes	¥ :t\AntiTest.exe		?		×
File Name			Rating				
WorkingT	imeManag	gerSetup.exe	? Unr	ecognized			
wildfire-te	est-pe-file.	exe	? Unr	ecognized			
Mainter Market	test.exe		🧭 Trus	ted			
₫ <u>AntiTest.e</u>	xe		() Bad	- CloudScanner.Fls.F	ile		
× CLOSE					SEND TO	BACKGROUN	D

If any malicious or unwanted file(s) is/are found, you will be given an option to delete the file from your computer on closing the dialog.



сомо	DDO Client - Secur	ity	×			
? There are malicious files in your list. Would you like to delete them now?						
	YES	NO	CANCEL			

- Click 'Yes' to permanently delete the malicious file(s) from your computer.
- If a file is found to be safe, it will be indicated as 'Trusted' with a green icon. You can change its rating from the File Details dialog. See the description of **changing the file rating** under the section **File Details** for more details.
- If no information is available, it will be indicated as 'Needs to be submitted' with a yellow icon. You can
 submit the file to Comodo for analysis from the dialog that appears on closing the 'Lookup' dialog. See
 explanation below for more details.

Manually submit files to Valkyrie

Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdicting system. After submitting your files, Valkyrie will analyze them with a range of static and dynamic tests to determine the file's trust rating.

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'
- Select the file(s) to be submitted from the 'File List' pane.
- Click 'Submit' > 'Submit to Valkyrie' in the top-menu. The files will be immediately sent to Valkyrie for analysis.

Tip: Alternatively, right click on a file then choose 'Submit to Valkyrie' from the menu.

You can view the list of files you submitted so far, from the **Submitted Files** panel.

Export and Import the File List

You can save the list of files with their currently assigned ratings to an XML file and store it in a safe place. This is useful to restore your list if you have to uninstall/reinstall CCS, or if you want to implement the same list on another machine that has CCS installed.

Export the File List

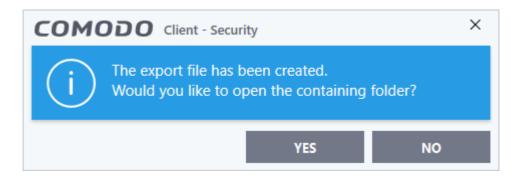
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'
- Click the 'Exchange' button at the top of the 'File List' pane then select 'Export' from the menu

Tip: Alternatively, right click inside the 'File List' page then select 'Exchange' > 'Export'

Navigate to where you want to store the exported list and click 'Save'.

The file will be created and saved. You will be given an option to view the folder containing the XML file for confirmation.





Import a saved file list

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'File List'
- Click the 'Exchange' button then select 'Import' from the menu

Tip: Alternatively, right click inside the 'File List' page then select 'Exchange' > 'Import'

• Navigate to the location of the XML file containing the file list and click 'Open'.

The 'File List' will be populated as per the imported 'File List'.

7.8.4. Submitted Files

- Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'Submitted Files'
- The 'Submitted Applications' area lets you review and manage the files that you have uploaded to Comodo Valkyrie for analysis.
- Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdicting system.
- You can submit suspicious files, files with an 'unknown' trust rating, or false-positive files (those files you feel CCS has incorrectly identified as malware).
- After submitting your files, Valkyrie will analyze them with a range of static and dynamic tests to determine the file's trust rating.
- After manual classification by Valkyrie, they will be added to global white or black list accordingly.

Open the 'Submitted Files' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Submitted Files' on the left:

COMODO Advance	ed Settings	? –	
 General Settings Antivirus 	Submitted Files		
 Firewall HIPS 	🗱 🏳 Clean Refresh		
✓ Containment	Path C	Submitted	Submitted As
 Data Loss Prevention 	E:\CCAV\10-08-18\unknown2.exe	10/10/2018 4:10:50 PM	Automated An
- File Rating	E:\CCAV\10-08-18\unknown1.exe	10/10/2018 5:27:29 PM	Automated An
File Rating Settings	E:\CCAV\Not yet tested\blueberry.exe	10/8/2018 11:22:20 AM	Automated An
File List	E:\CCAV\10-08-18\unknown3.exe	10/10/2018 4:12:45 PM	Automated An
Submitted Files	E:\CCAV\10-08-18\New folder\pathping.exe	10/11/2018 11:15:36	Automated An
Vendor List	E:\CCAV\10-08-18\unknown4.exe	10/10/2018 4:25:48 PM	Automated An
 Advanced Protection Website Filtering 			
	٢		>
			O Privacy Policy
		ок	CANCEL

- Path The location of the file on your computer
- Submitted Date and time the file was uploaded for analysis.
- **Submitted As** The status under which the file was uploaded. Examples include 'automated' and 'contained'.
- **Cloud Service** The name of the Comodo cloud service to which the files were submitted. This is usually the Valkyrie analytic system operated by Comodo.

The buttons at the top provide the following options:

ĺ	Sub	mitted Fil	es
	🗱 Clean	€ Refresh	
-	Path		Q

- Clean Clears the list
- Refresh Reloads the list to add items that are submitted recently



7.8.5. Vendor List

• Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'

There are three ways that a file can be treated as safe in CCS:

- The file is on the safe list (a global white-list of trusted software)
- The user has assigned 'Trusted' rating to the file in the CCS file list ('Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List')
- The file is published and signed by a trusted vendor. The 'vendor' is the software company that created the file.

With regards to vendor settings, CCS handles unknown files as follows:

- The file is allowed to run normally if:
 - The vendor rating is 'Trusted' AND you have enabled 'Rate applications according to their vendor rating' in **File Rating Settings**
- The file is run in the container if:
 - The vendor rating is 'Unrecognized' AND you have enabled 'Rate applications according to their vendor rating' in File Rating Settings
 - The vendor is not in the vendor list (regardless of whether you have enabled 'Rate applications according to their vendor rating')
- The file is blocked and quarantined if:
 - The vendor rating is 'Malicious' AND you have enabled 'Rate applications according to their vendor rating' in File Rating Settings

Vendor List

- CCS ships with a list of trusted vendors who have a reputation of creating legitimate, safe software. CCS allows unknown files which are digitally signed by one of these vendors to run.
- Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List' to view this list of trusted vendors.
- You can also add new vendors, and change the rating of existing vendors. The vendor rating priority is as follows:
 - Admin
 - User
 - Comodo
- Software publishers can get themselves added to trusted vendors by contacting Comodo with their software details. Click here to read more about this.
 - Click here if you want to read background information on digitally signing software

Open the 'Vendor List' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List':

 General Settings Antivirus 	ST V	endor List							
 Firewall HIPS 	+ Add	Vendor Details	Re	X move	Q. Lookup.				
✓ Containment		Vendor	Q	Rated By	· 7	Last Modified	Ō	Rating	Ŧ
 Data Loss Prevention 		Beijing Huahong	Int	Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
— File Rating		ABB S.p.A.		Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
File Rating Settings		Baidu Online Net	wo	Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
File Groups		Bopsoft (Zaozhu:	ang	Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
File List		cs@amedtec.de		Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ Trusted	
Submitted Files		DURKIN ADDON	s c	Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
Advanced Protection		Efficient Learning	Sy	Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
Website Filtering		Five Senses Educ	ati	Comodo		1/23/2020 3:06:5	2 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	

The interface allows you to:

- Add a new vendor to the list
- · View details of vendors and assign user rating
- Perform an online lookup for vendors
- Remove vendors from the list

Column Descriptions:

- Vendor The name of the software publisher
- **Rated By** The entity that assigned the rating you see in the 'Rating' column. This can be 'Administrator', 'User' or 'Comodo' rating.
- Last Modified Date and time the rating was most recently updated.
- **Rating** Current trust rating of the vendor. The possible values are:
 - Trusted
 - Unrecognized
 - Malicious
 - Click on the rating to assign a new rating
 - CCS obeys vendor ratings with the following priority:
 - Admin rating
 - User rating
 - Comodo rating

There are three ways you can set a vendor rating:



1. Right-click on a vendor in the 'Vendor List'

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
- Right-click on a vendor > Select 'Change File Rating to' > Choose a new rating:

HIPS	Ad	d Vendor Re Details Re	emove Lookuj	P		
 Containment 		Vendor Q	Rated By 🌱	Last Modified	i İ Rati	ng 🍸
 Data Loss Prevention 		.PlayerNet Games (S	Comodo	1/23/2020 3:0	06:52 PM	Trusted
- File Rating		/N SOFTWARE INC.	Add	3:0	06:52 PM	Trusted
File Rating Settings		@Last Software Inc.	Vendor Details		06:52 PM	Trusted
File Groups		[MB] Software und	Remove Lookup	3:0	06:52 PM	Trusted
File List		"ECONOMIC PROGE	Change Vendor	Rating to	Unrecognized	isted
Submitted Files		ECONOMIC PROG	Reset User Ratir	ng	Trusted	DIEN
Vendor List		"B.est Solutions" M	Comodo	1/23/2020	Malicious In	sted
 Advanced Protection 		棋百科全书》安	Comodo	1/23/2020 3:0	06:52 PM	Trusted
Website Filtering		«Compania-Dekart»	Comodo	1/23/2020 3:0	06:52 PM	Trusted

2. In the file rating column

- Click on the rating of a vendor in the 'Rating' column
- Choose a new rating from the options:

COMODO Advance	d Settings						?	-		×
General SettingsAntivirus	57	Vendor List								
✓ Firewall✓ HIPS	+ Ad		Re	X emove	Q. Lookup)				
✓ Containment		Vendor	Q	Rated	By 🍸	Last Modified		Rating		Y ^
✓ Data Loss Prevention		.PlayerNet Gan	nes (S	Como	do	1/23/2020 3:06:	52 PM	✓ Tru	sted	
- File Rating		/N SOFTWARE	INC.	User		1/23/2020 3:06:	52 PM	Se Ma	licious	
File Rating Settings		@Last Software	e Inc.	Como	do	1/23/2020 3:06:	52 PM		Unrecogi Trusted	nized
File Groups		[MB] Software	und S	Como	io	1/23/2020 3:06:	52 PM		Maliciou	

3. From the 'File Details' dialog

• Select a vendor in the file list



- Click the 'Vendor Details' button at the top
- Click the 'Vendor Rating' tab
- Click the 'Rate Now' link beside 'User'
- Set the rating as required
- Click 'OK'

Context Sensitive Menu

• Right-click on a vendor to open a context sensitive menu that allows you to view the 'Vendor Details' dialog, assign a rating to a vendor, add / remove vendors, and more.

S	Vendor List			
+ Ado	J Vendor Details	Demons last	2 kup	l
	Vendor	Q Rated By	🕇 Last Modified 📋 Rating 🍸 '	^
	VideoEgg	Comodo	4/11/2019 1:58:10 PM / <u>Trusted</u>	
	VideoIQ	Add	▶ 4/12/2019 2:26:43 PM √ <u>Trusted</u>	
	VideoLAN	Vendor Details Remove Lookup	4/12/2019 2:26:43 PM Trusted	
		Change File Rating to Reset User Rating		

- Add Manually add a new vendor to the vendor list. You can select an executable file or a currently running process to add the publisher who signed that file to the list.
- Vendor Details View the information about the vendor. You can also assign user defined trust rating to the vendor
- Remove Delete the vendor from the list
- Lookup... Check details of the vendor from the master Comodo trusted vendor list
- Change File Rating to Set user defined trust rating to the vendor
- Reset User Rating Clear user rating and reinstate Comodo rating

Controls

The buttons at the top provide the following options:



1 Sill	Vendor List						
Ad	d Vendor Details	X Remove	Q Lookup	>			
	Vendor	Q Rated I	By 🍸	Last Modified	Ť	Rating	Ţ
	Videodesk SA	Comod	o 4	4/11/2019 1:58:	10 PM	✓ <u>Trusted</u>	
	VideoEaa	Comod	0 4	4/11/2019 1:58:	10 PM	✓ Trusted	

- Add Manually add a new vendor to the list. You can add a vendor by simply selecting a file or a running process. CCS will extract the publisher who signed the file/process.
- Vendor Details View information about the selected vendor. You can also set your own trust rating for the vendor from here.
- **Remove** Delete selected vendors from the list. You can only remove user-added vendors.
- Lookup... Check details of a vendor on Comodo's online trusted vendor list

Sort, Search and Filter options

- Click any column header to sort the list in order of the entries in that column
- Click the search icon in the 'Vendor' column header to look for specific vendors
- Click the calendar icon in the 'Last Modified' column header to filter vendors by date modified:

Jul .	Vendor List	
+ Ade		🗱 Q. Remove Lookup
	Vendor	Q Rated By 🝸 Last Modified 団 Rating
	Beijing Huaho	(No filtering)
	ABB S.p.A.	○ Within last 1 hour(s) ○ Except last 1 hour(s)
	Baidu Online I	🔿 Today
		O Current week
		O Current month
		O Within the period of 05/27/2019 ▼ - 05/27/2019 ▼



Click the funnel icon in the 'Rated By' / 'Rating' columns to filter vendors by trust rating, and by who assigned the rating:

Ven	dor List				
+ Add	Vendor Details	X Remove	Q Lookup		
Ven	ldor	Q Rated B	By 💎 Li	ast Modified	Ratir
🗌 Beiji	ing Huahong	In Admini		15/2019 10:54:3	

Add a new vendor to the list

- You can add vendors simply by browsing to a file they have digitally signed
- · CCS will read the vendor's signature from the file and add them to the list
- You can then assign your own rating to the vendor

There are two ways to add vendors:

- Specify an executable file on your local drive
- Select a currently running process

Add a vendor by reading the vendor's signature from an executable

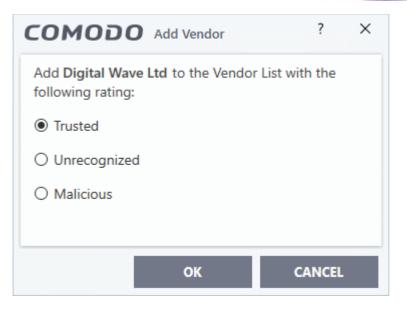
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
- Click the 'Add' button at the top and select 'Read from a signed executable'
- Alternatively, right-click inside the vendor list and select 'Add' > 'Read from a signed executable'

General Settings	Vendor List		
Antivirus	Vendor List		
HIPS	(+) 🗶 🗙	٩	
Containment	Add Vendor Remove	Lookup	
Data Loss Prevention	Read from a Signed Executable Read from a Running Coss	Y Last Modifie	ed İ
File Rating	Videoresk SA Comodo	4/11/2019 1	:58:10 PM
Gle Rating Setting			
Copen			×
← → ~ ↑ <mark> </mark> « Lo	ocal D > Program Files > 🗸 🗿 Sear	rch Program Files	م
Organize 🔻 New fold	ler		
Organize 🔻 New fold	ler Name	Date modified	Type
	^		
🛄 Desktop 🖈	Name	Date modified	Туре
Desktop * ^ Downloads *	Name	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08	Type ^ File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads *	Name Common Files	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57	Type ^ File fol File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures *	Name Common Files COMODO	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50	Type ^ File fol File fol File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music old man files	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46	Type ^ File fol File fol File fol File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music Old man files Suspicious	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer rempl	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05	Type A File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music old man files	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer rempl VideoLAN	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05 12-04-2019 14:08 12-04-2018 14:46	Type File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music old man files Suspicious	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer rempl VideoLAN Windows Defender	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05 12-04-2019 14:08 12-04-2018 14:46	Type A File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol
 Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music old man files Suspicious Videos OneDrive 	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer rempl VideoLAN Windows Defender Windows Defender Advanced Threat Pro	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05 12-04-2019 14:08 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46	Type A File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol
Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music Old man files Suspicious Videos	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer rempl VideoLAN Windows Defender Windows Defender Windows Defender Advanced Threat Pro	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:51 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:51 12-04-2018 14:51 12-04-2018 14:51	Type File fol File fol
 Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music old man files Suspicious Videos OneDrive 	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant Ninternet explorer VideoLAN Windows Defender Windows Defender Windows Mail Windows Mail Windows Media Player	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05 12-04-2019 14:08 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:46	Type A File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol
 Desktop * ^ Downloads * Documents * Pictures * Music old man files Suspicious Videos OneDrive This PC 	Name Common Files COMODO CUAssistant internet explorer rempl VideoLAN Windows Defender Windows Defender Windows Media Player Windows Multimedia Platform	Date modified 12-04-2018 05:08 11-04-2019 13:57 12-04-2019 08:50 12-04-2018 14:46 11-04-2019 17:05 12-04-2019 14:08 12-04-2018 14:46 12-04-2018 14:51 12-04-2018 14:51 12-04-2018 05:08 12-04-2018 14:46	Type File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol File fol

• Navigate to the executable file whose publisher you want to add to the vendor list and click 'Open'.

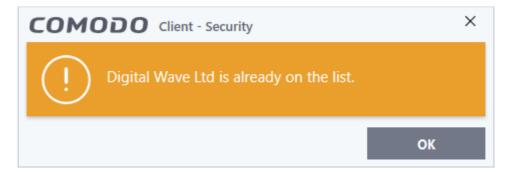
CCS checks that the .exe file is signed by the vendor and counter-signed by a Trusted CA. If so, you can add the vendor to the list by assigning your trust rating'.



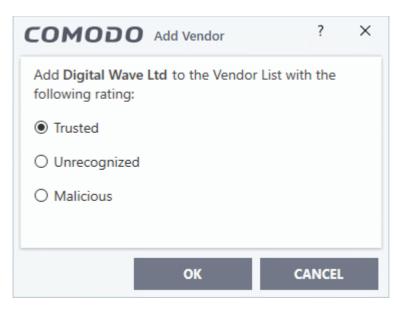


- Choose your rating and click 'OK'
- The vendor will be added to the list with your rating.

If the vendor is already on the list you will be notified:



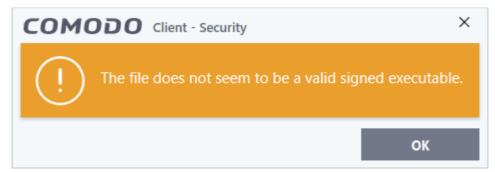
You can assign your own rating to the existing vendor:



- Choose your rating and click 'OK'
- The user rating for the vendor will be assigned as you set.
- If CCS cannot verify that the software certificate is signed by a Trusted CA then it does not add the software



vendor to the vendor list. In this case, you can see the following error message.



Add a trusted vendor from a currently running process

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
- Click the 'Add' button at the top and select 'Read from a Running Process'
- Alternatively, right-click inside the vendor list and select 'Add' > 'Read from a Running Process'

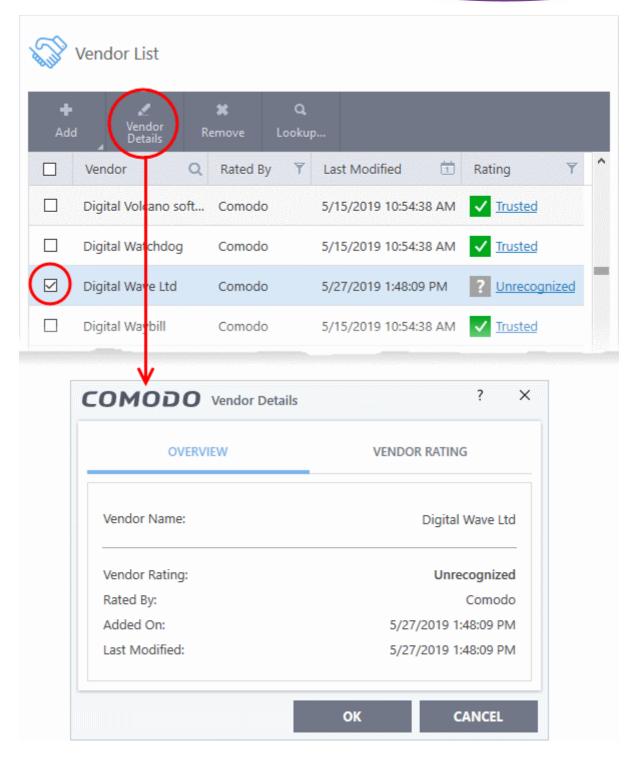
General Settings Vendor List			
Antivirus			
HIPS			
Data Loss Prevention Read from a signed Executable of By	Last Modified	Ō	Ratin
File Rating File Rating	5/15/2019 10:54:	38 AM	✓ <u>1</u>
File Rating Settings ABB S.r.A Comodo	5/15/2019 10:54:	38 AM	V. P
	?	×	
Application	PID		
▲ 💽 csrss.exe	528	^	
▼ 💷 winlogon.exe	592		
✓ I fontdrvhost.exe	724		
▲ III dwm.exe	932		
🔻 🐂 explorer.exe	3580		
MSASCuiL.exe	5920		
	5920 6104		
MSASCuiL.exe			
 MSASCuiLexe browser_assistant.exe 	6104		
 MSASCuiL.exe O browser_assistant.exe MmiPrvSE.exe 	6104 5464		
 MSASCuiL.exe browser_assistant.exe MmiPrvSE.exe wniPrvSE.exe svchost.exe 	6104 5464 1580		
 MSASCuiL.exe browser_assistant.exe WmiPrvSE.exe Im svchost.exe conhost.exe 	6104 5464 1580 2336		
 MSASCuiL.exe browser_assistant.exe WmiPrvSE.exe svchost.exe conhost.exe CpmService.exe 	6104 5464 1580 2336 2292		
 MSASCuiL.exe browser_assistant.exe WmiPrvSE.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe conhost.exe CpmService.exe cis.exe 	6104 5464 1580 2336 2292 3160		
 MSASCuiL.exe browser_assistant.exe WmiPrvSE.exe WmiPrvSE.exe svchost.exe conhost.exe conservice.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe 	6104 5464 1580 2336 2292 3160 5536		
 MSASCuiL.exe browser_assistant.exe WmiPrvSE.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe conhost.exe conhost.exe conservice.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe cis.exe 	6104 5464 1580 2336 2292 3160 5536 3864		

- Select the signed executable that you want to trust and click the 'OK' button.
- Comodo Client Security performs the same certificate check as described above. If the parent application of
 the selected process is signed, you will be able to assign a rating and add the vendor as described above.

View details of vendors and assign user rating

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
- Select a vendor and click the 'Vendor Details' button
- · Alternatively right-click on a vendor and select 'Vendor Details'





The 'Vendor Details' dialog will open. The dialog has two tabs:

- Overview
- Vendor Rating

Overview

The 'Overview' tab shows general details such as the vendor name, Comodo assigned rating, when the vendor was added and more:

OVERVIEW	VENDOR RATING
Vendor Name:	Digital Wave Lto
Vendor Rating:	Unrecognized
Rated By:	Comodo
Added On:	5/27/2019 1:48:09 PN
Last Modified:	5/27/2019 1:48:09 PM

Vendor Rating

The 'Vendor Rating' tab shows the vendor's current trust rating from Comodo and your admin and lets you set your own rating:

COMODO Ve	ndor Details	? X
OVERVIEW		VENDOR RATING
Vendor Rating:		Unrecognized
Provider	Date	Vendor Rating
Administrator		? Unrecognized
User		? Rate Now
Comodo	5/27/2019 1:48:09 PM	? Unrecognized
	ОК	CANCEL

Change the user rating of the file

- Select the vendor from the 'Vendor List' pane and click the 'Vendor Details' button
- Click the 'Vendor Rating' tab from the 'Vendor Details' pane



Click the 'Rate Now' link beside 'User' and choose the rating from the drop-down

OVERVIEW		VENDOR RATING
Vendor Rating:		Unrecognized
Provider	Date	Vendor Rating
Administrator		? Unrecognized
User		Rate Now
Comodo	5/27/2019 1:48:09 PM	7 Trusted Malicious

- Click 'OK'
- The trust rating of the vendor will be updated with the user rating in the 'Vendor List' interface.
- You can change the rating for the vendor at anytime by following the same process

Tip: Alternatively, right click on a selected vendor, then choose 'Change File Rating to' from context sensitive menu and select the rating.

• Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface to save your settings.

Perform an online lookup for vendors

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
- Select vendor(s) and click the 'Look Up...' button
- · Alternatively right-click on a vendor and select 'Look up...'

Comodo servers will be contacted immediately to conduct a search of Comodo's trusted vendor list database to check if any information is available about the vendor in question and the results will be displayed.

COMODO Advance	d Settings	?
General SettingsAntivirus	Vendor List	
✓ HIPS	+ X * Add Vendor Remove	Q Lookup
Containment Data Loss Prevention	Vendor Q Rated By	▼ Last Modified 🗰 Rati
 File Rating 	Via-Vox Ltd Comodo	4/11/2019 1:58:10 PM
File Rating Settings	Viber Media Inc. Comodo	4/11/2019 1:58:10 PM
File Groups	Viber Media S.à r.l. Comodo	4/11/2019 1:58:10 PM
File List		
COMODO Lookup	K	? – 🗆 🗡
100% via-v	fox Ltd	
Vendor	Rating	
Viber Media Inc.	🕑 Trusted	
Via-Vox Ltd	🕑 Trusted	
× CLOSE		SEND TO BACKGROUND

Remove vendors from the list

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home-screen
- Click 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
- Select vendor(s) and click the 'Remove' button
- Alternatively right-click on a vendor and select 'Remove'

Background

Many software vendors digitally sign their software with a code signing certificate. This practice helps end-users to verify:

- i. **Content Source**: The software they are downloading and are about to install *really comes from the publisher that signed it.*
- ii. **Content Integrity**: That the software they are downloading and are about to install *has not be modified or corrupted since it was signed.*

In short, users benefit if software is digitally signed because they know who published the software and that the code hasn't been tampered with. They know they are downloading and installing the genuine software.

The 'Vendors' that digitally sign the software to attest to it's probity are the software publishers. These are the company names you see listed in the first column in the vendor list.

However, companies can't just 'sign' their own software and expect it to be trusted. This is why each code signing certificate is counter-signed by an organization called a 'Trusted Certificate Authority'. 'Sectigo', 'Identrust' and 'Digicert' are examples of trusted CA's authorized to counter-sign 3rd party software. The counter-signature is critical to the trust process, so a CA only counter-signs a certificate after conducting strict background checks on the vendor.

If a file is signed by a vendor with 'Trusted' rating in the vendor list and the user has 'Rate applications according to their vendor rating' in the 'File rating Settings' then it will be automatically trusted by Comodo Client Security.

One way of telling whether an executable file has been digitally signed is checking the properties of the .exe file in question. For example, the main executable for Comodo Client Security is called 'cis.exe', which has been counter-signed by Sectigo certificate authority.

- In short, users benefit if software is digitally signed because they know who published the software and that the code hasn't been tampered with. They know they are downloading and installing the genuine software.
- The 'Vendors' that digitally sign their software are the software publishers. These are the company names you see listed in the vendor list
- However, companies can't just 'sign' their own software and expect it to be trusted. This is why each code signing certificate is counter-signed by an organization called a 'Certificate Authority' (CA).
- 'Sectigo CA Limited' and 'Verisign' are two example CAs who are authorized to counter-sign 3rd party software.
- The counter-signature is critical to the trust process. A CA only counter-signs a certificate after it has conducted detailed background checks on the publisher.
- One of the methods of identifying whether an executable file has been digitally signed is by checking the properties of the .exe file in question.
- For example, the main program executable for Comodo Client Security is called 'cis.exe' and has been digitally signed.
 - Browse to the (default) installation directory of Comodo Client Security.
 - Right click on the file cis.exe.
 - Select 'Properties' from the menu.
 - Click the tab 'Digital Signatures (if there is no such tab then the software has not been signed).

This displays the name of the CA that signed the software as shown below:

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



cis Propert	ies					\times
Security		Deta			Previous Versions	
General Signature li	Compat st	ibility	Cor	modo	Digital Signatures	
	Security	sha1	algorithm		amp ay, November ay, November	
Comodo	Security	sna206		Tueso	ay, November	
					Details	
			ОК	Ca	Apply	

Click the 'Details' button to view certificate details. Click the 'View Certificate' button to inspect the actual code signing certificate. (see below).

gital Signature Detail	5	?	×	Certificate
eneral Advanced				General Details Certification Path
	nature Informatio ignature is OK.	n		Certificate Information
- Signer information - Name:				This certificate is intended for the following purpose(s): • Ensures software came from software publisher
E-mail:	Comodo Security So Not available	olutions, Inc	Z	Protects software from alteration after publication
Signing time:	Tuesday, Novembe	r 8, 2016 10:52:03 PM		* Refer to the certification authority's statement for details.
		View Certificate	2	Issued to: Comodo Security Solutions, Inc
Countersignatures	E-mail address:	Timestamp		Issued by: COMODO RSA Extended Validation Code Signing CA
COMODO SHA-2.	Not available	Tuesday, November	•	Valid from 1/11/2016 to 1/11/2018
		Details		
				Install Certificate Issuer Statement
			ок	
				OK

It should be noted that the example above is a special case in that Comodo, as creator of 'cis.exe', is both the signer of the software and, as a trusted CA, it is also the counter-signer (see the 'Countersignatures' box). In the vast majority of cases, the signer or the certificate (the vendor) and the counter-signer (the Trusted CA) are different.

The Trusted Vendor Program for Software Developers

Software vendors can have their software added to the default 'Vendor List' with 'Trusted' status that is shipped with Comodo Client Security. This service is free of cost and is also open to vendors that have used code signing certificates from any Certificate Authority. Upon adding the software to the vendor list, CCS automatically trusts the software and does not generate any warnings or alerts on installation or use of the software.

The vendors have to apply for inclusion in the vendors list through the sign-up form at http://internetsecurity.comodo.com/trustedvendor/signup.php and make sure that the software can be downloaded by our technicians. Our technicians check whether:

- The software is signed with a valid code signing certificate from a trusted CA;
- The software does not contain any threats that harm a user's PC;

... before adding it to the default vendor list of the next release of CCS.

More details are available at .http://internetsecurity.comodo.com/trustedvendor/overview.php.

7.9. Advanced Protection

The 'Advanced Protection' section allows you to:

- Configure the VirusScope component
- · Specify items you want to exclude from detection during a virus scan
- · Specify types of external devices are to allowed / blocked
- Configure heuristic command line analysis and embedded code detection on files that can execute code
- Configure miscellaneous settings.

Open the 'Advanced Protection' area

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' on the left:



COMODO Advanc	ed Settings	?	- 0
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection VirusScope 	 VirusScope Enable VirusScope This option enables VirusScope subsystem running processes and keeps a record of the Do not show popup alerts This option, when enabled, automatically q activities. Monitor only the applications in the contact This option applies VirusScope monitoring Virtually or Run Restricted. Manage the status of the recognizers installed 	eir activities. uarantines detected threats a ainer only to applications in the co	and reverses their
Scan Exclusions Device Control Script Analysis Miscellaneous Website Filtering	Name recognizerCryptolocker.dll recognizer_v12.0.0.7959.dll	Version 1.17.0.627 12.0.0.7959	Status
		ок	CANCEL

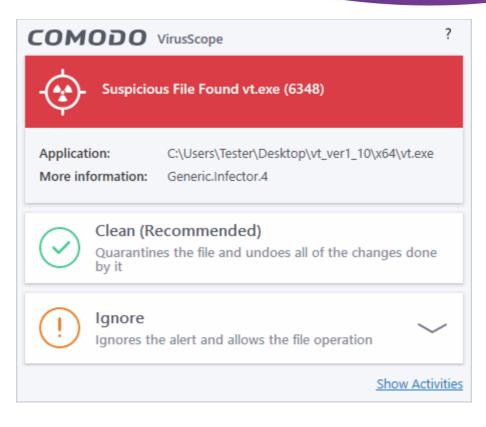
Click the following links to jump to the section you need help with:

- VirusScope Settings Configure VirusScope behavior
- Scan Exclusions Add and manage items that should be ignored during a scan
- Device Control Settings Manage types of external devices like USB drives, and printers that can connect to and are to be blocked
- Script Analysis Manage heuristic command line analysis and embedded code detection
- Miscellaneous Settings Exclude files from buffer overflow monitoring, configure browser alerts, and more

7.9.1. VirusScope Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'VirusScope'
- VirusScope monitors the activities of processes running on your computer and alerts you if they take actions that could threaten your privacy or security.
- VirusScope also allows you to reverse the actions of software without blocking the software itself. This
 provides more flexibility over legitimate software which requires certain actions to be implemented in order
 to run correctly.
- VirusScope alerts give you the opportunity to quarantine the process & reverse its changes, or to let the
 process go ahead.
- Be especially wary if a VirusScope alert appears 'out-of-the-blue' when you have not made any recent changes to your computer.





Open the 'VirusScope' settings section:

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'VirusScope':

COMODO Advanc	ed Settings	?	- 0
 General Settings Antivirus 	- VirusScope		
 Firewall 	✓ Enable VirusScope		
 HIPS 	This option enables VirusScope subsyster running processes and keeps a record of		behavior of
 Containment 	Do not show popup alerts		
 Data Loss Prevention 	This option, when enabled, automatically activities.	quarantines detected threats and	reverses their
 File Rating 	Monitor only the applications in the cor	ntainer	
- Advanced Protection	This option applies VirusScope monitorin Virtually or Run Restricted.	g only to applications in the cont	ainer that are Ru
VirusScope	Manage the status of the recognizers insta	lled on this computer:	
Scan Exclusions	Name	Version	Status
Device Control Script Analysis	recognizerCryptolocker.dll	1.17.0.627	
Miscellaneous	recognizer_v12.0.0.7959.dll	12.0.0.7959	
Website Filtering			
		ок	CANCEL

VirusScope Settings

VirusScope monitors running processes and alerts you to suspicious activity. You then have the option to quarantine the suspicious file and undo its activities.

- Enable VirusScope Activate VirusScope. If enabled, VirusScope monitors the activities of running
 processes and generates alerts if suspicious activity is detected. (*Default = Enabled*)
- Do not show pop-up alerts Whether CCS should show an alert if VirusScope detects suspicious activity.
 (Default = Disabled)
 - If you choose not to show alerts then detected threats are automatically quarantined and their activities are reversed.
- **Monitor only applications in the container** VirusScope only tracks the activities of processes that a running in the container. It will not track processes directly running on the host (*Default = Enabled*)
- Applications can be made to run in the container in two ways:
 - Run a program in the container on a 'one-off' basis. See Run an Application in the Container for more details.
 - Create a rule to auto-contain programs that match certain criteria. See **Auto-Containment Rules** for more details.

Manage the status of recognizers

- VirusScope detects zero-day malware by analyzing the behavior and actions of an application.
- If the detected behavior corresponds to that of known malware, then VirusScope will generate an alert which allows you to quarantine the application and reverse any changes that it made.
- A 'recognizer' file contains the sets of behaviors that VirusScope needs to look out for.



- If you disable a recognizer, VirusScope will no longer show an alert if an application exhibits behavior described by the recognizer.
- We recommend most users to leave the 'Status' of recognizers at their default settings.
- Advanced users, however, may want to try disabling recognizers if they are experiencing a large number of VirusScope false positives.

7.9.2. Scan Exclusions

- Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- The 'Scan Exclusions' panel shows files and paths which you have chosen to skip during a virus scan.
- CCS will not generate an alert for an excluded item, even if the item is rated as malicious in the global blacklist.
- Items may have been added to this list because you selected 'Ignore' at the scan results window, or because you added them to exclusions at an alert.

Open the 'Scan Exclusions' panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment 	Scan Exclusions EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS The virus scanner is going to skip or exclude the files and folders defined below while performing the scan. This setting applies to realtime as well as manual and scheduled scans.
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	+ 2 X Add Edit Remove
 Advanced Protection VirusScope 	Path Q
Scan Exclusions	C:\Program Files\COMODO\COMODO Internet Security*
Script Analysis Miscellaneous Website Filtering	96WINDIR%\Prefetch*.pf
	OK CANCEL

The 'Scan Exclusions' panel has two tabs:

 Excluded Paths - A list of paths/folders/files on your computer which are excluded from real-time, ondemand and scheduled antivirus scans. See 'Exclude Drives/Folders/Files from all types of scans' for more details. • Excluded Applications - A list of applications which are excluded from real-time antivirus scans. Items can be excluded by clicking 'Ignore' in the virus 'Scan Results', or by clicking 'Ignore' at an Antivirus Alert, or by excluding it manually. Note - excluded items are skipped by the real-time scanner but will be scanned during on-demand scans. See 'Exclude Programs/Applications from real-time scans' for more details.

Exclude Drives/Folders/Files from all types of scans

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Paths' tab
- Click the 'Add' button:

Exclusions		
EXCLUDED PATHS	EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS	
	going to skip or exclude the files and folders defined below while . This setting applies to realtime as well as manual and scheduled scans.	
(+) 🖉	*	
Add Edit	Remove	
File Groups 🕨		Q
Files		
Folders		

You can add a:

- File Group
- Drive partition/Folder

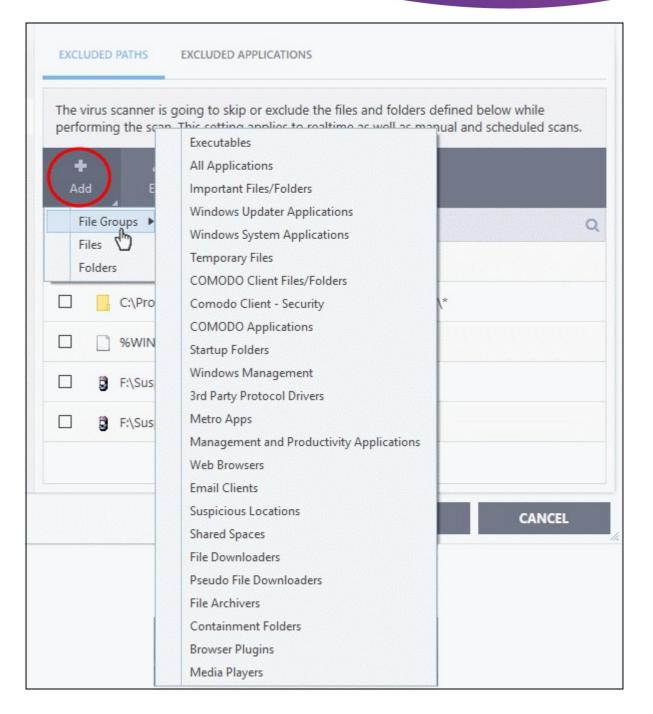
or

• Individual file

Add a File Group

- Choose 'File Groups' to exclude a pre-set category of files or folders. This provides a convenient way to apply a generic ruleset to important files and folders.
- For example, selecting 'Executables' allows you to exclude all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl *\cmd.exe, *.bat, *.cmd.
- Other categories include 'Windows System Applications', 'Windows Updater Applications' and 'Start Up Folders'.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



- CCS ships with a set of predefined file groups which can be viewed in 'Advanced Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Groups'.
- You can also add new file groups as required. See File Groups for more details.

Add new file groups to exclusions

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Click 'Add' > 'File Groups'
- Select the target file group from the list:



٢	Exclusion	S				
EXCLU	UDED PATHS	EXCLU	DED APPLICAT	IONS		
					and folders defined s well as manual a	d below while nd scheduled scans.
+ Ad		<u>e</u> dit	¥ Remove			
	Path					Q
		cycle.Bin\	ŧ			
	C:\Prog	gram Files		OMODO Inte	rnet Security*	
	<u>%WINI</u>	DIR%\Pre	fetch*.pf			
	🔋 F:\Susp	picious file	es\All_tests\IE	-KillConnectio	onsTab.exe	
	🕄 F:\Susp	picious file	es\All_tests\IE	-KillPrograms	Tab.exe	
	🖺 Execut	ables	>			
					ОК	CANCEL

- Repeat the process to add more file groups.
- Items added to the 'Excluded Paths' will be omitted from all types of future Antivirus scans.

Add a Drive Partition/Folder

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Paths' tab
- Click 'Add' > 'Folders'
- Navigate to the drive partition or folder you want to add to excluded paths and click 'OK'.



Exclusion	IS	
EXCLUDED PATHS	EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS	
performing the so	is going to skip or exclude the files and fold can. This setting applies to realtime as well a prowse For Folder	
□ Path	 27bfd58d8041e362ace9d55f66a6c7cd 42c676a6b6641a60136a8a 4108f5ccd23e7699919f 	d ^
🗆 📙 C:\F	> 5905a983d5cda5888543 > 51582d02ddd39d740379	
□ <u></u> %w	All tests CCAV	
☐ 🛱 F:\S	CCAV_configs	✓
□ ĝj F:\S		ncel
Execut	ables	
	0	K CANCEL

The folder/partition will be added to the list of excluded items:



Exclusions			
EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS			
The virus scanner is going to skip or exclude the files and folders defined below while performing the scan. This setting applies to realtime as well as manual and scheduled scans.			
+ 🗶 🗱 Add Edit Remove			
Path Q			
?:\\$Recycle.Bin*			
C:\Program Files\COMODO\COMODO Internet Security*			
□ %WINDIR%\Prefetch*.pf			
F:\CCS Logs*			
OK CANCEL			

• Repeat the process to add more folders. Items added to 'Excluded Paths' will be omitted from all types of antivirus scans in future.

Add an individual file

You can specify individual files as excluded path.

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Paths' tab
- Click 'Add' > 'Files'
- Navigate to the file you want to add to excluded paths and click 'OK'.

٢	Exclusions				
EXCLU	DED PATHS EX	CLUDED APPLICAT	TIONS		
			lude the files and folders def s to realtime as well as manu		5.
+ Add	ی Edit	X Remove			
Fil	es	*			Q
	G Open				
	Look in:	퉬 My Download	s 🔹	· 🌀 🏚 📂 🛄 •	
	œ	Name	*	Date modified	Туре
	Recent Places	싱 DTLiteInstall	er	11/2/2016 8:38 AM	Applicatic
	Desktop				
	Libraries				
	Computer				
	Network	۲			+
		File name: Files of type:	DTLiteInstaller All Files (*.*)	• •	Open Cancel

• The file will be added to excluded paths:



Exclusions
EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS
The virus scanner is going to skip or exclude the files and folders defined below while performing the scan. This setting applies to realtime as well as manual and scheduled scans.
Path Q
F:\CCS Logs*
C:\My Downloads\DTLiteInstaller.exe
OK CANCEL

- Repeat the process to add more paths.
- Items added to 'Excluded Paths' will be omitted from all types of virus scan in the future.

Edit the path of an added item

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Paths' tab
- Select the target item and click 'Edit':



Exclusions
EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS
The virus scanner is going to skip or exclude the files and folders defined below while performing the scan. This setting applies to realtime as well as manual and scheduled scans.
+ Add Edit Remove
Path Q
F:\CCS Logs*
C:\My Downloads\DTLiteInstaller.exe
+
COMODO Edit property ? ×
Edit File Path
C:\My Downloads\DTLiteInstaller.exe
OK CANCEL
OK CANCEL

• Modify the file-path as required and click 'OK'.

Remove an item from 'Excluded Paths'

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Paths' tab
- Select the target item and click 'Remove':



Exclusions
EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS
The virus scanner is going to skip or exclude the files and folders defined below while performing the scan. This setting applies to realtime as well as manual and scheduled scans.
+ Add Edit Remove
Path Q
C+(CCS Logs*
C:\My Downloads\DTLiteInstaller.exe
OK CANCEL

• Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect.

Exclude Programs/Applications from Real-time Scans

- The 'Excluded Applications' screen lets you specify programs which should be skipped by real-time virus scans.
- Applications which you chose to '**Ignore**' in an antivirus alert or in the **Scan Results** window are automatically added to this list.
- You can manually add and remove programs to/from the list as required

Open 'Excluded Applications' pane

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Applications' tab:



COMODO Advance	d Settings ? — 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment 	Scan Exclusions EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS This setting applies to realtime scanning only. The realtime scanner is going to skip all file
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	system activity (e.g. file/folder creation, etc.) from the applications listed below.
 Advanced Protection VirusScope 	Applications Q
Scan Exclusions	
Device Control Script Analysis Miscellaneous	
Website Filtering	
	OK CANCEL

Add an item to excluded applications

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Applications' tab
- Click 'Add' at the top of the 'Excluded Applications' pane.



Settings				?	—		>
Excl	lusions						
EXCLUDED	PATHS E)		TIONS				
		ealtime scanning				all file	
		ealtime scanning /folder creation,				all file	
	ivity (e.g. file, Edit					all file	

You can choose to add an applications by:

- Selecting it from the running processes This option allows you to choose the target application from the list of processes that are currently running on your PC.
- Browsing your computer for the application This option is the easiest for most users and simply allows you to browse to the files which you want to exclude.

Add an application from a running processes

Choose 'Running Processes' from the 'Add' drop-down



EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS		
This setting applies to realtime scanning only. The realti system activity (e.g. file/folder creation, etc.) from the a		
+ <i>≰</i> Add Edit Remove		
Applications	(Q
Running Processes		
C:\WV Downloads\DTLiteInstaller.exe		
\		
COMODO Browse for Processes	?	\times
	212	
Application	PID	
▲ 🧐 VBoxTray.exe	2604	^
 Ø dragon.exe sidebar.exe 	4776	
	2704	
	41.20	
irefox.exe	4136	
 Ø firefox.exe I motepad.exe 	100	
 irefox.exe inotepad.exe iauncher_service.exe 	100 4720	
 irefox.exe inotepad.exe iauncher_service.exe svchost.exe 	100 4720 4656	
 image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: svchost.exe image: svchost.exe 	100 4720 4656 1724	
 image: bit interpretation of the second secon	100 4720 4656 1724 1576	
 image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: svchost.exe image: svchost.exe image: svchost.exe image: svchost.exe image: svchost.exe 	100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568	III
 firefox.exe notepad.exe launcher_service.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe csssrv.exe Ism.exe svchost.exe 	100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568 4672	
 firefox.exe inotepad.exe launcher_service.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe csssrv.exe lsm.exe svchost.exe SearchIndexer.exe 	100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568 4672 3624	II
 firefox.exe notepad.exe launcher_service.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe csssrv.exe csssrv.exe lsm.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe auncher_service.exe launcher_service.exe 	100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568 4672 3624 732	11
 firefox.exe inotepad.exe iauncher_service.exe svchost.exe svchost.exe csssrv.exe csssrv.exe lsm.exe svchost.exe SearchIndexer.exe launcher_service.exe unit_manager.exe 	100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568 4672 3624 732 3356	11
 image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: firefox.exe image: svchost.exe image: svchost.exe<td>100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568 4672 3624 732</td><td>11</td>	100 4720 4656 1724 1576 568 4672 3624 732	11

A list of currently running processes in your computer will be displayed:

• Select the process whose target application you wish to exclude and click 'OK':

The application will be added to 'Excluded Applications'.

Browse to the Application

Choose 'Applications' from the 'Add' drop-down



Exclusion Exclusion	ons			
EXCLUDED PATH	S EXCLUDED	APPLICATIONS		
		canning only. The realtime scar eation, etc.) from the applicatio		all file
+ Add	🗶 🗙 Edit Rem			
Applications Running Pro				Q
G Open	4			-x
Look in:	🎉 My Download	s 🗸	G 🌶 🖻 🛄 -	
Ca	Name	*	Date modified	Туре
Recent Places	😡 DTLiteInstall	er	11/2/2016 8:38 AM	Applicatic
Desktop				
Libraries				
Computer				
() Network	•	m		•
INELWOIK	File name:	DTLiteInstaller	•	Open
	Files of type:	Applications (*.exe)	•	Cancel

• Navigate to the file you want to exclude and click 'Open'.



Exc	lusions			
EXCLUDED	PATHS EX		ATIONS	
			ng only. The realtime scanner is going to skip all file a, etc.) from the applications listed below.	
+ Add	Edit	X Remove		
E Ap	plications			Q
. 4	C:\My Down	oads\DTLiteIns	staller.exe	

• Repeat the process to add more items. Excluded items will be skipped from future real-time scans.

Edit the path of the application added to 'Excluded Applications'

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Applications' tab
- Select the application and click 'Edit' at the top.
- Make required changes to the file path in the 'Edit Property' dialog.



🗊 Scan Ex	Clus	ons								
EXCLUDED PATH	s	EXCLU	DED APPLIC	CATIONS						
This setting app activity (e.g. file								ng to skip a	ll file sys	tem
+ Add	Edit)	X Remove							
Applica	tions									C
🗆 🗋 %Sy	stemR	oot%\	System32	\Search	Indexer.e	xe				
🗹 🗑 C:\P	rograi	n Files	(x86)\Eve	rnote\E	vernote\I	Evernote.ex	e			
СС	M	סס	O Edit	propert	ty			?	×	
Edit	File P	ath								
C:\{	progra	m File	5 (x86)\Ev	ernote\	Evernote	\Evernote.	exe			
						ОК		CANC	F 1	

Click 'OK' to save your changes

Remove an item from the Excluded Applications

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Scan Exclusions'
- Open the 'Excluded Applications' tab
- Select the item and click 'Remove' at the top:



Exclusions	
EXCLUDED PATHS EXCLUDED APPLICATIONS	
This setting applies to realtime scanning only. The realtime scanner is going to skip all file system activity (e.g. file/folder creation, etc.) from the applications listed below.	
+ Add Edit Remove	
☑ Applications	Q
C:\My Downloads\DTLiteInstaller.exe	

• Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' dialog for your settings to take effect.

7.9.3. Device Control Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- The 'Device Control' panel lets you specify types of external devices that are to be blocked and define exclusions to it

Open the Device Control panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'



COMODO Advanc	ed Settings	? — 🗆 X
 General Settings Antivirus 	Device Control	
✓ Firewall	Enable Device Control	
✓ HIPS	This option blocks devices of a client o Bluetooth devices, printers, serial and	computer from accessing, such as USB drives, I parallel ports.
✓ Containment	☑ Log detected devices	
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Show notifications when devices are	e being disabled or enabled
✓ File Rating	BLOCKED DEVICES EXCLUSIONS	
 Advanced Protection 	Use this table to manage the list of device	ces to which you want to block access.
VirusScope		
Scan Exclusions	🕂 🖌 💥 Add Edit Remove	
Device Control	Device	Q Identification
Script Analysis		
Miscellaneous		
Website Filtering		
		OK CANCEL

- Enable Device Control Activate the device control functionality to selectively prohibit access to external devices. You should specify devices to be banned in the 'Blocked Devices' pane. (Default = Enabled)
- Log Detected Devices CCS logs events like connection attempts of external devices (Default = Enabled)
- Show Notifications when devices are being disabled or enabled CCS displays an alert whenever an external device is connected or disconnected.(*Default = Disabled*)
- Blocked Devices List of external device classes which are not allowed to connect to the endpoint. Example classes include 'USB Storage Devices', 'CD/DVD Drives', 'BlueTooth Devices' and 'Firewire Devices'.
- **Exclusions** Add exceptions to a blocked class. For example, if you wish block the class 'USB Devices' but wish to allow access for your company's authentication tokens, then you should add those USB tokens as exceptions.

Click the following links for more information on blocked devices and exclusions:

- Block devices
- Specify exclusions

Block Devices

You can specify devices to be blocked in three ways:

- Select device classes
- Select from currently connected devices
- Specify custom devices

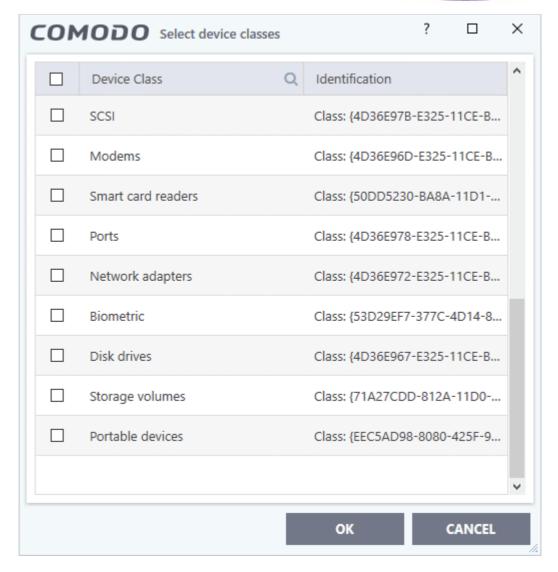


Block a device class

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- Open the 'Blocked Devices' tab then click the 'Add' button
- Click 'Add device class' from the options:

Devi	ce Contro	l			
Enable D	evice Contre	ol			
		vices of a client c inters, serial and j		om accessing, such a s.	s USB drives,
🗹 Log deteo	ted devices				
Show not	ifications w	hen devices are	being disal	bled or enabled	
Use this tab	e to manage	the list of device	s to which y	ou want to block a	cess.
+	/	~			
+ Add	 Edit	X Remove			
Ada devi Ada exist		¥ Remove	٩	Identification	
Ada devi Ada exist	ce class ting device	* Remove	٩	Identification	
Ada devi Ada exist	ce class ting device	* Remove	Q	Identification	

- Choose the device class you wish to block.
 - For example, to block all USB devices that are plugged to your computer, select "Portable devices" from the list
 - If you want to exclude any specific device from this class, enter the device name in the exclusion list.



- Select the device(s) you wish to block
- Click 'OK' in the screen and again 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface.

Select devices from currently connected devices

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- Open the 'Blocked Devices' tab then click the 'Add' button
- · Click 'Add existing device' from the options

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



\dd	device class existing device custom device	Q Identification
10	NODO Select devices	? 🗆 ×
	Device Name Q	Identification
	🗈 🗄 Human interface devices	Class: {745A17A0-74D3-11D0-B
	🗈 🗄 IDE ATA/ATAPI controllers	Class: {4D36E96A-E325-11CE-BF
	🗈 🗄 CD/DVD drives	Class: {4D36E965-E325-11CE-BF
	🗈 🗄 SCSI	Class: {4D36E97B-E325-11CE-BF
	🗂 🗄 Network adapters	Class: {4D36E972-E325-11CE-BF
	🗈 🗄 Disk drives	Class: {4D36E967-E325-11CE-BF
	🗈 🗄 Storage volumes	Class: {71A27CDD-812A-11D0-B

- Choose the device class you wish to block. For example, Network adaptor devices, CD/DVD drives, Storage devices or Disk drives.
- Click the '+' sign of the class to which your device belongs
- Select the device(s) you wish to block
- Click 'OK' and again click 'OK' in the 'Device Control' panel to save your settings.

Specify a custom devices to be blocked

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- Open the 'Blocked Devices' tab then click the 'Add' button



Click 'Add custom device' from the options

•

+ 🔏	X Remove	
Add device class		Q Identification
Add existing device Add custom device	es	Class: {8A63AD27-0CD7-4F43-B8E1-07
] USB Input Device		USB\VID_80EE&PID_0021\5&18F54CB.
	DO Add custom dev D (e.g. USBSTOR*)	vice ? ×
	D (e.g. 030310K*)	VCEL

• Enter the device ID and click 'OK'

Specify exclusions

The 'Exclusions' tab lets you allow access to specific devices that fall within a blocked device class.

You can specify the exceptions in two ways:

- Select from currently connected devices
- Specify a custom device

Add exclusions from currently connected devices

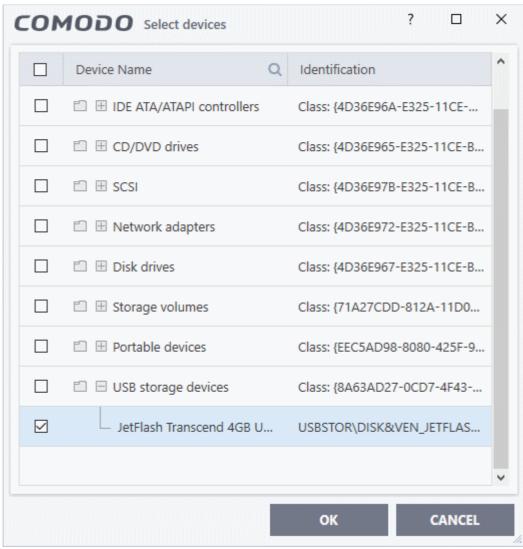
You need to add the device to the exclusion list before blocking the device class.

- · Make sure the external device is connected to the computer
- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- Open the 'Exclusions' tab then click the 'Add' button



devices, printers, seria	i and parallel	ports.				
☑ Log detected devices						
Show notifications when devices are being disabled or enabled						
BLOCKED DEVICES EXCLUSIONS						
Use this table to manage	the list of dev	lices to which yo	ou want to allow access.			
+ & Edit	🗶 Remove					
Add existing device		Q	Identification			
Add custom-device						

• Select 'Add existing device' from the options





- Click the '+' sign of the class to which your device belongs
- Select the device(s) you wish to exclude
- Click 'OK' in the screen and again 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface.

Add custom device to be excluded

- You can also add exclusions by specifying the device lds.
- For example, you want to block all USB storage devices apart from the type of SANDISK devices used by your company, you could specify a device exclusion ID of 'USBSTOR\DISK&VEN_SANDISK\4C5310*'.
- You can also use the wildcard character ' * ' to cover a range of devices

Specify custom devices to be excluded

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- Open the 'Exclusions' tab then click the 'Add' button
- Select 'Add custom device' from the options

se this table	e to manage the list of devices to which you want to allow access.
+ Add	Edit Remove
-	ng device Q Identification
Add custo	om device
	COMODO Add custom device ? ×
	Enter device ID (e.g. USBSTOR*)

- Enter the unique device identifier in the 'Device ID' field, for example to exclude all USB storage devices whose device IDs start with "4C5310", you could enter: USBSTOR\DISK&VEN_SANDISK\4C5310*
- Click 'OK' in the screen and again 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface.

7.9.4. Script Analysis Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis'
- The script analysis settings panel lets you:



- Configure heuristic command line analysis for applications in real-time
- Configure heuristic command line analysis for auto-run entries. Auto-run entries include Windows services, auto-start items and scheduled tasks.

Background note: 'Heuristics' is a technology which analyzes a file to see if it contains code typical of a virus. Heuristics is about detecting 'virus-like' traits in a file. This helps to identify previously unknown (new) viruses.

Open the 'Script Analysis' settings panel

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis'

 General Settings 	T Scrip	ot Analysis					
 Antivirus 							
 Firewall 		Script Analy				7	
✓ HIPS				ted scripts to er records will t		J KB o free up space.	
 Containment 							
 Data Loss Prevention 	RUNTIME DE	ETECTION	AUTORUNS SC	AN			
 File Rating 	Manage the	e list of applic	ations for whi	ch you would li	ike to perfo	rm script analysis before	
	Sector Contraction of Contractor Contractor						
 Advanced Protection 	execution.						
 Advanced Protection VirusScope 	execution.	Edit	X Remove	C) Reset to Default			
	+ Add		Remove	Reset to	Analysis E	mbedded Code Detectio	n '
VirusScope	+ Add	Edit	Remove	Reset to Default	Analysis E	mbedded Code Detectio	n (
VirusScope Scan Exclusions	+ Add	Edit	Remove	Reset to Default	Analysis E	mbedded Code Detectio	n
VirusScope Scan Exclusions Device Control	Add	Edit	Remove	Reset to Default	Analysis E	mbedded Code Detectio	on f
VirusScope Scan Exclusions Device Control Script Analysis	Add	Edit	Remove	Reset to Default	Analysis E	mbedded Code Detectio	on f

- **Perform Script Analysis (Recommended)** Enable / disable script analysis of managed applications (*Default = Enabled*)
 - Limit the total size of saved detected scripts to 'N' KB CCS stores the list of executing scripts that
 are run by the managed applications for analysis. This options allows you to specify the total size of the
 stored scripts. When the set limit is reached, the older scripts are deleted automatically.

The interface has two tabs:

- Runtime Detection
- Autoruns Scans

Runtime Detection

CCS performs heuristic analysis on certain programs because they are capable of executing code. Example programs are wscript.exe, cmd.exe, java.exe and javaw.exe. Example code includes Visual Basic scripts and Java



applications.

- For example, the program wscript.exe can be made to execute Visual Basic scripts (.vbs file extension) via a command similar to 'wscript.exe c:\tests\test.vbs'.
- If this option is selected, CCS detects c:\tests\test.vbs from the command-line and applies all security
 checks based on this file. If test.vbs attempts to connect to the internet, for example, the alert will state
 'test.vbs' is attempting to connect to the internet
- If this option is disabled, the alert would only state 'wscript.exe' is trying to connect to the internet'.
- Relevant settings are applied to the scripts. For example, if a script is detected by the containment module, then auto-containment rules are applied. Each module (AV, FW, VirusScope and so on) that detects a script will apply its appropriate settings.

COMODO Advanced	d Settings			? — 🗆	×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	When reaching the set	saved detected scripts limit, the older records w AUTORUNS SCAN	ill be deleted t		
 Advanced Protection VirusScope 	Add Edit	¥ Cr Remove Reset to Default			
Scan Exclusions Device Control Script Analysis	Application Q winhlp32.exe	Heuristic Command-Li	ne Analysis	Embedded Code Detection	î
Miscellaneous Website Filtering	'\WScript.exe '\cscript.exe				
					~

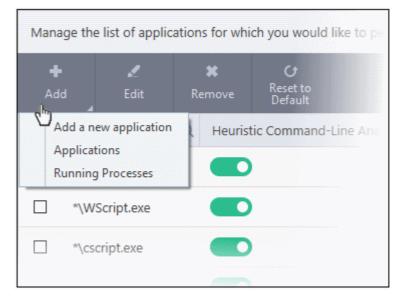
Runtime Detection - Column Descriptions				
Column Header	Description			
Application	Names of existing applications covered by this rule			
Heuristic Command-Line Analysis	Enable or disable command line tracking			
Embedded Code Detection	Enable or disable embedded code tracking			

Manually add a new application to the list for analysis



Click 'Add' at the top

•



You can add an application by following methods:

- Add a new application
- Add a current application
- Add application from the currently running processes

Add a new application

Г

- Click 'Add new application' from the 'Add' drop-down
- Enter the file path in the 'Edit Property' dialog and click 'OK'

+ Lodit	¥ C+ Remove Reset to Default	
Add a new application	Heuristic Command-Line Analysis	Embedded Code Detection
Applications Running Processes		
*\WScript.exe		
сомо	DO Edit property	? ×
Edit applicat	ion's name	
*\bat.exe		
	ОК	CANCEL

The application will be added and displayed in the list.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



+ Add	۲ Edit	🗶 Remove	Cf Reset to Default		
	Application	Q Heu	ristic Command-Line Analysis	Embedded Code Detection	•
	*\pythonw.exe		D		
	*\autoit3.exe		D		
	*\autoit3_x64.exe		D		
~	*\bat.exe		D		

• Click "OK" to apply your settings

Add a current application

- Click 'Add' then 'Applications' from the drop-down
- · Navigate to the file you want to add in the 'Open' dialog and click 'Open'
- The file will be added to the list
- Click "OK" to apply your settings

Add a currently running processes

- Choose 'Running Process' from the 'Add' drop-down
- A list of currently running processes in your computer will be displayed
- Select the process whose parent application you wish to add for analysis
- Click 'OK' from the 'Browse for Process' dialog
- · The application will be added to the list
 - Use the slider beside the applications to enable/disable them for analysis.
 - Click the 'Edit' button to update the details of an application.
 - To remove an application, select it from the list and choose 'Remove' at the top.
 - To reset to default applications for analysis, click 'Reset to Default' at the top.
- Click 'OK' at the bottom to apply your changes.

Autoruns Scans

- Add and manage applications for which you want to perform heuristic command-line analysis and embedded code detection in order to protect Windows services, autostart items and scheduled tasks.
- CCS ships with a list of predefined applications for which it performs heuristic analysis on programs that are capable of executing code.
- The applications added here are applicable for the settings in:
 - 'Scan Options' > 'Apply this action to suspicious autorun processes' (monitors only during on-



demand scans)

 'Advanced Settings' > 'Miscellaneous' > 'Apply the selected action to unrecognized autorun entries related to new/modified registry items' (monitors constantly)

Open the 'Autoruns Scans' interface

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen.
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis'

 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	✓ Perform Script Analysis ✓ Perform Script Analysis (Recommended) Limit the total size of saved detected scripts to 100 KB When reaching the set limit, the older records will be deleted to free up space. RUNTIME DETECTION AUTORUNS SCAN Manage the list of applications for which you would like to perform script analysis to Windows services, autostart items and scheduled tasks.	protect
 Advanced Protection VirusScope 	+ ∠ X C Add Edit Remove Reset to Default	
Scan Exclusions Device Control	Application Q Heuristic Command-Line Analysis Embedded Code Der *\winhlp32.exe	tection
Script Analysis Miscellaneous	*\WScript.exe	
Website Filtering	*\cscript.exe	

Autroruns Scans - Column Descriptions				
Column Header	Description			
Application	Names of existing applications covered by this rule			
Heuristic Command-Line Analysis	Enable or disable command line tracking			
Embedded Code Detection	Enable or disable embedded code tracking			

To manually add a new application to the list for analysis

• Click 'Add' at the top



-	ne list of applic tems and scheo		ch you would	l like to perform
+ Add	ي Edit	X Remove	Cr Reset to Default	
Applic	new application ations ng Processes	A Heuris	tic Command	d-Line Analysis
□ *\\	VScript.exe)	
*\0	script.exe)	

You can add an application by following methods:

- Add a new application
- Add a current application
- Add application from the currently running processes

Add a new application

- Click 'Add new application' from the 'Add' drop-down
- Enter the file path in the 'Edit Property' dialog and click 'OK'

RUNTIME DETECTION	AUTORUNS SCAN	
Manage the list of ap autostart items and s	plications for which you would like to perform scrip cheduled tasks.	t analysis to protect Windows services,
+ &	Remove Reset to Default	
Add a new applica	tion 🚽 Heuristic Command-Line Analysis	Embedded Code Detection
Applications Running Processe		
*\WScript.ex	COMODO Edit property	? ×
*\cscript.exe	Add a new application	
	*\bat.exe	
	0	K CANCEL

The application will be added and displayed in the list.



RUNTIME	DETECTION	AUTORUNS SCA	NN				
	the list of appli items and sch		h you would	like to perform so	cript analysis to protect W	indows services,	
+ Add	لا Edit	X Remove	C Reset to Default				
	pplication	Q Heurist	ic Command	-Line Analysis	Embedded Code	Detection	^
*\	powershell_ise	.exe 💽					
*\	regasm.exe						
	bat.exe					>	
							~
					ок	CANCEL	

Click "OK" to apply your settings

Add an application

- Click 'Add' then 'Applications' from the drop-down
- Navigate to the executable file you want to add in the 'Open' dialog and click 'Open'
- The file will be added to the list
- Click "OK" to apply your settings

Add a currently running process

- Choose 'Running Process' from the 'Add' drop-down
- A list of currently running processes in your computer will be displayed
- · Select the process whose parent application you wish to add for analysis
- Click 'OK' from the 'Browse for Process' dialog
- The application will be added to the list
 - Use the slider beside the applications to enable/disable them for analysis.
 - Click the 'Edit' button to update the details of an application.
 - To remove an application, select it from the list and choose 'Remove' at the top.
 - To reset to default applications for analysis, click 'Reset to Default' at the top.
- Click 'OK' at the bottom to apply your changes.

7.9.5. Miscellaneous Settings

- Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous'
- The miscellaneous settings panel lets you:
 - Configure protection against shellcode injections (buffer overflow attacks)
 - Skip automatic cleanup of suspicious certificates.
 - Configure protection settings for auto-start entries and scheduled tasks



Open 'Miscellaneous' settings:

- Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous'

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? – 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection VirusScope Scan Exclusions Device Control Script Analysis Miscellaneous Website Filtering 	Settings Miscellaneous Do not detect shellcode injections in these applications Do not automatically clean up suspicious certificates Autorun Protection Apply the selected action to unrecognized autorun entries related to new/modified registry items: Ignore • When this option is enabled, the registry will be monitored for modifications and the selected action will be applied to detected unrecognized Windows services, autostart entries or scheduled tasks. Apply the selected signature level while monitoring processes launched and DLLs loaded on early system start. AUTHENTICODE • The option enables to select the range of signature types that during monitoring will be considered trusted and therefore the associated processes and files will be allowed to run.
	OK CANCEL

This interface allows you to:

- Disable shellcode injection detection for certain applications
- Skip automatically clean-up of suspicious certificates
- · Define actions to be taken on unrecognized auto-start entries/scheduled tasks
- Specify the signature level for monitoring processes launched and DLL's loaded during system start-up
- Enable or disable monitoring DLL files loaded to memory by currently running processes

Disable shellcode injection detection

By default, protection against shellcode injection is enabled for all applications on your computer. Use this setting to define applications which you **do not** want to monitor for shellcode injections.

Background:

- Shellcode injection is a malicious technique which allows an attacker to cause a buffer overflow on your system.
- A buffer is an area of memory designed to hold a specific amount of data. A buffer overflow occurs when a process stores data beyond the boundaries of this fixed-length buffer.
- · The result is that the extra data overwrites adjacent memory locations. The overwritten data may include



other buffers, variables and program flow data.

 Malware can deliberately cause buffer overflows in order to run malicious code or make the program operate incorrectly.

Exclude certain applications from shellcode injection protection

- Make sure 'Don't detect shellcode injections in these applications' is enabled then click the 'these applications' link. The 'Manage Exclusions' dialog appears.
- Click the 'Add' button at the top

You can add items by selecting the required option from the drop-down:

neral Settings tivirus	Miscellaneous	
ewall	☑ Don't detect shellcode injections in a standard shell a	n these applications
сомоао	Manage Exclusions	? 🗆 X
	Manage Exclusions	es related to
	🗶 🗶 ల	for modificat
Add E	dit Remove Purge	or scheduled
File Groups	Executables	Q
V Files	All Applications Windows Updater Applications	
Folders	Windows Custom Applications	
Running Proce	sses Windows Management	
	3rd Party Protocol Drivers	
s	Metro Apps	
	Email Clients	
	File Archivers	
	Temporary Files	
	Shared Spaces	
	File Downloaders	
	Suspicious Locations	
	Containment Folders	
	Pseudo File Downloaders	
	Web Browsers	

- File Groups Select a category of pre-set files or folders. For example, 'Executables' lets you create a ruleset for all files with the extensions .exe .dll .sys .ocx .bat .pif .scr .cpl, *cmd.exe *.bat, *.cmd. Other categories available include 'Windows System Applications', 'Windows Updater Applications', 'Start Up Folders' etc. See File Groups, for more details on file groups.
- Running Processes Select an application or executable from the processes that are currently running on your PC.

- Folders Specify a folder on your computer to include all files in the folder to the exclusions .
- Files Select a specific executable file you wish to add to the exclusions.

Click 'OK' to implement your settings.

Do not automatically cleanup suspicious certificates

- Choose whether or not to delete any root certificates that were not signed by a trusted certificate authority.
- By default, CCS warns you if any fake root certificates are found in your browsers but does not delete them.
- Disable this option if you want CCS to delete those fake certificates whenever they are found

Background:

- SSL certificates are used by websites to encrypt the connection between your browser and their webserver.
- This ensures nobody can intercept the traffic sent between you and the site. All information sent from your browser to the site is private. This is especially important for sensitive transactions like online payments, where you send your credit card information over the internet.
- You can tell a site is using an SSL certificate by the padlock icon in the browser address bar.
- SSL certificates are issued to website owners by an organization known as a 'Certificate Authority' (CA). The CA checks that the applicant owns the website in question, and is a legitimate business.
- Once these checks have been passed, the CA will sign the applicant's certificate with what is known as a 'root certificate'. You should only trust websites whose certificates have been signed by the root certificate of a trusted CA.
- These trusted root certificates are embedded in your browser (Firefox, Chrome, Edge etc). Your browser checks that the SSL certificate on a site is signed by a trusted root each and every time you visit the site.
- A fake root certificate would, therefore, bypass this check of legitimacy. It could tell you to trust a website run by a hacker.
- CCS can detect and remove fake root certificates from the endpoint during on-demand and scheduled scans. Disable 'Do not automatically cleanup suspicious certificates' to activate this feature.

Define actions to be taken on unrecognized auto-start entries/scheduled tasks

- Apply the selected action to unrecognized autorun entries related to new / modified registry items -Specify what CCS should do if applications added to Script Analysis > Autoruns Scans try to create or modify one of the following registry items:
 - Windows services
 - Auto-start entries
 - Scheduled tasks

The available options are:

- Ignore CCS does not take any action (*Default*)
- Terminate CCS stops the process / service
- **Terminate and Disable** Auto-run processes are stopped and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.
- **Quarantine and Disable** The application is quarantined and the corresponding auto-start entry is removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.

Background:

- CCS can perform heuristic command-line analysis and embedded code detection in order to protect Windows services, autostart items and scheduled tasks.
- · CCS ships with a list of predefined applications for which it performs heuristic analysis on programs that



are capable of executing code.

 You can also add programs for which you want CCS to perform heuristics analysis in 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis' > 'Autoruns Scan'. See Autoruns Scans in Script Analysis Settings for more details on this.

Monitor processes and DLLs loaded at start up:

- You can instruct CCS to identify untrusted DLLs, apps, portable executables (PE) and autoruns launched before CCS starts on the endpoint. These may expose the endpoint to a danger if those items turn to be malicious.
- By default, CCS does not monitor these items.
- CCS checks whether startup items are signed by a trusted authority and marks them as trusted or untrusted. The flag is used at next restart to allow or block the item.

Apply the selected signature level...loaded on early system start - Choose how strict the certificate check should be:

	or scheddled tasks.
otrol alvsis	Apply the selected signature level while monitoring processes launched and DLLs loaded on early system start.
	MICROSOFT elect the range of signature types that during monitoring will be therefore allowed to run.
	AUTHENTICODE

- Microsoft Only items signed by Microsoft certificates are marked as trusted
- Antimalware Trusts files signed by either Microsoft or Antimalware certificates
- Authenticode Flags all signed files as trusted

Monitor DLL files loaded by currently running processes

• By default, CCS does not monitor the DLL files loaded to system memory, by processes that are currently running on the endpoint.

Monitor DLL files being loaded by running processes - If enabled, CCS runs a file rating scan on each DLL loaded to identify its trust rating.

- The trust rating is reported to Endpoint Manager and added to local logs. Files with an Unrecognized' rating are submitted to Valkyrie for analysis.
- You can view these details at 'Security Sub-Systems' > 'Application Control'.
- See https://help.comodo.com/topic-399-1-786-10102-Manage-File-Trust-Ratings-on-Windows-Devices.html for more details.

Click 'OK' to save your settings.

7.10. Web Filter Settings

- The web filter section lets you set up rules to allow or block access to specific websites.
- Rules can be created for particular users of your computer, which makes this feature very useful for both home and work environments. For example, parents can block juvenile users from visiting inappropriate websites, and companies can prevent employees from visiting leisure sites during working hours.



• You can also log when a user tries to visit a site blocked by a rule.

Open the website filtering section

- Click 'Settings' at the top-left of the CCS home screen to open the advanced settings interface
- Click 'Website Filtering' on the left and choose the 'Rules' tab

COMODO Advance	d Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment 	Website Filtering Filtering (Recommended) This option enables firewall to filter web sites according to the below. RULES CATEGORIES	e rules and	d profiles (defined	
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection 	+ 2 * t + Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down Image: Contract of the second sec				
Website Filtering	Rules Q Enable Allowed Sites Image: Constraint of the second seco	Kule			
	ОК		CA	NCEL	

Overview:

- You add websites to a category, then add the category to a rule.
 - A rule targets one or more website categories.
 - A category is a collection of one or more websites.
 - A 'website' can be a full URL, a text string, or a text string with a wildcard character (*)
- You must set a rule to be 'Allow' or 'Block', and must specify the users to which it applies.

Categories

- CCS ships with six preset categories of websites which can be added to rules that you create. The
 categories are: Safe, Suspicious, Phishing, Malware, Malicious and PUA (sites that host potentially
 unwanted applications).
- The other two categories, 'Exclusions' and 'Blocked', are empty by default and let you specify sites that should be allowed or blocked. You can add sites to 'Exclusions' if you want to access a site blocked by

another category.

Rules

- CCS also ships with two predefined rules, 'Allowed Sites' and 'Blocked sites', both of which are modifiable.
- The 'Blocked Sites' rule will prevent access to sites in the 'Comodo defined Malware sites' and 'Comodo defined Phishing Sites' categories. If you wish, you can add other categories to this rule to expand its coverage.
- The 'Allowed Sites' rule will permit access to websites in the Comodo 'Safe Sites' and 'Exclusions' categories.

Set up a new rule

- Click the 'Rules' tab
- Click 'Add' then name your rule
- Add categories to the rule
- Specify users to whom the rule should apply
- Specify whether the rule should be 'Allow' or 'Block'

The 'Website Filtering' panel has two sections:

- **Rules** Define rules for website filtering and assign to required users. See 'Website Filtering Rules' for more details.
- Categories Define categories of websites to be allowed or blocked in website filtering rules. See 'Website Categories' for more details.

General Advice:

- It is the 'Categories' section where you specify the sites you want to block or allow, not the 'Rules' section. Rules are for specifying target users, and specifying whether a site-category should be allowed or blocked.
- If you want to filter specific websites, you need to create your own category.
- See 'Website Categories' for more help on this.

7.10.1. Website Filtering Rules

- The powerful rule-configuration interface lets you create rules which are as sweeping or as granular as you require. Rules can be created on a per-user basis, allowing you to control exactly which websites certain people can or cannot visit. You can also disable or enable a rule as required at any time.
- Comodo Firewall implements rules in the order they are in this list. Should a conflict exist between individual rules, then the rules at the top takes priority. Click the 'Move Up' or 'Move Down' buttons at the top to change a rule's priority.

Open the website filtering rules section

- · Click 'Settings' at the top left of the CCS home screen to open the advanced settings interface
- · Click 'Website Filtering' on the left and choose the 'Rules' tab

COMODO Advanced	1 Settings	?	-		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment 	 Website Filtering Enable Website Filtering (Recommended) This option enables firewall to filter web sites according to the below. 	e rules and	d profile:	s defined	1
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 	RULES CATEGORIES + 2 X 1				
Advanced Protection Website Filtering	Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down				
	Allowed Sites Blocked Sites				
	ок		C.	ANCEL	

- The enable rule switch allows you to turn a rule on or off.
- The check-boxes next to a rule name let you select it for editing, deleting or re-prioritizing.
- Click the magnifying glass icon to search for a specific rule in the list.

The rules interface allows you to:

- Create new website filtering rules
- Edit existing rules
- Remove unwanted rules
- Change priority of the rules

Create a new Website Filtering rule

- 1. Open the website filtering panel by clicking 'Settings' from the CCS home screen and then select 'Website Filtering' from the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- 2. Click the 'Add' button at the top.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



V	Website	COMODO Web	site Filtering Rule					? 0	×
🗹 Ena	ble Web	Name:							
Th	iis option e low.	Categories							
RULES	CATE	+ X Add Remove							
Ad		Category Name				Q			
	Rules								
	Allowed								
	Safe site								
	Blocked	Restrictions							
		+ X Add Remove							
		Users	Q	Restrictions	Logging				
							ОК	CAN	EL.

- 3. Enter a name for your new filter.
- 4. Select the categories that should be added to the filter:
 - Click the 'Add' button from the 'Category' pane

сомо	O Website Filtering Rule	?		×
Name:	COMODO Categories	?		×
Categories	Categories			Q
(-+)	L Exclusions			
Add	Blocked			
Cat	PUA			
	Malicious			
	🕭 Malware			
Restriction	Phishing			
+	Suspicious			
Add	C Safe			
Use				
	ок	(ANCEL	
	UK		CANCE	

Select a category and click 'OK' to add it to your rule. Repeat the process to add more categories.

The 'Categories' window contains a list of pre-defined Comodo categories and any user created categories. Comodo categories cannot be modified.

- **Exclusions** Websites you have decided to trust and allow connections to for the current session and future sessions.
- Blocked Websites you have decided not to trust and deny connections.
- **PUA Sites** Sites that host 'Potentially Unwanted Applications' (PUA). While not strictly speaking malware, a PUA is a piece of software that has functionality that may not have been made clear to a user. An example is a browser toolbar which tells you the weather forecast, but which also tracks your online activity.
- Malicious Sites Sites that are known to host or contain links to malware, malicious scripts or deceptive content. These are intended to cause damage to your computer or steal personal data.
- Malware Sites The URL leads to a direct malware download. Malware is designed to damage your computer, steal sensitive information or gain unauthorized access to your system.

•



- **Phishing Sites** Fake copies of popular banking, shopping and social media websites that intend to steal customer data.
- Suspicious Sites Sites which have shown strong evidence of suspicious behavior but have not yet hosted content which would warrant placing them in the 'Malware' or 'Malicious' categories. Users are advised to be on high alert should they visit these sites.
- Safe Sites Websites that are considered safe according to the global whitelist.

See **Website Categories**, for more details on creating and modifying user specified categories.

- 5. Add 'Users' or 'User Groups' to whom the rule should be applied:
 - Click the 'Add' button from the 'Restrictions' pane. The 'Select User or Group' dialog will appear:

User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types	
From this location:		
DESKTOP-RVN7U18	Locations	
Enter the object name to select (examples):		
er l	Check Names	
Advanced	OK Cancel	
	11	

Enter the object name to select - add users to whom the filter should be applied. Names should be in the format:

<domain name>\<user/group name> OR <user/group name>@<domain name>.

Alternatively, click 'Advanced' then 'Find Now' to locate specific users. Click 'OK' to confirm the addition of the users.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



m this location: SKTOP-RVN7U18 er the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	Object Types Locations Check Names	
er, Group, or Built-in security principal m this location: SKTOP-RVN7U18 er the object name to select (examples):	Locations	
m this location: SKTOP-RVN7U18 er the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	Locations	
er the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):		
	Check Names	
	Check Names	
Advanced		
Advanced		
Advanced OK		
	Cancel	
ect User or Group		×
ect this object type:		
er, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types	
n this location:	<u> </u>	
SKTOP-RVN7U18	Locations	
ommon Queries		
Name: Starte with <	Columns.	
Name: Starts with V		-
Description: Starts with \vee	Find Now	1
Disabled accounts	Stop	
Non expiring password		
	<u>e</u> s	
Days since last logon:	79	
arch results:	OK Cancel	
ne In Folder 🗾 🖌		1
Access Contr DESKTOP-RVN		
Administrator DESKTOP-RVN		
Administrators DESKTOP-RVN		
Backup Oper DESKTOP-RVN		1000
comodo DESKTOP-RVN		
Cryptographic DESKTOP-RVN DefaultAccount DESKTOP-RVN		
Distributed C DESKTOP-RVN		
Event Log Re DESKTOP-RVN		
Event Log Re DESKTOP-RVN		

You next need to specify whether those users should be allowed or blocked from viewing the websites, or whether they should be asked if they want to continue. This is done by modifying the link in the 'Restrictions' column:

- Allow The websites in the categories can be accessed by the user.
- Block The websites in the categories cannot be accessed by the user.



COMODO Client - Security 11					
The page is blocked by COMODO Client - Security 11.					
Contact your system administrator.					

- 6. Use the 'Logging' switch to choose whether or not attempts to access a categorized website are logged.
- 7. Click 'OK' to save your new rule. The new rule will be added to the list of rules under the 'Rules' tab
- 8. Make sure that the rule is enabled using the toggle switch under the 'Enable Rule' column for the rule to take effect.
 - You can disable or enable rules at any time using the switch under the 'Enable Rule' column.

Important Note to Windows 8 and Windows 8.1 users: If you are using Internet Explorer 11 version 11.0.9600.16384, it is mandatory to add the user group 'ALL APPLICATION PACKAGES' to the Restrictions list in addition to the intended users for each rule you create.

If you or other users access websites using Internet Explorer 11 on Windows 8/8.1, then you must add this user group or your rules will have no effect. For example, users will still be able to access blocked websites.

To add 'ALL APPLICATION PACKAGES' to the restrictions list

Click 'Advanced' in the 'Select User or Group' dialog

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



Select Users or Groups						
Select this object type:						
Users, Groups, or Built-in security principals Object Types						
From this location:						
		Locations				
Common Queries						
Name: Starts with V		<u>C</u> olumns				
<u>D</u> escription: Starts with ∀		Find <u>N</u> ow				
Disa <u>b</u> led accounts		Stop				
Days since last logon: 🛛 🗸 🗸		9 7				
Search res <u>u</u> lts:		OK Cancel				
Name	In Folder	^				
Access Control Assistance Opera						
🛃 Administrator	a state and state and state					
Administrators	A state and the second					
ALL APPLICATION PACKAGES						
ANONYMOUS LOGON Authenticated Users Backup Operators BATCH CONSOLE LOGON	(a strang give i sansti give					
CREATOR GROUP		~				

- Click 'Find Now' and select 'ALL APPLICATION PACKAGES' from the list of users and groups displayed in the list at the bottom
- Click 'OK'

Restr	ictions		
	Users	Restrictions	Logging Q
	ALL APPLICATION PACKA.	Block	

Edit existing rules

- 1. Open the 'Website Filtering' Panel by clicking 'Settings' from the CCS home screen and then 'Website Filtering' from the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- 2. Choose the website filtering rule to be edited under the 'Rules' tab by selecting the checkbox beside the rule.
- 3. Click the 'Edit' button at the top.



The 'Website Filtering Rule' interface for the selected rule will open. You can add/remove categories, add/remove users or change the restriction for selected users from this interface. See **Create a new website filtering rule** for more details on this interface.

Remove a website filtering rule

- 1. Open the 'Website Filtering' panel by clicking 'Settings' then 'Website Filtering' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- 2. Open the 'Rules' tab. Choose the rule(s) you want to move by selecting the checkbox(es) beside the rule.
- 3. Click the 'Remove' button at the top.
- 4. Click 'OK'.

Change the priority of website filtering rules

- 1. Open the 'Website Filtering' panel by clicking 'Settings' then 'Website Filtering' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface.
- 2. Open the 'Rules' tab. Choose the rule you want to move by selecting the checkbox beside the rule.
- 3. Click the 'Move Up' or 'Move Down' buttons to change the order of the rules.
- 4. Click 'OK'.

7.10.2. Website Categories

- The categories tab shows all built-in and user-defined web categories.
- Categories contain a list of 'Websites' which can be allowed or blocked in a rule.
- A 'Website' can be a URL or a simple phrase / term. You can use wildcard characters (*) with both URLs and terms.

Open the website filtering categories section

- · Click 'Settings' at the top left of the CCS home screen to open the advanced settings interface
- Click 'Website Filtering' on the left and choose the 'Categories' tab

COMODO Advance	I Settings ? - D ×
General SettingsAntivirus	Website Filtering
✓ Firewall	Enable Website Filtering (Recommended)
✓ HIPS	This option enables firewall to filter web sites according to the rules and profiles defined below.
✓ Containment	RULES
 Data Loss Prevention 	
✓ File Rating	+ Z X
✓ Advanced Protection	Add Edit Remove
Website Filtering	Categories Q
	Exclusions
	Blocked Block
	OK CANCEL

• Click the search icon to find a specific rule header. You can type rule names in full or in part.

The categories pane lets you:

- Add a new category of websites
- Rename a category
- Remove unwanted websites from a category
- Remove a category

Add a new category of websites

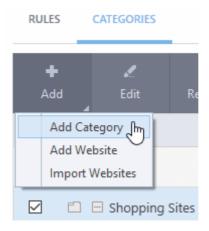
Adding a new category involves two steps:

- Step 1 Define a name for the category
- Step 2 Add Websites to be included to the category

Step 1 - Define a name for the category

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Website Filtering' on the left
- 3. Click the 'Categories' tab
- 4. Click the 'Add' button at the top and select 'Add Category' from the drop-down menu.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide



Type a name for the category in the 'Add Category' box:

COMODO Edit property		? ×
Add Category Food Items		
	ОК	CANCEL

The new category will be listed in the categories tab:

-	RULES		CATEGORIES	
	+ Ado	1	🖌 Edit	X Remove
[Cate	gories	
[Ē 6	Exclusions	
[Ē E	Blocked	
[🗅 F	ood items	

Next, add websites to be included in the category:

Step 2 - Add URLs to be included to the category

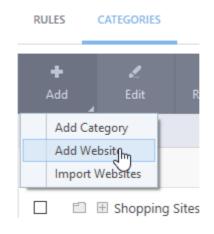
You can add websites to a category in two ways:

- Manually Specify Websites
- Upload Website URLs from a text file



Manually specify websites

- 1. Select the 'Category' from the list.
- 2. Click the 'Add' button.
- 3. Select 'Add Website' from the drop-down menu.



Type the address of the website you wish to add to the category in the 'Add Website' box:

COMODO Add Website	? ×				
Enter Website Name (e.g. *website.com)					
www.welcomehotel.com					
ОК	CANCEL				

- To add a specific webpage, enter the full path to the page.
- To include all sub-domains of website, add a wildcard character and a period in front of the URL. For example, *.friskywenches.com will cover friskywenches.com, login.friskywenches.com, pictures.friskywenches.com, videos.friskywenches.com and so on.
- To include all the websites with URLs that start with a specific string, add a wildcard character after the string. For example, *pizza** will cover 'pizzahut.com', 'pizzacorner.net', and so on.
- To include all the websites with URLs that contain a specific string, add the wildcard character before and after the string. For example, **pizza** will cover hotpizza.com, spicypizza.net and so on.
- Click 'OK'.
- The website will be added to the category.
- 4. Repeat the process to add more websites.

Upload a list of websites from a text file

- 1. Select the target category from the list.
- 2. Click the 'Add' button and select 'Import Websites' from the drop-down menu.
- 3. Navigate to the file containing your list of URLs.

	Open		×				
RULES CATEGORIES	7 Look in:	Shop_Ever	nts v	G 🤌 📂 🛄 🗸			
	_	Name	^	Date modified	Туре		
+ Edit Add Edit Add Category Add Website Import Virripsites	Quick access Desktop	Jewelry_websites		11/14/2016 4:12 PM	Text Document		
☑ 🗈 ⊞ Safe Sites	This PC	< File name: Files of type:	Jewelry_websites MalwarePatrol (plain text) format (*.tr Open as read-only	~ d) ~	> Open Cancel		

Note: The text file should contain only the list of full URLs or URLs with wildcard character (*) of the websites. The file should be of the '.txt' format.

4. Click 'Open'.

CCS will automatically add the websites specified in the text file into the selected category.

Rename a category

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Website Filtering' on the left
- 3. Click the 'Categories' tab
- 4. Select the category to be renamed.
- 5. Right-click and select 'Edit' from the drop-down menu.
- 6. Enter the new name of the category in the 'Edit Property' dialog box and click 'OK'.

The category will be renamed immediately both under the 'Categories' section and in the 'Website Filtering Rules' to which it is applied.

Remove a website from a category

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Website Filtering' on the left
- 3. Click the 'Categories' tab
- 4. Click the '+' button beside the category to be edited to expand the website list.
- 5. Select the Website(s) to be removed.
- 6. Right-click then select 'Remove' from the drop-down menu.

Remove a Category

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Website Filtering' on the left



- 3. Click the 'Categories' tab
- 4. Select the category to be removed.
- 5. Right-click then select 'Remove' from the drop-down menu.

Note: You cannot remove a category if it is currently being used in a website filtering rule. Make sure to first remove the category from any rules in which it is applied.

Appendix 1 - CCS How to... Tutorials

The 'How To...' section of the guide contains guidance on key tasks in Comodo Client Security. Use the links below to go to each tutorial's page.

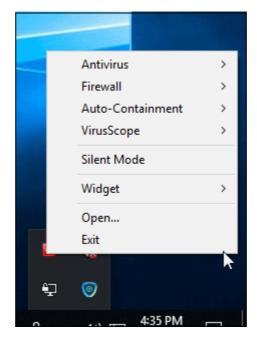
How to ...:

- Enable / Disable AV, Firewall, Auto-Containment and VirusScope Easily How to quickly enable or disable various CCS modules.
- Setup the Firewall for maximum security and usability How to set up a secure connection to the internet
- Block Internet Access while allowing local network (LAN) Access Configure the firewall to only allow intranet/LAN connections while blocking the internet
- Set up HIPS for Maximum Security and Usability How to set up the host intrusion protection system for the optimum balance between security and usability
- Create Rules to Auto-Contain Applications How to set auto-containment rules for maximum security
 against untrusted applications
- Run an instant Antivirus scan on selected items Run a manual scan on selected folders/files to check for viruses and other malware
- Create an Antivirus scan schedule Set up antivirus scans to automatically run at specific times.
- Run an untrusted program inside the container Launch programs that you do not trust inside the container to eliminate the possibility of them causing damage to your computer.
- Run Browsers inside the Container Run your browser inside the container when you plan to visit
 untrusted websites
- Restore incorrectly quarantined item(s) Restore files and executables that had been moved to quarantine by mistake
- Submit quarantined items to Comodo for analysis Send suspicious files/executables to Comodo for analysis
- Enable file sharing applications like BitTorrent and Emule Configure firewall for file sharing through popular software
- Block any downloads of a specific file type Configure HIPS to block downloads of files of a specific type
- Disable Auto-Containment on a Per-application Basis Exclude specific files or file types from the autocontainment process
- Switch Off Automatic Antivirus Updates Stop automatic virus updates
- Suppress alerts when playing games Switch off CCS pop-up alerts to avoid interruptions while playing games
- Control External Device Accessibility Restrict access to external devices such as USB pen drive on the endpoints.

Enable / Disable AV, Firewall, Auto-Containment and VirusScope Easily

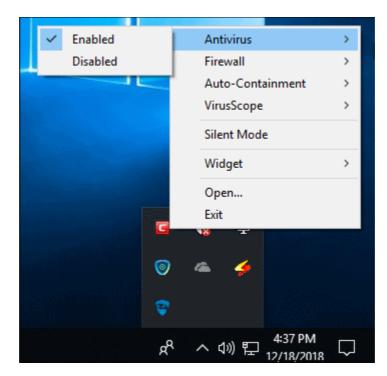
• Right-click on the CCS tray icon to quickly switch Antivirus, Firewall, Auto-Containment or VirusScope on or off:





Antivirus

- 1. Right-click on the system tray icon
- 2. Move your mouse over 'Antivirus'

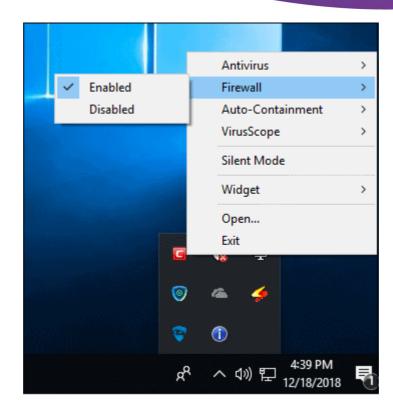


3. Choose 'Enabled' or 'Disabled' as required You can also set security level in **the Home Screen**.

Firewall

- 1. Right-click on the system tray icon
- 2. Move your mouse over 'Firewall'
- 3. Choose 'Enabled' or 'Disabled' as required

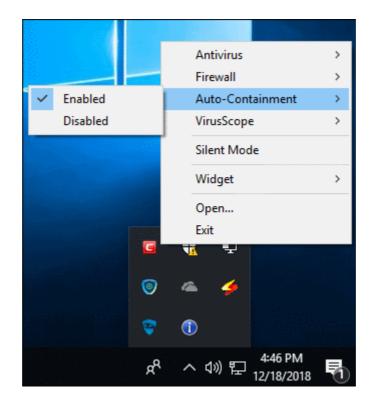




You can also set security level in the Home Screen.

Auto-Containment

- 1. Right-click on the system tray icon
- 2. Move your mouse over 'Auto-Containment'



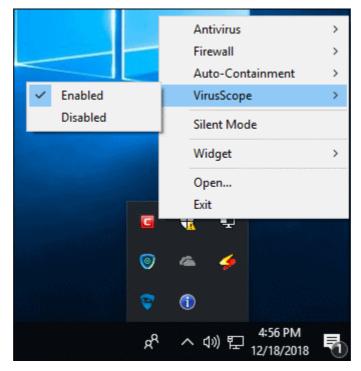
3. Choose 'Enabled' or 'Disabled' as required

You can also set security level in the Home Screen.



VirusScope

- 1. Right-click on the system tray icon
- 2. Move your mouse over 'VirusScope'



3. Choose 'Enabled' or 'Disabled' as required

You can also set security level from the Home Screen.

Set up the Firewall For Maximum Security and Usability

This page outlines the functions of Comodo's Firewall and helps you to set up a secure connection to the internet.

Stealth Ports Settings

Port stealthing is a security feature whereby ports on an internet connected PC are hidden from sight, sending no response to opportunistic port scans.

- 1. Click 'Tasks' > 'Firewall Tasks'
- 2. Click 'Stealth Ports'



	COMODO Stealth Ports ? X
Secure All sys	Ports allow your computer to communicate with other computers in a network. By stealthing them, you may configure this computer's visibility to others.
GENERAL TASKS FIREWA	Block Incoming Connections Block all incoming connections and make this PC invisible to all computers
Allow an applicat	Alert Incoming Connections Lets you decide when to make this PC invisible on a case basis by showing popup alerts
Stealth Ports Manage this Ports PC's.	C's network visibility from other

3. Select 'Block Incoming Connections' to make your computer's ports are invisible to all networks

Click here for more information about port stealthing

Network Zone Settings

'Network Zones' settings allow you to configure the protection level for connections to a router/home network (this is usually done **automatically** for you).

View the configurations

- 1. Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- 2. Select 'Firewall' > 'Network Zones'
- 3. Click 'Network Zones' tab in the 'Network Zones' interface



COMODO Client - S	Security 12 – X
음 tasks <() setting	s 🖒 logs
	✓.
COMODO Advanced	Settings ? – 🗆 🗙
 General Settings Antivirus 	Retwork Zones
- Firewall	Enable automatic detection of private networks
Firewall Settings	Do not show popup alerts and treat location as Home
Application Rules	The following network zones are defined on this computer:
Global Rules	NETWORK ZONES BLOCKED ZONES
Rulesets	+ 2 *
Network Zones	Add Edit Remove
Portsets	Zone Name Q
 Containment 	🗹 🗈 🗄 Loopback Zone
✓ Data Loss Prevention	□ □
✓ File Rating	
 Advanced Protection 	
Website Filtering	
	OK CANCEL

- 4. Inspect the 'Loopback zone' and 'Local Area Network #1' (exact name may vary) by clicking the '+' button beside the zone name
 - In most cases, the loopback zone IP address should be 127.0.01/255.0.0.0
 - In most cases, the IP address of the auto-detected Network zone should be 10.nnn.nnn.nnn/255.255.255.0
- 5. Click 'OK'.

Click here for more details on network zones settings

Firewall Settings

The firewall settings option lets you configure the protection level for your internet connection, and the frequency of alerts generated.

- 1. Click 'Settings' at the top of the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Firewall' > 'Firewall Settings'

3. Select 'Enable Firewall' and choose 'Safe Mode' from the drop-down

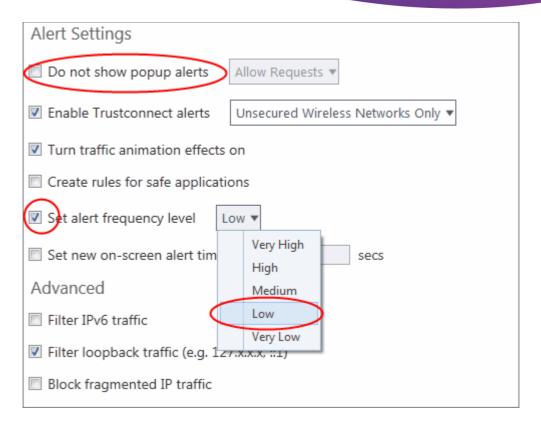
COMODO Client - Se	ecurity 12	– ×
🔡 tasks 🏠 settings	C LOGS	
	Settings	? – 🗆 ×
 General Settings Antivirus 	Firewall Settings	
Firewall Firewall Settings	This option enables firewall which filte	tk All bd traffic.
Application Rules	Alert Settings	tom Ruleset
Global Rules	Do not show popup alerts Allow Train	ning Mode

Safe Mode: While filtering network traffic, the firewall will automatically create rules which allow traffic for application components certified as 'Safe' by Comodo. For non-certified, new, applications, you will receive an alert whenever that application attempts to access the network. Should you choose, you can grant that application internet access by choosing 'Treat this application as a Trusted Application' at the alert. This will deploy the predefined firewall policy 'Trusted Application' onto the application.

Alert Settings

Under 'Alert Settings' in the same interface:

- Deselect 'Do not show pop-up alerts'
- Select 'Set alert frequency level' option and choose 'Low' from the drop-down. At the 'Low' setting, the firewall shows alerts for outgoing and incoming connection requests for an application. This is the setting recommended by Comodo and is suitable for the majority of users.



Advanced Settings

When launching a denial of service or 'flood' attack, an attacker bombards a target machine with so many connection requests that your computer is unable to accept legitimate connections, effectively shutting down your web, email, FTP or VPN server. To protect from such attacks, make the following settings under 'Advanced' in the 'Firewall Settings' interface:

- Select 'Filter loopback traffic'
- Ensure that the 'Block fragmented IP traffic' is selected
 - Block fragmented IP traffic When a connection is opened between two computers, they must agree
 on a Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). IP Datagram fragmentation occurs when data passes through
 a router with an MTU less than the MTU you are using i.e when a datagram is larger than the MTU of
 the network over which it must be sent, it is divided into smaller 'fragments' which are each sent
 separately. Fragmented IP packets can create threats similar to a DOS attack. Moreover, these
 fragmentations can double the amount of time it takes to send a single packet and slow down your
 download time.
- Select 'Do Protocol Analysis' checkbox to detect fake packets used in denial of service attacks
- Select 'Enable anti-ARP spoofing'

Advanced
Filter IPv6 traffic
Filter loopback traffic (e.g. 127.x.x.x, ::1)
Block fragmented IP traffic
Do protocol analysis
Enable anti-ARP spoofing



4. Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect.

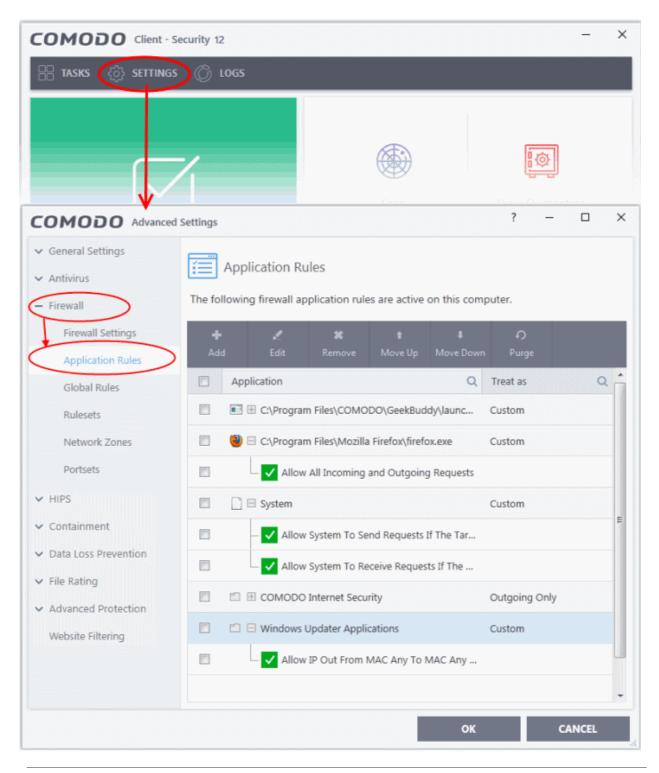
Click here for more details on the firewall settings

Set-up Application Rules, Global Rules and Predefined Firewall Rulesets

You can configure and deploy traffic filtering rules and policies on an application-specific and global basis.

View the 'Application Rules'

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Firewall > 'Application Rules'



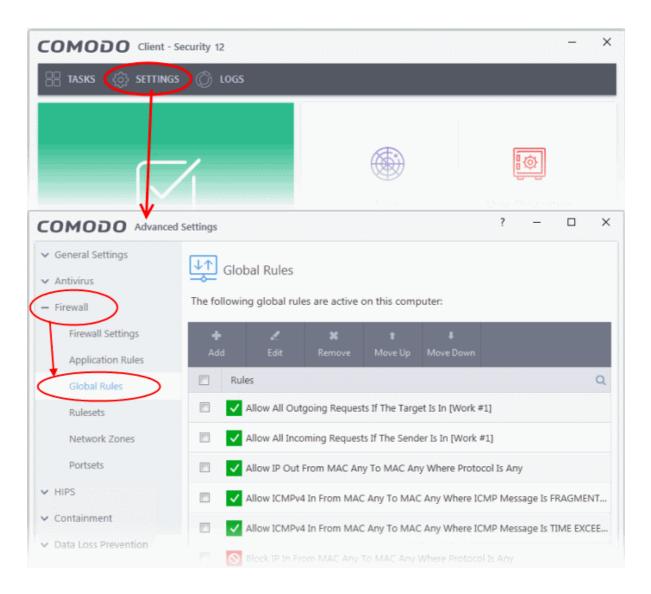


- 3. Click 'Add' to create a new application rule
- 4. Select a rule and click 'Edit' to edit the rules for a specific application manually or click 'Remove' to remove them
- 5. Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect

Click here for more details on application rules

View the Global Rules

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Firewall' > 'Global Rules'



- 3. Click 'Add' to create a new global rule
- 4. Select a rule and click 'Edit' to edit the a rule manually or click 'Remove' to remove them
- 5. Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect

Click here for more details on global rules

View Predefined Firewall rulesets

1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen



2. Click 'Firewall' > 'Rulesets'

COMODO Client	Security 12	- ×
🗄 tasks 🍈 setting	as 🖒 logs	
	T See See	
	ed Settings ?	×
✓ General Settings✓ Antivirus	Rulesets	
- Firewall	The following rulesets are defined on this computer:	
Firewall Settings Application Rules	🛨 🖍 🗱 Add Edit Remove	
Global Rules	Ruleset Name	Q
Rulesets	Web Browser	
Network Zones	Email Client	
Portsets	FTP Client	
✓ HIPS	Allowed Application	
Containment Data Loss Prevention	Blocked Application	

- 3. Click 'Add' to create a new ruleset
- 4. Select a ruleset and click 'Edit' to edit the rules manually or click 'Remove' to remove them
- 5. Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect

Note: You need not make your own rulesets, the defaults are usually enough.

Click here for more details on pre-defined firewall rulesets

Block Internet Access while Allowing Local Area Network (LAN) Access

You can configure the firewall to block internet access while allowing connections to an internal network (intranet or LAN).

Example scenarios:

In your network at home, you want your child's computer to connect to other computers at home but disable
their internet access for safety reasons



In a company network, you want employee computers to connect to your network but disable internet
 access for bandwidth reasons

You need to create a global firewall rule to block internet access while allowing internal connections.

Create the global rule

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Firewall' > 'Global Rules'

COMODO Client - Se	ecurity 12					-	×
🔠 TASKS 🏠 SETTINGS) ⊘ logs						
	1				I	i get ette	
COMODO Advanced	Settings				? –		×
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall 	Global R		e on this com	puter:			
Firewall Settings		<i>.</i> ×	ŧ	ŧ			
Application Rules		dit Remove	Move Up	Move Down			
Global Rules	Rules						Q
Rulesets	Allow	All Outgoing Requ	ests If The Targ	et Is In [Work #	1]		
Network Zones	🗉 🗸 Allow	All Incoming Reque	ests If The Send	der Is In [Work #	¥1]		
Portsets	🗉 🗸 Allow	IP Out From MAC /	Any To MAC Ar	y Where Proto	col Is Any		
✓ HIPS	🗉 🗸 Allow	ICMPv4 In From M	AC Any To MA	C Any Where IC	MP Message Is F	RAGMEI	NT
✓ Containment	🕅 🗸 Allow	ICMPv4 In From M	AC Any To MA				

3. Choose 'Add' from the options at the top.

COMODO Advanced	Settings ? - 🗆 🗙				
General SettingsAntivirus	J Global Rules				
– Firewall	The following global rules are active on this computer:				
Firewall Settings	+ X 🗱 t J Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down				
Application Rules	Add Edit Remove Move Up Move Down				
Global Rules	Rules Q				
Rulesets	Allow All Outgoing Requests If The Target Is In [Work #1]				
СОМОДО	Firewall Rule ? ×				
Action:	Allow Log as firewall event if this rule is fired				
Protocol:	IP 💌				
Direction:	Out				
Description	Allow Lan and block internet				
SOURCE ADDRESS	SOURCE ADDRESS DESTINATION ADDRESS IP DETAILS				
Exclude (i.e. NO	OT the choice below)				
Type: IPv4 Single Address 💌					
IP: 010.108.051.196					
	OK CANCEL				

- 4. Choose the following options from the respective drop-downs:
 - Action = 'Block';
 - Protocol = 'IP';
 - Direction = 'Out'.
- 5. Enter a description for the new rule in the 'Description' text box.
- 6. Click the 'Source Address' tab, choose 'IPv4 Single Address' or 'IPv6 Single address' as per your network and enter the IP address of the computer in the IP text box.
- 7. Click the 'Destination Address' tab, choose 'Network Zone' from the 'Type' drop-down and choose your local area network from the 'Zone' drop-down.

Comodo Client Security - User Guide

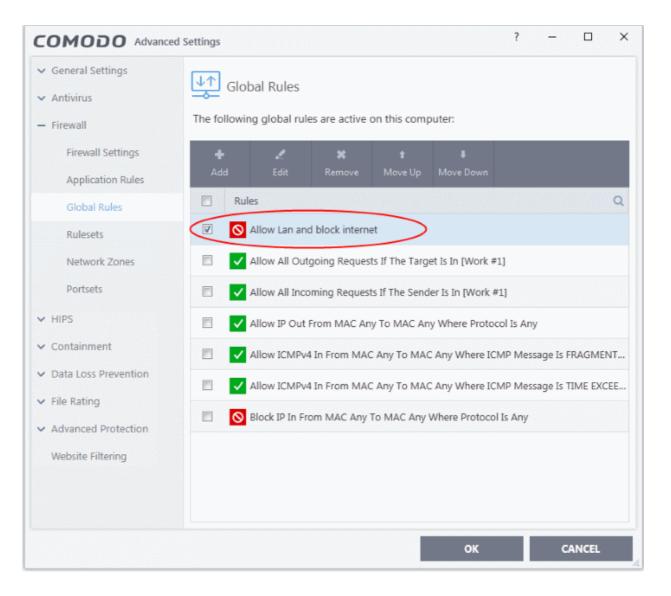
сомодо	Firewall Rule ?	×
Action:	Allow Log as firewall event if this rule is fired	
Protocol:	IP 🔻	
Direction:	Out 🔻	
Description	Allow Lan and block internet]
SOURCE ADDRESS	OT the choice below)	
Туן	pe: Network Zone	
		EL

8. Click the 'IP Details' tab and choose 'Any' from the 'IP Protocol' drop-down.

SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	IP DETAILS
IP Protocol:	Any Custom Any TCP UDP ICMPv4 IGMP Raw IP PUP GGP GRE RSVP	• OK CANCEL
	ICMPv6	



- 9. Click 'OK'. The created policy will be added to the list of 'Global Rules'.
- 10. Select the rule and click the 'Move Up' button until the rule is in first position:



11. Click 'OK' for your configuration to take effect.

Your firewall is now configured to allow access to the internal network but to block internet access.



Set up HIPS for Maximum Security and Usability

This page explains how to configure the host intrusion prevention system (HIPS) to provide maximum security against malware and hackers.

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'HIPS' > 'HIPS Settings'
- 3. Select 'Enable HIPS'

COMODO Client	Security 12		– ×
🔠 tasks 🏠 setting	бs 🖒 logs		
	7	Scan	EQ View Or acardine
	ed Settings		? – 🗆 X
General SettingsAntivirus	HIPS Settings		
✓ Firewall	Enable HIPS		
- HIPS	Paranoid Mode Mor	hitoring Settings	
HIPS Settings			em, the component that monitors outer against malware actions.
HIPS Rules	Training Mode	s Allow Requests 🔻	
Rulesets			
Protected Objects	 Set popup alerts to verbo Create rules for safe appl 		

4. Choose 'Safe Mode' from the drop-down.

Monitoring Settings

1. Click the 'Monitoring Settings' link in the 'HIPS Settings' interface

HIPS Settings	
Enable HIPS	
Safe Mode Monitoring S	iettings
This option enables the Host i	ntrusion Protection System, the component that monitors ities to protect the computer against malware actions.
COMODO Monitoring Settings	? ×
Activities to Monitor	
☑ Interprocess Memory Accesses	Process Execution
☑ Windows/WinEvent Hooks	☑ Window Messages
Device Driver Installations	DNS/RPC Client Service
Processes' Terminations	
Objects to Monitor Against Modi	fications
Protected COM Interfaces	Protected Registry Keys
Protected Files/Folders	
Objects to Monitor Against Direc	t Access
Physical Memory	☑ Disks
Computer Monitor	☑ Keyboard

2. Make sure that all the check boxes are selected then click 'OK'

Advanced Settings

1. Enable the following settings in the 'Advanced' area of the HIPS Settings interface:

Advanced
Enable adaptive mode under low system resources
Block all unknown requests when the application is not running
Enable enhanced protection mode (Requires a system restart)

 Enable 'Block all unknown requests if the application is not running' (Optional) - Selecting this option blocks all unknown execution requests if Comodo Client Security is not running/has been shut down. This is option is very strict indeed and in most cases should only be enabled on seriously infested or compromised machines while the user is working to resolve these issues. If you know your machine is already 'clean' and are looking just to enable the highest CCS security settings, then it is 'OK' to leave this box unchecked.

- Select 'Enable enhanced protection mode (Requires a system restart)' If you are using a 64-bit system, in
 order to maximize the security, it is important to enable this mode to activate additional host intrusion
 prevention techniques in HIPS to countermeasure extremely sophisticated malware that tries to bypass
 regular countermeasures.
- Because of limitations in Windows 7 x64, some HIPS functions in previous versions of CCS could theoretically be bypassed by malware. Enhanced Protection Mode implements several patent-pending ways to improve HIPS functionality.

Click here for more details on HIPS Settings

Create Rules to Auto-Contain Applications

- Click 'Settings' > 'Containment' > 'Auto-Containment'
- Auto-containment rules let you define which types of files should automatically run in the container.
- You can contain files based on various criteria, including location and file source.
- A contained application has much less opportunity to damage your computer because it runs isolated from your operating system and your files.
- CCS ships with some pre-defined rules configured to provide maximum protection for your system. Click here to check whether these rules meet your needs before creating a custom rule.
- The rest of this tutorial explains how to create a custom auto-containment rule.

Create auto-containment rules

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Containment' > 'Auto-Containment'
- 3. Make sure 'Enable Auto-Containment' is selected
- 4. Click 'Add'



Client - Security	12				-
TASKS	LOGS				
		Scons		ارونی View Octarianti	160
MODO Advanced Setting	js			? —	
General Settings	Auto-Containm				
HIPS	This option enables aut policy defined below.		f executable files	and scripts accord	ing to t
Containment Containment Settings	+ ∠ Add Edit	🗱 🏦 Remove Move U	∎ p Move Down	C Reset to Default	
	Run Virtually	C\Progra	m Fil Any		:
Action Run Virtually				•	
The selected containment ac	tion will be applied	if file properties m	natch the follov	ving criteria:	
				Edit	
No criteria selected					
			ок	CANCEL	

The add rule screen contains two tabs:

- **Criteria** Define the conditions of the rule.
- **Options** Configure additional actions like logging, memory usage and time restrictions.

There are three steps:

• Step 1 - Choose the action



- Step 2 Select the rule targets
- Step 3 Choose additional options

Step 1 - Choose the action

The setting in the action drop-down combined with the restriction level in the options tab determine the privileges of an auto-contained application. These items specify what right the application has to access other processes and hardware resources.

СОМ	DDO Manage Contained Program	?	×
Action	Run Virtually		 \bigcirc
	Run Restricted		 Ч
The selec	Run Virtually Block		
CRITERIA			

Choose one of the following actions:

- **Run Virtually** The application will run in a virtual environment, completely isolated from your operating system and the rest of your files.
- **Run Restricted** The application is allowed limited access to operating system resources. The application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time. Some applications, like games, may not work properly under this setting.
- Block The application is not allowed to run at all.
- Ignore The application is not contained. It is allowed to run as normal on your computer.

Step 2 - Select the rule targets

- Next, select the types of files which will be covered by your rule.
- You can add rule filters so the rule only applies to specific types of file.
 - For example, you can specify 'All executables' as the target and add a filter so it only affects executables downloaded from the internet.
 - Another example is if you want to allow unrecognized files created by a specific user to run outside the container. You would create an 'Ignore' rule with 'All Applications' as the target and 'File created by specific user' as the filter criteria.

Select targets and filters

- Click the 'Criteria' tab.
- Click the 'Edit' button at the far right:

COMODO Manage Contained Program	? 🗆 ×
Action Run Virtually	×
The selected containment action will be applied if file properties mate	ch the following criteria:
CRITERIA OPTIONS	
	Edit
No criteria selected	
COMODO File Criteria	? 🗆 🗙
Please select the criteria to be applied.	
File location:	
	Browse 🔻
File created by applications: Ar	ny Add 🔻 🔨
File started by processes: Ar	ny Add 🔻 🗸
File created by users: Ar	
File origin: Ar	ny Add 🔻 🗸
File rating: Ar	ny Select 🔻 🗸
File signed by vendors: Ar	ny Add 🔻 🗸
File age: Ar	ny Select 🗸
ОК	CANCEL

Next:

- Select the target
- Configure the filters



Select the target

• Click the browse button next to the file location field:

COMODO File Criteria		?	×
Please select the criteria to be applied.			
File location:		Browse	
File created by applications:	Any	Files Runk File G	g Processes
		Folde File H	r

Select one of the following target types:

- Files Add individual files as the target.
- **Running Processes** Add any process that is currently running on your computer. This targets the parent application of the process.
- File Groups Add a predefined file group as the target. For example, the 'Executables' group contains a list
 of file types that can run code on your computer. Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Groups' to add or
 modify a file group.
- Folder Add a directory or drive as the target. All files in the target folder are covered by the rule.
- File Hash Add a file's hash value as the target of the rule. A hash value is a number derived from the file itself, which uniquely identifies and represents the file. It is extremely unlikely that two files can ever generate the same hash value. The rule will apply to the target file, even if the file name changes.
- Process Hash Add a processes hash value as the target of the rule. Please see description above if required.

Add an individual File

• Choose 'Files' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

обомоз	File Crit	eria		? ×	
Please select the c	riteria to	be applied.			
File location:					
File created by app	lications		Any	Files Runting Processes File Groups Folder File Hash Process Hash	
	« Program folder	n Files (x86) → Cuckoo	<u>୯</u> ତ	Search Cuckoo	: م 9 الآ ب
a OneDrive	^ N	lame ^	Date modified	Туре	Size
		Converters	5/28/2018 1:51 F	PM File folder	
This PC		Cuckoo_music	5/28/2018 1:39 F	PM Application	1 KB
 3D Objects Desktop Documents Downloads Music Pictures Videos 		belper	5/28/2018 12:03	PM Application	875 KE
🏪 Local Disk (C:)					
🕳 New Volume (E	:)				
F	File <u>n</u> ame:	Cuckoo_music	~	Executable Files (*.e	exe, *.dll, *.or ~
				AS ANY ALCONDUCTION OF A DECOMPOSITION OF A	COMPANY OF COMPANY AND A DOMESTIC ON COMPANY

- Navigate to the target file and click open
- The file will be added as the target and run as per the action chosen in Step 1.



TOMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File location:				
C:\Program Files (x86)\Cuckoo\Cuckoo_music.exe		В	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ado	d 🔻	^
File started by processes:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	~
File created by users:	Any	Ad	d	\checkmark
File origin:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	~
File rating:	Any	Sele	ct 🔻	\sim
File signed by vendors:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	\sim
File age:	Any	Sele	ct	\checkmark
ОК		с	ANCE	

- Click 'OK' if you don't want to specify any filters or options.
- If required ,you can **configure filter criteria and file rating** and **options** for the rule.

Add a currently running process

• Choose 'Running Processes' from the drop-down:

Please select the criteria to be applied.		
File location:		
	Browse 🔻	
	Files	_
File created by applications:	Any Running Proce	esse
	Folder	
	File Hash	
	Process Hash	
COMODO Browse for Processes	?	×
Application	PID 3904	202010
 Image: Indiance Force	724	^
Is sychost.exe	1592	
Ctfmon.exe	3184	
Estimol.exe	1112	
	2188	
RmmService eve	3248	
🗉 📧 RmmService.exe	3240	
🖌 🦮 explorer.exe	5004	
 A State VBoxTray.exe 	5004	
 A Strate A VBoxTray.exe A DSASCuiL.exe 	4916	
 explorer.exe WBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe OneDrive.exe 	4916 1968	
 explorer.exe VBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe ConeDrive.exe Mspaint.exe 	4916 1968 4328	
 explorer.exe VBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe CneDrive.exe Imspaint.exe System 	4916 1968 4328 4	
 explorer.exe VBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe CneDrive.exe CneDrive.exe mspaint.exe System smss.exe 	4916 1968 4328 4 320	
 explorer.exe VBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe OneDrive.exe OneDrive.exe mspaint.exe System smss.exe smss.exe svchost.exe 	4916 1968 4328 4 320 1060	
 explorer.exe VBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe MoneDrive.exe MoneDrive.exe MoneDrive.exe MoneDrive.exe MoneDrive.exe System System System System System VBoxService.exe 	4916 1968 4328 4 320 1060 8	
 explorer.exe VBoxTray.exe MSASCuiL.exe OneDrive.exe Imspaint.exe System 	4916 1968 4328 4 320 1060	

- Select the process belonging to the parent application you want to add and click 'OK'.
- The parent application of the process will be added as the target.



COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File location:				
C:\Program Files (x86)\Cuckoo\Cuckoo_music.exe		В	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	^
File started by processes:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	~
File created by users:	Any	Ad	d	v
File origin:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	\sim
File rating:	Any	Sele	ect 🔻	\checkmark
File signed by vendors:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	\checkmark
File age:	Any	Sele	ect	\checkmark
ОК		C		

- Click 'OK' if you don't want to specify any filters or options.
- If required ,you can configure filter criteria and file rating and options for the rule.

Add a file group

- Choose 'File Groups' from the drop-down.
 - For example, the 'Executables' group contains a list of file types that can run code on your computer. Click 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File Groups' to add or modify a file group.
- Select the file group you want to target with the rule:

COMODO File Criteria		? ×	
Please select the criteria to be applied.			Executables
File location:			All Applications
	~	Browse V	Windows Updater Applications
			Windows System Applications
File created by applications:	Any	Files	
The created by applications.	Any	Running Processes	Windows Management 3rd Party Protocol Drivers
		(File Groups	
		Eolder	Metro Apps Email Clients
		File Hash	
		Process Hash	File Archivers
			Temporary Files
			File Downloaders
File started by processes:	Any	Add 🔻 🗸	Suspicious Locations
ine stated by protesses	,,		Containment Folders
File created by users:	Any	Add 🗸	Pseudo File Downloaders
		Add 🔻 🗸	Important Files/Folders
File origin:	Any	Add V	Web Browsers
File rating:	Any	Select 🔻 🗸	Browser Plugins
			Management and Productivity Application
File signed by vendors:	Any	Add 🔻 🗸	Media Players
File age:	Any	Select 🗸	COMODO Client - Security
ne ogei			COMODO Client - Security Manager
			COMODO Client Files/Folders
	ОК	CANCEL	COMODO Client - Communication
		A	Startup Folders
			exclusive
			exclusion
			malware
			firewall event
			Antivirus Exclusion
			HIPS exclusion1
			Shared Spaces

• Click 'OK' if you don't want to specify any filters or options.

• If required, you can **configure filter criteria and file rating** and **options** for the rule.

Add a folder/drive partition

• Choose 'Folder' from the 'Browse' drop-down.

сомо	DO File Criteria		? ×
Please selec	t the criteria to be applied.		
File location	n:		
File created	by applications:	Any	Browse Files Running Processes File Groups
Bro	wse For Folder	× (Folder File Sh Process Hash
	PerfLogs Program Files Program Files (x86) Common Files Comodo Cuckoo Cuckoo Converters DAP Internet Explorer Make New Folder OK	Cancel	

- Navigate to the drive partition or folder you want to add as target and click 'OK'
- Click 'OK', if you don't want to specify any filters or options.
- If required you can **configure filter criteria and file rating** and **Options** for the rule.

Add a file using its hash value

• Choose 'File Hash' from the drop-down.



сомодо	File (Criteria		? ×	
Please select the c	riteria	to be applied.			
File location:					
File created by ap	plicatio	ns:	Any	owse Files Running Processes File Groups Folder File Hash Process Hash	
	« Prog	yram Files (x86) → Cuckoo →	<u>ل</u> و م	Search Cuckoo	× م
OneDrive	^	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size
_		Converters	5/28/2018 1:51 PM	File folder	
This PC		Cuckoo_music	5/28/2018 1:39 PM		1 KB
 3D Objects Desktop Documents Downloads Music Pictures Videos 		🖏 helper	5/28/2018 12:03 PM	M Application	875 KB
Local Disk (C:)	5)				
	~				
Maker and	File <u>n</u> ar	ne: Cuckoo_music	~	Executable Files (*. <u>O</u> pen	exe, *.dll, *.oı ∨ Cancel

- Navigate to the file whose hash value you want to add as target and click 'Open'
- Click 'OK', if you don't want to specify any filters or options.
- If required you can **configure filter criteria and file rating** and **options** for the rule.
- CCS generates the hash value of the parent file and stores that as the target.
- CCS uses this hash value to identify the file and apply the rule, so that the rule intercepts the target even if the file name changes.

Add an application from a running process based on its hash value

• Choose 'Process Hash' from the drop-down.

Please select the criteria to be applied.		
ricuse select the criteria to be applied.		
File location:		Drowco –
File created by applications:	Any	Browse ▼ Files Running Process File Groups Folder File Hash
	\$	Process Hash
		?
Application		PID
 Ctfmon.exe 		3184
svchost.exe		1112
RmmService.exe		2188
🕶 🐂 explorer.exe		3248
▲ 🧐 VBoxTray.exe		5004
▲ 🖶 MSASCuiL.exe		4916
🖌 🝊 OneDrive.exe		1968
🔺 🚳 mspaint.exe		4328
🔻 📄 System		4
▲ 📧 smss.exe		320
svchost.exe		1060
🖌 🥸 VBoxService.exe		8
Cuckoo_music.exe		732
svchost.exe		1600
SearchIndexer.exe		936
		4984
🖌 🗃 WmiPrvSE.exe		4904

- Select the process, to add the hash value of its parent application to target and click 'OK' from the 'Browse for Process' dialog.
- Click 'OK', if you don't want to specify any filters or options.
- If required you can **configure filter criteria and file rating** and **options** for the rule.
- CCS generates the hash value of the parent file and stores that as the target.



 CCS uses this hash value to identify the file and apply the rule, so that the rule intercepts the target even if the file name changes.

Configure Filter Criteria and File Rating

You can apply an action to a file if it meets certain criteria.

The available filter criteria are:

- By application that created the file
- By process that created the file
- By user that created the file
- By file origin
- By file rating
- By vendor who signed the file
- By file age

Auto-contain a file if it was created by a specific application

- This will apply the rule to a file based on its parent application.
- You can also specify the file rating of the parent application. The rule will then only contain a file if the parent app has a certain trust rating.

Specify parent applications:

• Click the add button in the 'File created by applications' stripe:

COMODO File Criteria	?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.			-
File Belongs to (File Group):			
Temporary Files		Browse	•
File created by applications:	Arv A	.dd 🔻	>
		Files Run 🖓 I	Processes
		File Group	
		Folder	
		File Hash Process H	lash

- The options available are same as those available under the 'Browse' button beside 'File location', as explained **above**. See the previous section for each of options for more details.
- · Click the 'Any' link beside 'File Rating' and select the file rating of the source



омоі	DO File Criteria		? 🗆	×
Please select	the criteria to be applied.			
File Belongs	to (File Group):			
Temporary	Files		Browse	• •
File created I	by applications:	1 process(es)	Add 🔻	^
Executable File Rating				×
	Any			
	Trusted			
	Unrecognized			
	Malicious 🖑			

• Repeat the process to add more applications or groups/folders.

Auto-contain a file if it was launched by a specific process

- This will apply the rule to a file based on its based on its parent process.
- You can also specify:
 - The trust rating of the parent process. The rule will then only contain a file if the parent process has a certain trust rating.
 - The number of levels in the process chain that should be inspected.

Specify source process:

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File started processes' stripe:

OMODO File Criteria	? 🗆 🗙
Please select the criteria to be applied.	
File Belongs to (File Group):	
Temporary Files	Browse 🔻
File created by applications:	Any Add 🗸 🗸
File started by processes:	Any Add 🗸 🔨
	Files
	Running Processes
	File Groops
	Folder
	File Hash
	Process Hash



- The options available are same as those available under the 'Browse' button beside 'File location', as explained **above**. See the previous section for each of options for more details.
- Click the 'Any' link beside 'File Rating' and select the file rating of the source

File started by	processes:	1 process(es)	Add 🖣	1 ^
File Downloa File Rating: <u>/</u>				×
🗆 Limit	Any Trusted Unrecognized Malicious	rocesses in the process chain to	1	
File created by	USOFS	Anv	Add	

• 'Limit number of parent processes in the process chain to' - Specify how far up the process tree CCS should check. 1 = will only check the trust rating of the file's parent process. 2 = will check the trust rating of the parent process and the grand-parent process. Etc.

File created by applications:	Any	Add	• •
File started by processes:	1 process(es)	Add	· ^
File Downloaders File Rating: <u>Any</u>			×
☑ Limit number of parent processes	in the process chain to	3 🔹	>

• Repeat the process to add more processes

Auto-contain a file created by specific users

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File created by users' stripe.

OMODO File Criteria		? [
Please select the criteria to be applied.			
File Belongs to (File Group):			
Temporary Files		Brov	vse
File created by applications:	Any	Add	•
File started by processes:	Any	Add	•
File created by users:	Any	Ądd	
The created by users.		Ċ	-
Select User or Group		Ċ	<
Select User or Group		(1)	<
Select User or Group Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal		Ċ	<]
Select User or Group Select this object type:	Obje	(1)	<]
Select User or Group Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location:	Obje	>	<]]
Select User or Group Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location: DESKTOP-FKQF9QT	Obje	>	×]]
Select User or Group Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal From this location: DESKTOP-FKQF9QT	Obje	> ect Types	×]]

- Enter the names of the users you want to add in the large text box.
- Name format = <domain name>\<user/group name>, or <user/group name>@<domain name>.
- Alternatively, click 'Advanced' then 'Find Now' to locate specific users. Click 'OK' to confirm your choice.



elect User or G	-		
Select this object			,
User, Group, or E	Built-in security principal		Object Types
From this location	:		
DESKTOP-1N2L	JS38		Locations
Enter the object r	name to select (examples):		
	and to coloci (<u>atampico</u>).		Check Names
			CHECK Names
Advanced		ОК	Cancel
Advanced		UK	Cancer
elect User or Gi	auo		
Select this object	type:		
User, Group, or E	Built-in security principal		Object Types
From this location	:		
DESKTOP-1N2L	JS38		Locations
Common Querie			
Common Quene	S		
Name:	Starts with 🖂		Colur
Description			Find
Description:	Starts with 🖂		
Disabled a	ccounts		S
Non expirir	ng password		
Dava since Inc	t lagany		£
Days since las	ti logon:		7
Search results:			OK Car
lame	In Folder	_/	
Distributed C		/	
	DESKTOP-1N2		
Everyone	K		
😨 Guest	DESKTOP-1N2		
	DESKTOP-1N2		
Guests			
Guests Hyper-V Admi.	DESKTOP-1N2		
Guests Hyper-V Admi. IIS_IUSRS	DESKTOP-1N2 DESKTOP-1N2		
Guests Hyper-V Admi. IIS_IUSRS infra	DESKTOP-1N2		

The user will be added to the list.

	?		×
	Bro	owse	•
Any	Add	•	\sim
Any	Add	•	\checkmark
1 user(s)	Add		^
			×
	Any	Bro Any Add Any Add	Browse Any Add v Any Add v

• Repeat the process to add more users.

Auto-contain a file if it was downloaded/copied from a specific source

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File origin' stripe.

COMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):				
Temporary Files		В	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	\sim
File started by processes:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	\checkmark
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Ad	d	\checkmark
File origin:	Any	Ad	d 🔻	^
		R	ternet Wvał tranet	ole Med

- Choose the source from the options:
 - Internet Apply the rule to files that were downloaded from the internet.
 - **Removable Media** Apply the rule to items copied to your computer from removable storage devices.
 - Intranet Apply the rule to files downloaded from the local intranet.
- Repeat the process to add more sources

Select file rating as filter criteria



Click the 'Select' button in the 'File Rating' stripe

COMODO File Criteria		? 🗆 ×
Please select the criteria to be applied.		
File Belongs to (File Group):		
Temporary Files		Browse 🔻
File created by applications:	Any	Add 🔻 🗸
File started by processes:	Any	Add 🔻 🗸
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Add 🗸
File origin:	2 origin(s)	Add 🔻 🗸
File rating:	Any	Select 🔻 🔨
		Trusted
		Unrecognized
		Malicious

- Trusted A file will have a trusted rating if:
 - The file is on the Comodo whitelist of safe files
 - The file is signed by a vendor who has a trusted rating in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'Vendor List'
 - The file was installed by trusted installer
 - The user has given the file a trusted rating in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List'
 - See File Rating Settings for more information.
- Malware The file has a trust rating of 'Malicious'.
- Unrecognized Any file that does not have a 'Trusted' or 'Malicious' rating is classed as 'Unrecognized'. Although these files may not turn out to be malicious, Comodo auto-contains these files until we have established their true trust rating.

Auto-contain a file based on software vendor

- You can apply an action to a file based on the vendor who digitally signed the file. The vendor is the software company that created the file.
- You can also specify the trust rating of the vendor. The rule will only contain a file if its vendor has the stated trust rating.

Choose vendors:

• Click the 'Add' button in the 'File signed by vendors' stripe.

OMODO File Criteria		?		×
Please select the criteria to be applied.				
File Belongs to (File Group):				
Temporary Files		В	rowse	•
File created by applications:	Any	Ado	d ▼	\mathbf{v}
File started by processes:	Any	Ado	d 🔻	\sim
File created by users:	1 user(s)	Ado	ł	\mathbf{v}
File origin:	2 origin(s)	Ado	d 🔻	\sim
File rating:	Unrecognized	Sele	ct 🔻	\sim
File signed by vendors:	Any	Ado راس	d 🔻	~
		Ve Fil	e Signe	rom Vendor I er Process Sigr

• There are three ways you can add a vendor:

1. Directly select a vendor

- Choose 'Vendor from a Vendor List' from the drop-down
- The 'Add Vendor' dialog opens with a list of vendors in the Vendor List

Vendor	Q	Rated By	Ţ	Rating	Ţ	
Itannex B.V.		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Neo IT Solutions Ltd.		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Festo Didactic SE		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
FTPPro.com		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Timo Bingmann		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Shearwell Data Ltd		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Boyishsoft		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
Integrated Scuba Systems, Ilc		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
TeacherWeb, Inc.		Comodo		✓ Trusted		
						Contraction of the local division of the loc

- Use the sort and filter options in the column headers to search for the vendor to be specified
- Choose the vendor and click 'OK'. The vendor will be added as a criterion.

2. Specify an executable file on your local drive

- Choose 'File Signer' from the drop-down
- Navigate to the executable file whose publisher you want to add as the criteria and click 'Open'.
- CCS identifies the vendor of the file and adds the to the rule.
- The rule will apply to files digitally signed by the vendor.

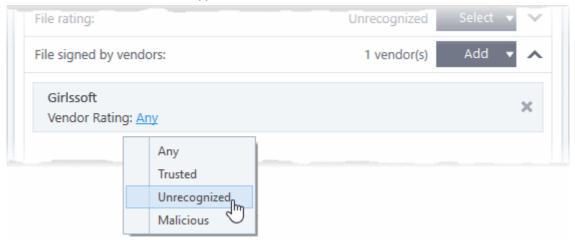
3. Select a currently running process

- Choose 'Running Process Signer' from the drop-down
- A list of all processes running at present on your computer is shown
- Select the process to specify the publisher of the application that started the process and click 'OK'
- CCS identifies the vendor of the process and adds the to the rule.
- The rule will apply to files digitally signed by the vendor.

The selected vendor is added:

1 yandar(c)	further in from the large large in the second		
1 vendor(s)	Add	-	^
		>	¢
			\$

- Vendor Rating The rule will only apply to the vendor's files IF the vendor has this rating at the time the file is checked. Note, the rating you set here can be different to the actual vendor rating in 'Settings' > 'File Rating' > 'File List' > 'Vendor Rating'.
 - Example. If you select 'Trusted' here, then CCS will apply the rule if the vendor is trusted at the time the file is checked. If the vendor's rating changes to 'Malicious' or 'Unrecognized', then the rule isn't applied.



• Repeat the process to add more vendors

Set the file age as filter criteria

• Click the 'Select' button in the 'File age' stripe.

C	COMODO File Criteria		?		×
	Please select the criteria to be applied.				
	File location:				
			Bro	wse	×
	File created by applications:	Any	Add	•	~
	File started by processes:	Any	Add	•	~
	File created by users:	Any	Add		~
	File origin:	Any	Add	•	~
	File rating:	Any	Select	•	~
	File signed by vendors:	Any	Add	•	~
	File age:	Any	Select)
	COMODO File age:		?	×	
	File creation date:				
	Before V 04/15/2019 V 4:11:24 PM				
	O File age:				
	Less Than 🔻 1 🖨 day(s) 🔻				
	ОК		CANCEL		

You can set the file age in two ways:

- File Creation Date To set a threshold date to include the files created before or after that date, choose this option, choose 'Before'/'After' from the first drop-down and set the threshold date and time in the respective combo-boxes.
- File age To select the files whose age is less than or more than a certain period, choose this option and specify the period.
 - Less Than CCS will check for reputation if a file is younger than the age you set here. Select the interval in hours or days from the first drop-down combo box and set hours or days in the second drop-down box. (Default and recommended = 1 hours)

.



- **More Than** CCS will check for reputation if a file is older than the age you set here. Select the interval in hours or days from the first drop-down combo box and set hours or days in the second drop-down box. (Default and recommended = 1 hours)
- Click 'OK' in the File Criteria dialog after selecting the filters to save your settings to the rule. The list of criteria will be displayed under the Criteria tab in the 'Manage Contained Program' dialog.

COMODO Manage Contained Program	? 🗆 X
Action Run Virtually	•
The selected containment action will be applied if file propertie	s match the following criteria:
CRITERIA OPTIONS	
	Edit
File Belongs to (File Group): Temporary Files	
File created by users: Guests	
File origin: Removable Media Internet	
File rating: Unrecognized	
File signed by vendors: Girlssoft Vendor Rating: Any	
	OK CANCEL

Step 3 - Select the Options

The next step is to choose optional actions and restrictions to be imposed on items contained by the rule.

• Click the 'Options' tab.



COMODO Manage Contained Program	?		×
Action Run Virtually			•
The selected containment action will be applied if file properties match the fol	lowing	criteria:	
CRITERIA OPTIONS			
Log when this action is performed			
Set Restriction Level Partially Limited V			
□ Limit maximum memory consumption to 1 → MB			
Limit program execution time to 1 secs			
ок	C	ANCEL	

The options will be displayed, depending on the 'Action' chosen in Step 1.

The options available for 'Ignore' action are:

- Log when this action is performed Whenever this rule is applied for the action, it will be added to CCS containment logs.
- Don't apply the selected action to child processes Child processes are the processes launched by the
 application. CCS treats all child processes as individual processes and forces them to run as per the file
 rating and the containment rules.
 - By default, this option is not enabled and the 'Ignore' rule will also apply to child process of the target application(s).
 - If this option is enabled then the 'Ignore' rule will be applied only to the target application. Any child processes will be checked and containment rules individually applied as per their file rating.

The 'Don't apply the selected action to child processes' option is available for the 'Ignore' action only.

The options available for 'Run Restricted' and 'Run Virtually' actions are:

- Log when this action is performed Whenever this rule is applied for the action, it will be added to CCS containment logs.
- Set Restriction Level When Run Restricted is selected in Action, then this option is automatically selected and cannot be unchecked while for Run Virtually action the option can be checked or unchecked. The options for Restriction levels are:
 - Partially Limited The application is allowed to access all operating system files and resources like the clipboard. Modification of protected files/registry keys is not allowed. Privileged operations like loading drivers or debugging other applications are also not allowed. (*Default*)
 - Limited Only selected operating system resources can be accessed by the application. The

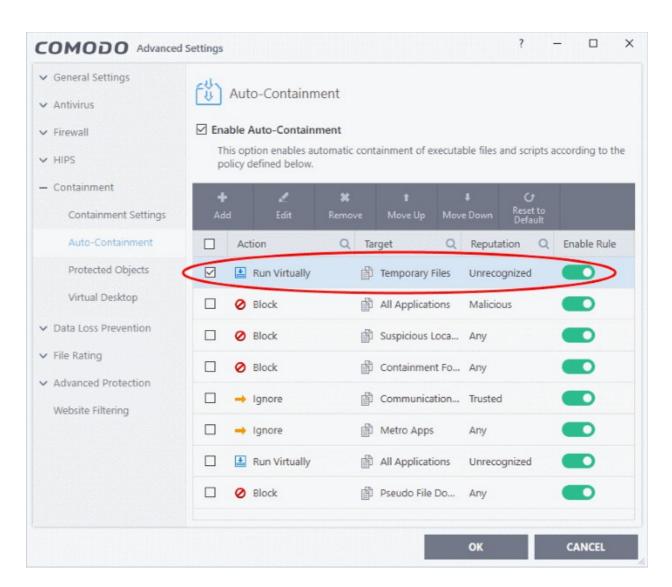
application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run without Administrator account privileges.

- **Restricted** The application is allowed to access very few operating system resources. The application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run with very limited access rights. Some applications, like computer games, may not work properly under this setting.
- **Untrusted** The application is not allowed to access any operating system resources. The application is not allowed to execute more than 10 processes at a time and is run with very limited access rights. Some applications that require user interaction may not work properly under this setting.
- Limit maximum memory consumption to Enter the memory consumption value in MB that the process should be allowed.
- Limit program execution time to Enter the maximum time in seconds the program should run. After the specified time, the program will be terminated.

For 'Block' action, the following options are available:

- Log when this action is performed Whenever this rule is applied for the action, it will be added to CCS containment logs.
- **Quarantine program** If checked, the programs will be automatically quarantined. See **Manage Quarantined Items** for more information.

Choose the options and click 'OK'. The rule will be added and displayed in the list.





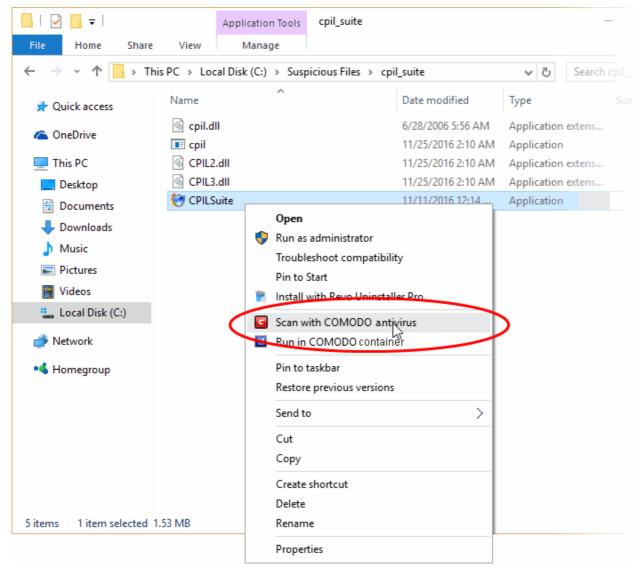
Important Note: Please make sure the auto-containment rules do not conflict. If it does conflict, the settings in the rule that is higher in the list will prevail. You can restore the rules to default rules at any time by clicking the 'Reset to Default' button at the top.

Run an Instant Antivirus Scan on Selected Items

- You can scan individual files or folders instantly to check whether they contain any threats.
- This is useful if you are wary about an item you have copied from an external source or downloaded from the internet.

Instantly scan an item

· Right-click on the item and select 'Scan with COMODO Antivirus' from the context sensitive menu



The item will be scanned immediately.

Note - CCS skips files which are larger than the max. size, and those that take longer to scan than the max time allowed.

Click 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans', then open the 'Full Scan' profile to view these thresholds.

• Scan results are shown when the scan finishes:

	can			?			×
100%	TASK: C:\Old Man Apps\poison1\hazard.bin STATUS: Scan Finished ELAPSED TIME: 00:00:07						
THREAT(S) FOUND	: 1 🛞 SKIPPED FILES: 0						
Threat Name	c	Action	Clean			•	
Malware@#3fxg8e8	df3its						
C:\Old Man A	pps\poison1\hazard.bin	🗸 Cle	an			v	
Turn off this complete the second	puter if no threats are found at the end of the	scan					
CLOSE			АРР	PLY S	ELECTE	Ο ΑCTIO	NS

Click here for more details to take action on the infected item(s).

Create an Antivirus Scan Schedule

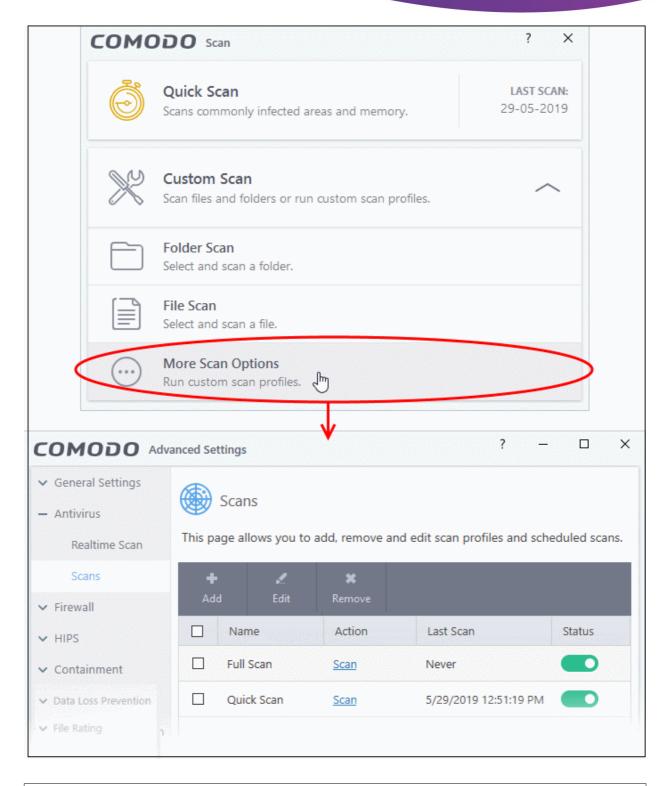
- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan' > 'Custom Scan' > 'More Scan Options'
- A custom scan profile lets you configure your own scan with your own scan settings.
- You can define exactly which files and folders to scan, what time they should be scanned, and configure scan settings.

Create a scan schedule

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks' > 'Scan'
- Select 'Custom Scan' then 'More Scan Options'

The 'Scans' page shows pre-defined and user created scan profiles. You can create and manage new profiles in this page:





Tip: You can also get to this screen by clicking 'Settings' > 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'.

• Click 'Add' to create a new custom scan profile.



сомо	DO Scan					?		×
Scan Name:	Old man do	ocuments						
Define items	to be scanned	d, scanning op	tions and run	ning schedule				
ITEMS	OPTIONS	SCHEDULE						
C4	₽ ⊋	2	×					
Add Files	Add Folder	Add Area	Remove					
Pro	ofile							
<u> </u>					 			
					ОК	C	ANCEL	

First, create a name for the profile. The next steps are:

- Select the items to be scan
- Configure scan options for the profile (optional)
- Configure a scan schedule (optional)

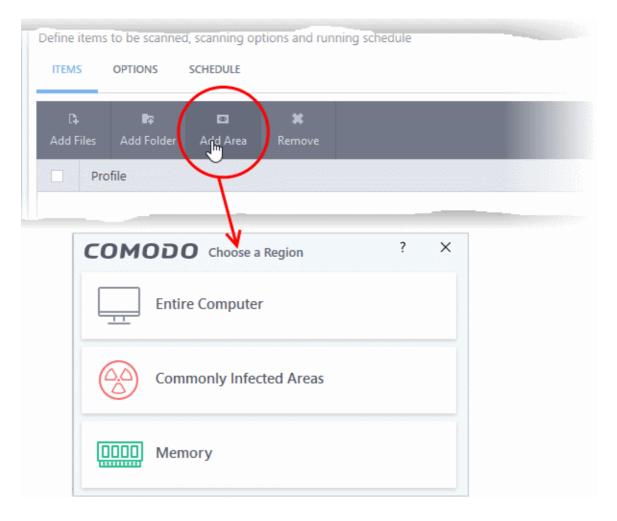
Select items to scan

• Click the 'Items' button at the top of the scan interface.

You can add items as follows:

- Add File Add individual files to the profile. Click the 'Add Files' button and browse to the file you want to include.
- Add Folder Add entire folders to the profile. Click the 'Add Folder' button and choose the folder you want to include. All files in the folder are covered by the scan.
- Add Area Scan a specific region. The choices are 'Full Computer', 'Commonly Infected Areas' and 'System Memory'. See screenshot below:





• Repeat the process to add more items to the profile. You can mix-and-match files, folders and areas in your custom scan.

Configure scan options

• Click 'Options' at the top of the 'Scan' interface



COMODO Scan ? 🗆 X
Scan Name:
Define items to be scanned, scanning options and running schedule
ITEMS OPTIONS SCHEDULE
Decompress and scan compressed files
This option allows scanner to decompress archive files e.gzip, .rar, etc. during scanning
Use cloud while scanning
This option allows scanner to connect to cloud to query file ratings
Automatically clean threats Quarantine Threats
When the threats are identified, perform the selected action automatically
Show scan results window
This option enables to view results of scans launched as per schedule or from the management portal, as well as removable media scans.
Use heuristics scanning Low 🔻
Use the selected level of sensitivity while scanning heuristically
✓ Limit maximum file size to 40 MB While scanning, if a file size is larger than specified, it is not scanned
Run this scan with Background
Priority of scanner determines how much of the computer resources are used among other tasks
☑ Update virus database before running
This option makes sure the database is updated before running the scan
Detect potentially unwanted applications
Potentially unwanted applications are programs that are unwanted despite the possibility that users consented to download them.
Apply this action to suspicious autorun processes Terminate and Disable 💌
The selected action will be automatically applied if unrecognized Windows services, autostart entries or scheduled tasks are detected.
Limit scan time of a single file to 9 imin(s) When the set time limit is reached, the file will be skipped and antivirus will proceed scanning other files.
OK CANCEL

Decompress and scan compressed files - The scan will include archive files such as .ZIP and .RAR files. Supported formats include RAR, WinRAR, ZIP, WinZIP ARJ, WinARJ and CAB archives (**Default = Enabled**).

Use cloud while scanning - Improves accuracy by augmenting the local scan with an online look-up of Comodo's latest virus database. This means CCS can detect the latest malware even if your virus database is out-dated. (*Default = Disabled*).

Automatically clean threats - Select whether or not CCS should automatically remove any malware found by the



scan. (**Default = Enabled**).

- **Disabled** = Results are shown at the end of the scan with a list of any identified threats. You can manually deal with each threat in the results screen. See **Process Infected Files** for guidance on manually handling detected threats.
- **Enabled** = Threats are handled automatically. Choose the action that CCS should automatically take:
 - **Quarantine Threats** Malicious items will be moved to quarantine. You can review quarantined items and delete them permanently or restore them. See 'Manage Quarantined Items' for more details.
 - **Disinfect Threats** If a disinfection routine exists, CCS will remove the virus and keep the original file. If not, the file will be quarantined. (*Default*)

Show scan results window - You will see a summary of results at the end of the scan. This includes the number of objects scanned and the number of threats found.

Use heuristic scanning - Select whether or not heuristic techniques should be used in scans on this profile. You can also set the heuristic sensitivity level. (*Default = Enabled*).

Background. Heuristics is a technology that analyzes a file to see if it contains code typical of a virus. It is about detecting 'virus-like' attributes rather than looking for a signature which exactly matches a signature on the blacklist. This means CCS can detect brand new threats that are not even in the virus database.

If enabled, please select a sensitivity level. The sensitivity level determines how likely it is that heuristics will decide a file is malware:

• Low - Least likely to decide that an unknown file is malware. Generates the fewest alerts.

Despite the name, this setting combines a very high level of protection with a low rate of false positives. We recommend this setting for most users. (Default)

- **Medium** Detects unknown threats with greater sensitivity than the low setting, but with a corresponding rise in possible false positives.
- **High** Highest sensitivity to detecting unknown threats. This also raises the possibility of more alerts and false positives.

Limit maximum file size to - Specify the largest file size that the antivirus should scan. CCS will not scan files bigger than the size specified here. (*Default* = 40 MB).

Run this scan with - If enabled, you can set the priority of scans on this profile The available options are:

- High
- Normal
- Low
- Background

If you disable this option then the scan runs in the background (*Default*)

Update virus database before running - CCS checks for and downloads the latest virus signatures before starting a scan. (*Default* = *Enabled*).

Detect potentially unwanted applications - The antivirus also scans for applications that (i) a user may or may not be aware is installed on their computer and (ii) may contain functionality and objectives that are not clear to the user. Example PUA's include adware and browser toolbars. PUA's are often bundled as an additional utility when installing another piece of software. Unlike malware, many PUA's are legitimate pieces of software with their own EULA agreements. However, the true functionality of the utility might not have been made clear to the end-user at the time of installation. For example, a browser toolbar may also contain code that tracks your activity on the internet. (*Default = Enabled*).

Apply this action to suspicious autorun processes - Specify how CCS should handle unrecognized auto-run items, Windows services, and scheduled tasks.

- **Ignore** The item is allowed to run (*Default*)
- Terminate CCS stops the process / service



- **Terminate and Disable** Auto-run processes are stopped and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.
- **Quarantine and Disable** Auto-run processes are quarantined and the corresponding auto-run entry removed. In the case of a service, CCS disables the service.

Note 1 - This setting only protects the registry during the on-demand scan itself. To monitor the registry at all times, go to 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Miscellaneous'.

• See Miscellaneous Settings for more details

Note 2 - CCS runs script analysis on certain applications to protect their registry records. You can manage these applications in 'Advanced Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Script Analysis' > 'Autorun Scans'.

• See 'Autorun Scans' in Script Analysis Settings for more details.

Limit scan time of a single file to - Set the maximum time allowed to scan an individual file. CCS will skip files that take longer to scan than the specified time. Omitted files are shown in the 'Skipped Files' tab in the results screen.

Schedule the scan

Click 'Schedule' at the top of the 'Scan' interface

COMODO Scan	? 🗆 X
Scan Name:	
Define items to be scanned, scanning options and running schedule	
ITEMS OPTIONS SCHEDULE	
Frequency:	^
Do not schedule this task	
O Every few hours	
O Every Day	
O Every Week	
O Every Month	
O Monthly (chosen days of week)	
Additional Options	~
c	OK CANCEL

Do not schedule this task - The scan profile is created but not run automatically. The profile will be available for ondemand scans.

Every few hours - Run the scan at the frequency set in 'Repeat scan every NN hour(s)'

Every Day - Run the scan every day at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field.

Every Week - Run the scan on the days specified in 'Days of the Week', at the time specified in the 'Start Time' field. You can select the days of the week by clicking on them.

Every Month - Run the scan on the dates specified in 'Days of the month', at the time specified in the 'Start Time'



field. You can select the dates of the month by clicking on them.

Monthly (chosen days of the week) - Run the scan on a specific week, or weeks, in a month. Select the weeks in from the menus.

Additional Options

- **Run only when computer is not running on battery** The scan only runs when the computer is plugged into the power supply. This is useful when you are using a laptop or other mobile device.
- **Run only when computer is IDLE** The scan only runs if the computer is in an idle state at the scheduled time. Select this option if you do not want the scan to disturb you while you are using your computer.
- **Turn off computer if no threats are found at the end of the scan** Will turn off your computer if no threats are found during the scan. This is useful when you are scheduling scans to run at nights.
- Run during Windows Automatic Maintenance Only available for Windows 8 and later. Select this option if you want the scan to run when Windows enters into automatic maintenance mode. The scan will run at maintenance time in addition to the configured schedule.
- The option 'Run during Windows Maintenance' will be available only if 'Automatically Clean Threats' is enabled for the scan profile under the 'Options' tab. See **Automatically Clean Threats**.

Note: Scheduled scans will only run if the profile is enabled. Use the switch in the 'Status' column to turn the profile on or off.

• Click 'OK' to save the profile.

The profile will be available for deployment in future.

COMODO Advance	d Settings				? —		×
 General Settings Antivirus Realtime Scan 	Scan		add, remove	and edit sca	an profiles and scheduled so	cans.	
Scans	+ Add	۲. Edit	XX Remove				
✓ Firewall	Add	Edit	Kemove				
✓ HIPS	Nam	ne		Action	Last Scan	Status	
✓ Containment	Full 9	Scan		<u>Scan</u>	12/11/2018 5:44:22 PM		
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Quic	k Scan		<u>Scan</u>	12/11/2018 2:15:38 PM		
✓ File Rating	susp	icious		Scan	Never		
✓ Advanced Protection							
Website Filtering							
					ОК	CANCEL	



Run Untrusted Programs inside the Container

- Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks' > 'Run Virtual'
 - Choose the program you want to run
 - Click 'Open'
- CCS lets you run programs inside the container on a 'one-off' basis.
- This is helpful to test new/beta programs you have downloaded but are not yet sure you trust.
- You can also create a desktop shortcut to run the application inside the container on future occasions. The following image shows how a 'virtual' shortcut will appear on your desktop:

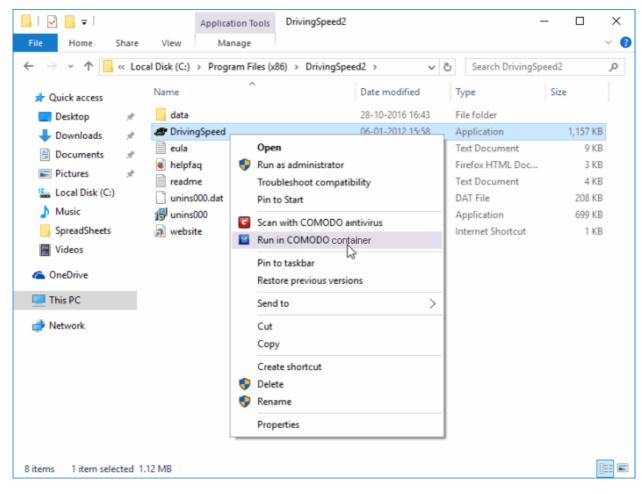


Use any of the following methods to run a program in the container:

- Right click menu
- From the 'Containment Tasks' area
- From the widget (browsers only)

Right-click menu

- 1. Navigate to the program you want to run in the container
- 2. Right-click on the program
- 3. Choose 'Run in COMODO container' from the context sensitive menu:





The 'Containment Tasks' interface

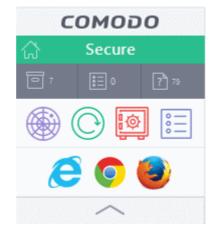
- 1. Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks'
- 2. Click the 'Run Virtual' tile

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
K HOME (j) SETTINGS (j) LOGS	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	Q,
Run Virtual Run applications in the container and create shortcuts for them on the desktop.	📌
Reset the Conta Clean container da Clean container da Vou can run applications inside the container isolated from the rest of the computer, to prevent them from making permanent changes to the system.	∲ ranced
Run Virtual Des Choose and Run Create a secure vii it. Choose and Run Select an application and run it inside the container.	*
Create a virtual desktop shortcut	?

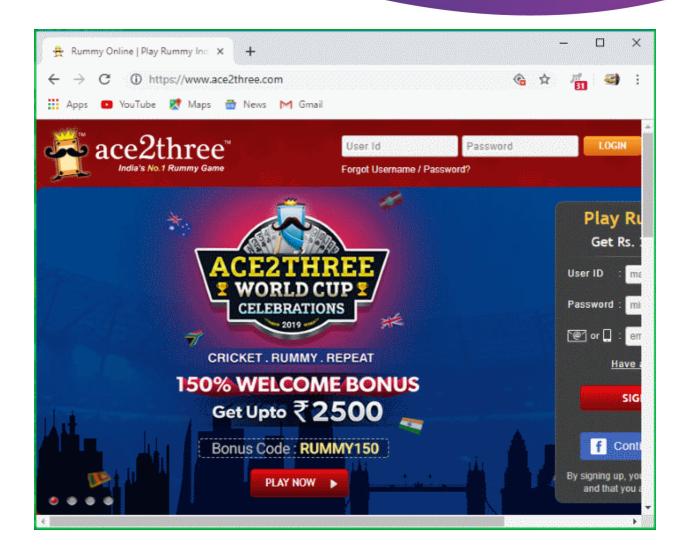
- Click 'Choose and Run', browse to your application then click 'Open'.
- The contained application will have a green border around it. Enable 'Create a virtual desktop shortcut' if you plan to run the application in the container in future.

Run browsers in container

The CCS widget contains shortcuts to run your browsers in the container:



- · Click a browser icon to start the browser inside the container
- The green border indicates that the browser is in the container:



Run Browsers Inside the Container

- This topic explains how to run your internet browser inside the container.
- Surfing the internet from within the container is the same as normal, with the benefit that any malicious files you inadvertently download cannot damage your real computer.
- You can also create a desktop shortcut to run the browser inside the container on future occasions. The following image shows how a 'virtual' shortcut will appear on your desktop:



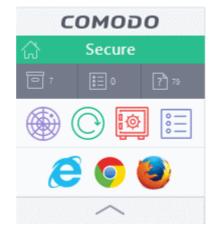
There are two ways to run a browser in the container:

- From the desktop widget
- From the 'Containment Tasks' area

Start a browser from the desktop widget

• The CCS widget contains shortcuts to run your browsers in the container:





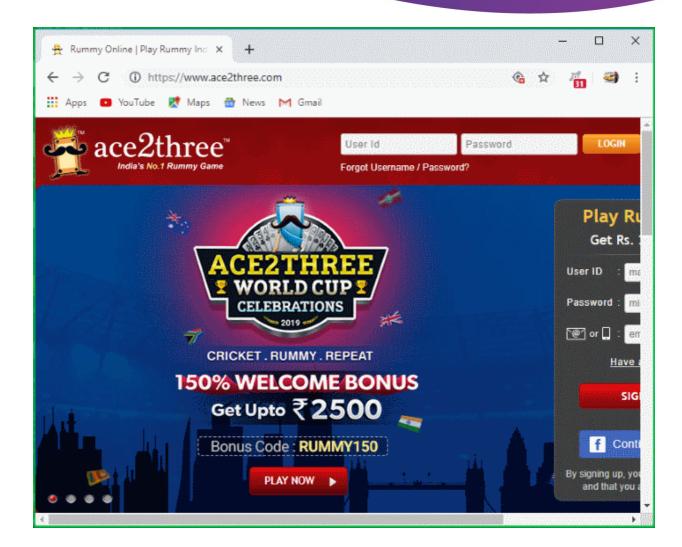
Start a browser from the 'Containment Tasks' interface

- 1. Click 'Tasks' > 'Containment Tasks'
- 2. Click 'Run Virtual'

COMODO Client - Security 12	- ×
K HOME () SETTINGS () LOGS	
Secure All systems are active and running	
GENERAL TASKS FIREWALL TASKS CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	Q
Run Virtual Run applications in the container and create shortcuts for the mon the desktop.	📌
Reset the Conta COMODO Run Virtual ? ×	7 *
Clean container da You can run applications inside the container isolated from the rest of the computer, to prevent them from making permanent changes to the system.	ranced
Run Virtual Des Create a secure vii it. Choose and Run Select an application and run it inside the container.	*
Create a virtual desktop shortcut	1

- 3. Click 'Choose and Run' then navigate to the install location of the browser. Select the .exe file of the browser.
- 4. Select 'Create a virtual desktop shortcut' to quickly run the application in the container in future.

The browser will run with a green border around it, indicating that it is contained:



Restore Incorrectly Quarantined Items

This page explains how to restore an item from quarantine. You may want to do this if

- You think CCS has incorrectly classed it as malicious (a false positive)
- It was manually moved to quarantine by mistake

Restore an item from quarantine

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks'
- Click 'View Quarantine'



		ive and running	
GENERAL	FIREWALL TASKS	CONTAINMENT TASKS DLP TASKS ADVANCED TASKS	(
	Scan Scan your computer for viruse	s and spyware View and manage threats quarantined by scanner.	virus
0	Update Run the updater to check for p database updates.		
OM	10D0 Quarantine	? — 🗆	
∔ Add	S Cr I Delete Restore	O ✓ Delete All Submit	
			4
	Item	Q Location Q Date/Time	Ľ
	Item Malware@#jgft8m0jxmvk	Q Location Q Date/Time Image: Weight of the state o	M
_			
	Malware@#jgft8m0jxmvk	 C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:15 P 	м
	Malware@#jgft8m0jxmvk Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw	 C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:15 P C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:07 P 	M
	Malware@#jgft8m0jxmvk Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw	 C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:15 P C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:07 P C:\Suspicious\Malware-Samples-mas 5/29/2019 3:58:02 P 	M M
	Malware@#jgft8m0jxmvk Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw Malware@#vigyaoklh7gw Malware@#1ienpeuxrw2dy	Image: Sector of the sector	M M M

- Select the item(s) you wish to move out of quarantine and click the 'Restore' button.
- You will then be asked if you wish to create an exclusion for the file so that it will not be flagged by future antivirus scans:



COMODO Quarantine		?	_		×		
✓ Item	Q Location	Q Dat	e/Time		İ		
Generic.Infector.4	C:\Users Desktop\x86\vt.exe	4/10)/2017 6:2	0:16 AM			
COMOD	Client - Security		×				
COMODO Client - Security × Would you like to add these files to your antivirus excluded files too?							
	YES	NO					
	RI	EFRESH		CLOSE			

- 'Yes' The items will be restored to their original locations and added to the antivirus exclusion list. The restored files will be skipped in future AV scans.
- 'No' The items will be restored to their original locations but may still be flagged by future AC scans.
- Click 'Close' to exit.

See Manage Quarantined Items and Submit Quarantined Items to Comodo for Analysis for more information on this topic.

Submit Quarantined Items to Comodo Valkyrie for Analysis

- You can send quarantined items to Valkyrie for analysis. You may want to do this if you think the item is a false positive it was incorrectly flagged as malicious by CCS.
- Valkyrie is Comodo's file testing and verdicting system. After submitting your files, Valkyrie will analyze them with a range of static and dynamic tests to determine the file's trust rating.
- If the submitted item is found to be a false positive, it will be added to the Comodo white-list.
- If it is found to be malware, it will be added to the virus black-list.
- Submitting files helps Comodo enhance its virus signature database and benefits millions of CCS users. See **Quarantined Items** for more detailed information on the quarantine system.

Submit quarantined items

- Click 'Tasks' > 'General Tasks'
- Click 'View Quarantine'



Quarantine					?	- 1	- ×	
+ Add	⊘ Delete	C Restore	⊘ Delete All	Submit				
	Item	Q	Location		Q	Date/Ti	me	Ó
	User Item		E:\CCAV	\11-10-18\bru	tus.exe	2/20/20	19 12:04:	01 PM
	Application.Win32	LeakTest.d	🔞 E:\Suspi	cious files\All_	tests\cpil_suite	2/20/20	19 11:46:	44 AM

- Select the item(s) you wish to send for analysis
- Click 'Submit' > 'Submit to Valkyrie'

The submission progress will start:

COMODO Submit Files				—		×
57%	C:\ProgramData\Comodo\Cis\Quarantine\data\{6CF97A5B	-E59A	431F-9	917-CDE	1581224	177}
File Name		Stat	te			
C:\ProgramData\Co	omodo\Cis\Quarantine\data\{C929E1C0-BF11-4190-AD9A	\otimes	Upload	led		
<u>C:\ProgramData\Co</u>	omodo\Cis\Quarantine\data\{6CF97A5B-E59A-431F-9917	Ů	Upload	ling		
						mmmellis
STOP PAU	ISE		SEND	TO BACI	KGROUN	ID

The results state whether the file was successfully submitted, or whether it has already been submitted by other users and is pending analysis.



Enable File Sharing Applications like BitTorrent and Emule

This topic explains how to configure Comodo Firewall to work with file sharing applications like Shareaza/Emule and BitTorrent/UTorrent.

To allow file sharing applications:

- Disable 'Do Protocol analysis' (disabled, by default)
- Create a 'Predefined Firewall Ruleset' for Shareaza/Emule
- Create a 'Predefined Firewall Ruleset' for BitTorrent/Utorrent

Disable 'Do Protocol analysis'

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Firewall' > 'Firewall Settings'

COMODO Advanced	I Settings ? —	o x
 General Settings Antivirus 	Firewall Settings	^
- Firewall	Enable Firewall (Recommended) Safe Mode	
Firewall Settings	This option enables firewall which filters inbound and outbound traffic.	
Application Rules	Alert Settings	
Global Rules	☑ Do not show popup alerts Allow Requests ▼	
Rulesets	Turn traffic animation effects on	
Network Zones	Create rules for safe applications	
Portsets	Set alert frequency level Low 🔻	
✓ HIPS	Set new on-screen alert timeout to 120 secs	
✓ Containment	Advanced	
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Filter IPv6 traffic	
✓ File Rating	Filter loopback traffic (e.g. 127.x.x.x. ::1)	
 Advanced Protection 	Block fragmented IP traffic	
	Do protocol analysis	
Website Filtering	Fnahla anti-ARP shoofing	~

- 3. Disable 'Do not Show popup alerts' so CCS will generate alerts when you open Shareaza or Emule.
- 4. Disable 'Do Protocol Analysis'
- 5. Click 'OK' to save your settings.

Create a 'Predefined Firewall Ruleset' for Shareaza/Emule

- 1. Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Rulesets'
- 2. Click 'Add' from the options at the top.



COMODO Advanced	Settings				?
General SettingsAntivirus	Rulesets				
- Firewall	The following rulese	ts are defined or	n this compute	er:	
Firewall Settings Application Rules	Add Edit	X Remove			
Global Rules	Ruleset Nam				
Network Zones	Email Client				
сомодо	Firewall Ruleset			? 🗆	×
Name: For allowin	g Shereaza/Emule				
Use a Custom Re	uleset Copy from ▼				
+ 🖌 Add Edi		t I ove Up Move De	own		
Rules					Q
			ОК	CANC	EL

- 3. Enter a name for the new ruleset in the 'Description' text box. For example: 'For allowing Shareaza/Emule'.
- 4. Now you need to create six rules for the newly created ruleset.
 - Click 'Add' to open the 'Firewall Rule' interface
 - Choose options for each setting as described in 'Rule 1' below
 - After the rule is created, click 'OK' to add the rule
 - Repeat until all 6 rules have been added

сомодо	Firewall Rule	?	×
Action:	Allow	Log as firewall event if this rule is fired	
Protocol:	TCP		
Direction:	In 🔻		
Description	Rule for Incoming TCF	P Connections	
SOURCE ADDRESS	DESTINATION ADDRESS	SOURCE PORT DESTINATION PORT	
	OT the choice below) pe: Any Address		
		OK CANG	CEL

Rule 1

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : TCP
- Direction : In
- Description : Rule for incoming TCP connections
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A Port Range : (Start Port = 1024 / End Port = 65535)
- Destination port : A Single Port : (Port : Your TCP port of Shareaza/Emule)

Rule 2

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : UDP
- Direction : In
- Description : Rule for incoming UDP connections
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A Port Range : (Start Port = 1024 / End Port = 65535)
- Destination port : A Single Port : (Port : Your UDP port of Shareaza/Emule)

Rule 3

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : TCP or UDP
- Direction : Out



- Description : Rule for outgoing TCP and UDP connections
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A port range : (start port = 1024 / end port = 65535)
- Destination port : A port range : (start port = 1024 / end port = 65535)

Rule 4

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : ICMP
- Direction : Out
- Description : Ping the server (edk network)
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- ICMP Details : Message : ICMP Echo Request

Rule 5

- Action : Ask (Also select the check box 'Log as a firewall event if this rule is fired')
- Protocol : TCP
- Direction : Out
- Description : Rule for HTTP requests
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A port range : (start port = 1024 / end port = 65535)
- Destination port : Type : Single Port; (Port : 80)

Rule 6

- · Action : Block (Also select the check box 'Log as a firewall event if this rule is fired')
- Protocol : IP
- Direction : In/Out
- Description : Block and Log All Unmatching Requests
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- IP Details : IP Protocol : Any
- 6. Click 'OK' in the 'Firewall Ruleset' interface.
- 7. Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface to save your ruleset.

The new ruleset will be created and added. Start Shareaza or Emule. When CCS raises an alert:

- Choose 'Treat this application as...'
- Select the the ruleset you just created from the options (e.g. 'For allowing Shareaza/Emule')
- Select 'Remember my answer'.

Create a 'Predefined Firewall Ruleset' for BitTorrent/Utorrent'

- 1. Click 'Settings' > 'Firewall' > 'Rulesets'
- 2. Click 'Add' from the options at the top.
- 3. Enter a name for the new ruleset in the 'Description' text box. For example: 'For allowing For allowing BitTorrent/Utorrent'.
- 4. Now you need to create six rules for the newly created ruleset.



To do so,

- Click 'Add' to open the 'Firewall Rule' interface
- · Choose options for each setting as described in 'Rule 1' below
- After the rule is created, click 'OK' to add the rule
- Repeat until all 6 rules have been added

Rule 1

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : TCP or UDP
- Direction : In
- Description : Rule for incoming TCP and UDP connections
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A Port Range : (Start port = 1024 / End port = 65535)
- Destination port : A Single Port (Port: The port of BitTorrent/Utorrent)

Rule 2

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : TCP
- Direction : Out
- Description : Rule for outgoing TCP connections
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A Port Range : (Start port = 1024 / End port = 65535)
- Destination port : A Port Range : (Start port = 1024 / End port = 65535)

Rule 3

- Action : Allow
- Protocol : UDP
- Direction : Out
- Description : Rule for outgoing UDP connections
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A Single Port: Port: the port of utorrent
- Destination port : A Port Range : (Start port = 1024 / End port = 65535)

Rule 4

- Action : Ask (Also select the check box 'Log as a firewall event if this rule is fired')
- Protocol : TCP
- Direction : Out
- Description : Rule for HTTP requests
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- Source port : A Port Range : (Start port = 1024 / End port = 65535)
- Destination port ; A Single Port (Port = 80)

Rule 5

- Action : Block (Also select the check box 'Log as a firewall event if this rule is fired')
- Protocol : IP



- Direction : In/Out
- Description : Block and Log All Unmatching Requests
- Source Address : Any Address
- Destination Address : Any Address
- IP Details : IP Protocol : Any
- Click 'OK' in the 'Firewall Ruleset' interface.
- Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface to save your ruleset.

The new ruleset will be created and added. Start BitTorrent or Utorrent. When CCS raises an alert:

- Choose 'Treat this application as...'
- Select the the ruleset you just created from the options (e.g. 'BitTorrent/Utorrent')
- Select 'Remember my answer'.

Block any Downloads of a Specific File Type

This page explains how to configure CCS to prohibit downloads of specific types of file.

Example scenarios:

- Some malicious websites try to push malware in .exe file format. These files, known as executables, can run commands on your computer. If the .exe is malicious then these commands could install a virus, initiate a buffer overflow attack or could contain code to turn your PC into a zombie. For this reason, you may wish to block all downloads of files with a .exe file extension.
- You may also want to block the download of audio files (.wma, .mp3, .wav, .midi), video files (.wmv, .avi, .mpeg, .swf) or image files (.bmp. .jpg, .png) for various reasons.

You can block downloads of a specific file type by configuring 'Blocked Files' in the HIPS module:

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects'
- 3. Click the 'Blocked Files' tab:



COMODO Advanced Setting	<u>js</u>				?	-		×
General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS	Protected O		efined on thi	s computer:				
HIPS Settings HIPS Rules	Add Edit	Kernove	Delete	M INTERFACES				
Protected Objects		rensicAnalysisToc	I.exe					Q
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection 								
Website Filtering								
				ок		C/	NCEL	

- 4. Click 'Add' > 'Applications'.
- 5. Browse to the default download folder for your browser from the 'Open' dialog:

The default download location for most browsers is C:\Users\[username]\Download.

6. Select any file from the folder and click 'Open'.

The file will be added to the 'Blocked Files' list.

- 7. Select the entry from the Blocked Files interface, and click 'Edit' at the top
- 8. Replace the name of the file with simply '*.file_extension', where 'file_extension' is the file type you wish to block. For example:
 - Change 'C:\Users\[username]\Downloads\file-name.pdf' to C:\Users\[username]\Downloads*.exe to block all files with *.exe extension.
 - Change 'C:\Users\[username]\Downloads\file-name.xls' to C:\Users\[username]\Downloads*.jpg to block all files with *.jpg extension.



COMODO Edit property		?	×
Edit File Path C:\Users\Administrator\Downloads*.exe			
	ОК	CANCEL	

- 9. Click 'OK' in the 'Edit Property' dialog.
- 10. Click 'OK' to save your settings.

This will block browser downloads of the specific file type to your 'Downloads' folder. Repeat the process if other browsers on your system have a different download folder.

Note: Blocking files in this way will only block downloads of specific file types to specific folders. If you change the folder for browser downloads then the download will be allowed.

Tip:

- To unblock future downloads, go to 'HIPS' > 'Protected Objects' > 'Blocked Files', select the file path, and choose 'Remove'.
- To unblock individual files, go to 'General Tasks' > 'Unblock Applications' and choose 'Unblock'.

Disable Auto-Containment on a Per-application Basis

- The default auto-containment rules will run all unknown executables in the container and queue them for submission to Comodo for behavior analysis.
- We recommend most users leave this setting intact to ensure the highest protection levels.
- Should you wish, you can create an 'Ignore' rule to exclude certain files or file types from containment.
- This is could be useful for developers testing new applications which, by their nature, are unknown to the safe list.

Create an auto-containment exception

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Containment' > 'Auto-Containment' on the left
- 3. Ensure that 'Enable Auto-Containment' is selected
- 4. Click 'Add' to create a new rule:

Client - Security 12						-	×
🗄 TASKS 🍈 SETTINGS 🖉 LOGS	;						
			Ser an		Victor Con	F contine	
OMODO Advanced Settings					? .	- 0	×
General Settings	to-Containn	nent					
Firewall	Auto-Contain	ment					
	otion enables a defined below.		tainment of e	xecutable file	s and scripts a	according to	the
Containment Settings	Edit	X Remove	t Move Up	↓ Move Down	C Reset to Default		
Auto-Containment 🔲 Ac	tion	Q Ta	rget	Q Reputa	ition Q I	Enable Rule	-
COMODO Manage Contain	Run Virtually ned Program		C:\Program I	Fil Any	? 🗆	×	
Action Run Virtually						•	
The selected containment action w	ill be applied	d if file pro	perties mat	ch the follo	owing criter	ia:	
CRITERIA OPTIONS							
					Edit		
No criteria selected							
			OK		CANCE	L	

5. Select 'Ignore' from the 'Action' drop-down:



сом	Manage Contained Program	?		×
Action The sele CRITER	Ignore Run Restricted Ct Run Virtually Block			•
No cri	teria selected		Edit	

- 6. Click the 'Edit' button under the 'Criteria' tab
- 7. Click 'Browse' to specify the type of item you wish to exclude:

Please select the criteria to be applied.			
File location:			
D:\My safe program\cuckoo-setup.exe		Brows	
File created by applications:	Any	Files Running	Processes
File started by processes:	Any	File Group	ps
		Folder File Hash	
		Process H	lash
File created by users:	Anv	Add 🗸	
File created by users: File origin:	Any Any	Add 🗸	
-	-		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
File origin:	Any	Add 🔻 🗸	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

- 8. You can select individual files, folders, processes, file groups or hashes. Click 'Open' when you have made your selection.
- 9. Click 'Select' at the end of the 'File Rating' row and select 'Unrecognized' from the drop-down:

File Created by User(s):	Any Add 🗸 🗸
File Origin(s):	Any Add 🔻 🗸
File Rating:	Unrecognized Select
	Trusted
Unrecognized	Unrecognized
	Malicious

10. Next, click the 'Options' tab.

COMODO Manage Contained Program	?		×				
Action Ignore			•				
The selected containment action will be applied if file properties match the following criteria:							
CRITERIA OPTIONS							
Log when this action is performed							
Don't apply the selected action to child processes							
ОК		CANCEL					

- Log when this action is performed Optional. Whenever this rule is applied for a file, it will be added to CCS containment logs.
- **Don't apply the selected action to child processes** Child processes are processes spawned by a parent application. By default, CCS treats all child processes individually.
 - Disabled The ignore rule will apply to the target application and all child processes that it spawns. All



will be allowed to run outside the container.

- Enabled The ignore rule will apply only to the target application. All child processes will be inspected and possibly contained as per their file rating.
- 11. Select options as required and click 'OK'.

nced S	ettings						?	-		×
	Enable A	to-Containm Auto-Contain otion enables au defined below.	ment	tainment of e	xecut	able files and	scripts	accord	ing to t	he
	∔ Add	. Edit	XX Remove	↑ Move Up	Mo	↓ ve Down D	⊖ eset to efault			
	Ac	tion	Q Ta	rget	Q	Reputation	Q	Enable	e Rule	Â
	☑ →	Ignore	6	D:\My safe p	ro	Unrecognize	d			
	• 0	Block	P	All Applicatio	ons	Malicious				
		Block	Þ	Suspicious Lo	DC	Any				Е
	• •	Block	P	Containment	F	Any				
	-	Ignore		COMODO CI	ie	Trusted				
		Ignore	P	Metro Apps		Any)	
										Ŧ
						ок		CA	NCEL	

The new rule will be listed in the 'Auto-Containment' screen. Make sure to keep this rule above all other rules for unrecognized files.

Alternatively...

- 1. Assign a 'Trusted' rating to the file in the File List interface
- 2. Digitally sign your files with a code signing certificate from a trusted CA then manually add your organization to the **Vendors List** as trusted.
- 3. Disable auto-containment by de-selecting the 'Enable Auto-Containment' check box in the 'Autocontainment' settings panel. *Not recommended*

See Unknown Files: The Scanning Processes, for more details on auto-containment process.



Switch Off Automatic Antivirus Updates

- By default, Comodo Client Security automatically downloads software and antivirus database updates.
- However, some users like to control when updates are downloaded. For example, network admins may not want automatic updates because they take up too much bandwidth during the day.

CCS provides full control over virus and software updates. Click the appropriate link below to find out more:

- Switch off automatic updates entirely
- Switch off automatic virus updates selectively
- Switch off automatic virus signature database updates prior to Antivirus Scans

Switch off automatic updates entirely

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'General Settings' > 'Updates'
- 3. Disable 'Check for database updates every'

COMODO Advance	d Settings ? - \Box X					
 General Settings User Interface 	O Updates					
Updates	Check for database updates every					
Logging Configuration	Options Do not check for updates if I am using these connections					
✓ Antivirus	 Do not check for updates if I am using <u>these connections</u> Do not check for updates if running on battery 					
 Firewall HIPS 	 Check for updates during Windows Automatic Maintenance Send requests to COMODO online services only if internet connection is present 					
✓ Containment	Proxy and Host Settings					
 Data Loss Prevention File Rating 						
✓ Advanced Protection						
Website Filtering						
	OK CANCEL					
	OK CANCEL					

4. Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect

Switch off automatic updates selectively

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'General Settings' > 'Updates'



соморс	Advanced Settings		?	-		×
- General Setting User Interfac	(Updates					
Updates	Check for database updates every	1	÷	our(s)	•	
Logging	Options					
Configuratio	n Do not check for updates if I am using	these connections	>			
 Antivirus 	Do not check for updates if rupping on	hatterv			-	
✓ Firewall	COMODO Connections	?		×		
✓ HIPS	Connection Names					
✓ Containment						
✓ Data Loss Pre	Ethernet					
✓ File Rating rot						
✓ Advanced Prin						
Website Filter		ОК	CANCEL			
		ОК		C	ANCEL	

- Suppress automatic updates when using certain networks:
 - Select the 'Do not check updates if am using these connections' check-box
 - Then click 'these connections' to view a list of connections you use.
 - Select the connection over which you do not want CCS to check for updates and click 'OK.'
- **Do not check for updates if running on battery** Will only download updates when the computer is plugged in to the mains.
- 5. Click 'OK' for your settings to take effect

Switch off automatic virus signature database updates prior to AV Scans

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Antivirus' > 'Scans'
- 3. Select a target scan profile
- 4. Click 'Edit' from the options at the top
- 5. Click 'Options', scroll down, and clear the 'Update virus database before running' checkbox.



COMODO Advanced	Settings				? –		×
 General Settings Antivirus Waltime Scan 	Scans This page allows you to	o add, remove a	and edit scan p	rofiles and sc	heduled sc	ans.	
Scans V Firewall	+ Add Edit	Remove					
✓ HIPS	Name		Action	Last Scan		Status	
✓ Containment	🗌 🛛 Full Scan		Scan	Never			
✓ Data Loss Prevention	Quick Scan		Scan	Never			
✓ File Rating	Downloaded File	es	Scan	Never			
 Advanced Protection 		_					
6014030	•				?		×
COMODO Scan					ſ		
Scan Name: Downloade	d Files						
Define items to be scanned	d, scanning options and	l running sche	dule				
	SCHEDULE						
☑ Limit naximum file si	ze to 40	MB					^
While scanning, if a file	size is larger than spec	ified, it is not s	scanned				
🗹 Ryn this scan with	Background 🔻						
riority of scanner dete	ermines how much of th	e computer re	sources are us	sed among o	ther tasks		
Update virus databas	-						
This option makes sure	the database is update	d before runn	ing the scan				
Detect potentially un				al			
consented to download	pplications are program d them.	is that are unv	vanted despite	the possibili	ty that use	ers	
Apply this action to s	uspicious autorun pro	cesses	Terminate an	d Disable	•		
The selected action wil scheduled tasks are de	l be automatically applie tected.	ed if unrecogn	iized Windows	services, aut	ostart entr	ries or	
Limit scan time of a single file to 9 🚔 min(s)							
When the set time limit	t is reached, the file will	be skipped ar	nd antivirus wil	I proceed sca	anning oth	er files.	~
				ок	c	ANCEL	
							14



- 6. Click 'OK' on the 'Scan' interface.
- 7. Click 'OK' in the 'Advanced Settings' interface for your changes to take effect.

Suppress CCS Alerts Temporarily

- CCS shows you an alert if it finds a security threat, and also shows alerts for general system messages.
- 'Silent mode' lets you temporarily disable these alerts so they don't interrupt games or a presentation etc.
- During this time, operations that can interfere with user experience are either suppressed or postponed. This includes alerts and scheduled scans.
- All protection components are still 100% active in silent mode.

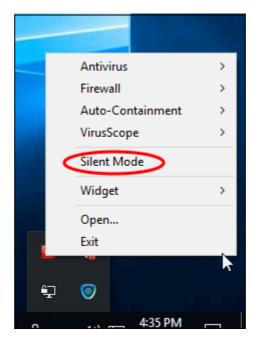
Temporarily stop pop-up alerts

• Click 'Silent Mode' button on the CCS home screen:

COMODO Client - Security 12		-	×
믐 TASKS 《ôː SETTINGS 《 LOGS			
Secure All systems are active and running MANAGE PROTECTION	Scan Update	View Quarantine	>
CX SILENT MODE		(2

- OR
- Right-click on the CCS tray icon and select 'Silent Mode'





The alerts are now suppressed.

• To resume alerts and scheduled scans, just deactivate 'Silent Mode' from the home screen or tray icon.

Control External Device Accessibility

- Click 'Settings' > 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'
- CCS helps you block access to selected external devices attempting to connect to your computer.
- The 'Device Control' panel lets you specify types of external devices that are to be blocked and define exclusions to it

Block an external device

- 1. Click 'Settings' on the CCS home screen
- 2. Click 'Advanced Protection' > 'Device Control'

COMODO Client	- Security 12		- ×
문 TASKS (값 SETTIN	GS 🖒 LOGS		
	7		
COMODO Advanc	ed Settings		? – 🗆 X
 General Settings Antivirus Firewall HIPS Containment Data Loss Prevention File Rating Advanced Protection VirusScope Scan Exclusions 	 Device Control Enable Device Control This option blocks devices of a cliere Bluetooth devices, printers, serial and Log detected devices Show notifications when devices a BLOCKED DEVICES EXCLUSIONS Use this table to manage the list of devices Add Remove 	nd parallel por	ts. bled or enabled
Device Control	Device	Q	Identification
Script Analysis Miscellaneous	USB storage devices		Class: {8A63AD27-0CD7-4F43-B8E1-07
Website Filtering			OK CANCEL

- Enable Device Control Activate the device control functionality to selectively prohibit access to external devices. You should specify devices to be banned in the 'Blocked Devices' pane. (Default = Enabled)
- Blocked Devices List of external device classes which are not allowed to connect to the endpoint. Example classes include 'USB Storage Devices', 'CD/DVD Drives', 'BlueTooth Devices' and 'Firewire Devices'.
- **Exclusions** Add exceptions to a blocked class. For example, if you wish block the class 'USB Devices' but wish to allow access for your company's authentication tokens, then you should add those USB tokens as exceptions.

Click here for more details on controlling device access

Appendix 2 - Comodo Secure DNS Service

Introduction

Comodo Secure DNS service replaces your existing Recursive DNS Servers and resolves all your DNS requests exclusively through Comodo's proprietary directory services platform. Most of the networks use recursive DNS services that are provided by their ISP or that reside on their own set of small DNS servers but it becomes essential to have a secure and broadly distributed DNS service to have a faster and safe DNS resolution.

Background Note: Every device on the internet is uniquely identified by a 32-bit number (IPv4 address) or a 128bit number (IPv6 address). While this is perfectly satisfactory for computers, humans are far more comfortable remembering names rather than a string of numbers. The 'Domain Name System' (DNS) provides the translation between those names and numbers. Virtually every piece of software, device, and service on the internet utilizes DNS to communicate with one another. DNS also makes this information available across the entire span of the internet, allowing users to find information remotely.

Comodo Secure DNS is a broadly distributed Recursive DNS service that gives you full control to determine how your clients interact with the internet. It requires no hardware or software and provides reliable, faster, smarter and safer internet experience.

- Reliable Comodo Secure DNS Directory Services Platform currently spans across five continents around the world. This allows us to offer you the most reliable fully redundant DNS service anywhere. Each node has multiple servers, and is connected by several Tier 1 carriers to the internet.
- Faster Our strategically placed nodes are located at the most optimal intersections of the internet. Unlike
 most DNS providers, Comodo Secure DNS directory services platform uses Anycast routing technology which means that no matter where you are located in the world, your DNS requests are answered by the
 closest available Comodo Secure DNS set of servers. Combine this with our huge cache and we can get
 the answers you seek faster and more reliably than anyone else. Furthermore, our "name cache
 invalidation" solution signals the Comodo Secure DNS recursive servers anytime one of our authoritative
 customers or partners updates a DNS record, fundamentally eliminating the concept of a TTL.
- Smarter Comodo's highly structured search and guide pages get you where you want to be, when you inadvertently attempt to go to a site that doesn't exist.
- Safer As a leading provider of computer security solutions, Comodo is keenly aware of the dangers that
 plague the internet today. Secure DNS helps users keep safe online with its malware domain filtering
 feature. Secure DNS references a real-time block list (RBL) of harmful websites (i.e. phishing sites,
 malware sites, spyware sites, excessive advertising sites, etc.) and will warn you whenever you attempt to
 access a site containing potentially threatening content. Directing your requests through highly secure
 servers can also reduce your exposure to the DNS Cache Poisoning attacks that may affect everybody else
 using your ISP.

To start Comodo Secure DNS service the DNS settings of your computer has to be modified to point to our server's IP addresses. Comodo Client Security automatically modifies the DNS settings of your system during its installation to get the services. You can also modify the DNS settings of your system manually, if you haven't selected the option during installation. You can also revert to the previous settings if you want, at anytime.

Click the following links to get the instructions for manually modifying the DNS settings on your router or on your computer.

- Router
- Windows

Router - Enable or Disable Comodo Secure DNS

You can manually enable or disable Comodo Secure DNS service in your Router by modifying the DNS settings accessible through DNS Server settings of your router. We recommend making the change on your router so that with one change, all the computers on your network can benefit from Comodo Secure DNS.

To enable the Comodo Secure DNS service, modify the DNS server IP address settings to Comodo Secure DNS server IP addresses. The IP address are:

Primary DNS : 8.26.56.26

Secondary DNS : 8.20.247.20

Modify the DNS settings

1. Login to your router. To log in and configure your router, you can open it up in your web browser. If you don't know the IP address for your router, don't worry, it is typically one of the following:

http://192.168.0.1 http://192.168.1.1 http://192.168.10.1

If you have forgotten your router's username and/or password, the most common username is "admin" and the password is either blank, "admin", or "password". If none of those work, you can often reset the password to the manufacturer default by pressing a button on the router itself, or in some cases access without a password if you try to access your router quickly after you've cycled the power to it.

 Find the DNS Server Settings. Look for "DNS" next to a field which allows two or three sets of numbers (these fields may be empty).

DNS AND ADVANCED SETTINGS				
Use these DNS Servers : Primary DNS Server : Secondary DNS Server : Advanced >>				

 Select the check box Use these DNS Servers, type the Comodo Secure DNS Server settings as your DNS server settings and click 'Save'/'Apply'.

Primary DNS server address for Comodo Secure DNS is: 8.26.56.26

Secondary DNS server address for Comodo Secure DNS is: 8.20.247.20

When you are done, the above example would look like this.

DNS AND ADVANCED SETTINGS				
Use these DNS Servers :	\checkmark			
Primary DNS Server :	8.26.56.26			
Secondary DNS Server :	8.20.247.20			
Advanced >>				

Disable Comodo DNS

You can disable Comodo Secure DNS by:

Deselecting the check box 'Use these DNS servers' address automatically'. This means that you use the
DNS server provided by your ISP. This is the option that most home users should choose if they wish to
disable the service.



OR

•

Entering different preferred and alternate DNS server IP addresses.

Windows - Enable Comodo Secure DNS

You can manually enable Comodo Secure DNS by changing your DNS server addresses to:

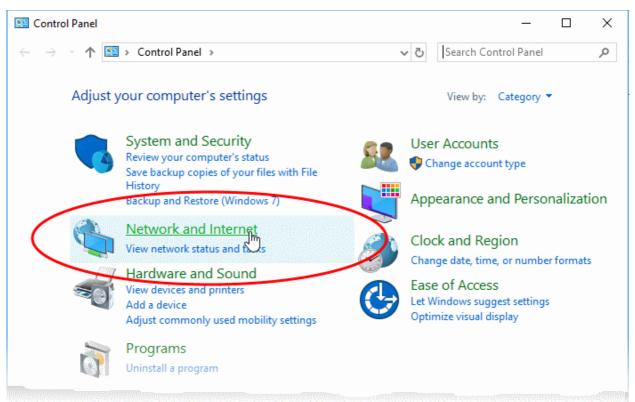
- Preferred DNS : 8.26.56.26
- Alternate DNS : 8.20.247.20

Enable Comodo Secure DNS

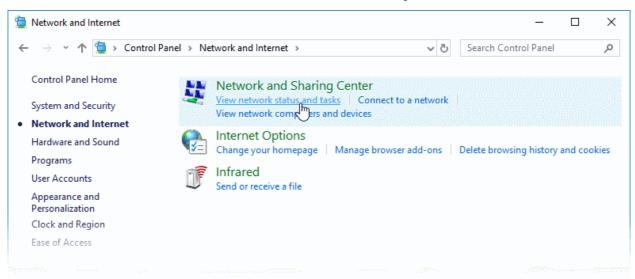
- 1. Click the Windows 'Start' menu
- 2. Type 'control panel' into the search box then click the program name:

		Filters \checkmark			
ŵ	Best match				
0	Control Panel Desktop app				
	Recent				
	Programs and Features				
	Settings				
	🖳 System				
	💷 Taskbar notification area				
	Search the web				
		>			
ŝ					
2					
				<u>_</u>	
	♀ control panel		e		

3. Select 'Network and Internet' from the control panel menu:



4. Select 'View network status and tasks' under Network and Sharing Center' as shown below:



The list of networks to which you are currently connected is shown.

5. Click the network type link in the network through which you are connected to internet:

👫 Network and Sharing Center				_		×
← → × ↑ 🚆 « Netwo	rk and Internet → Network and S	iharing Center	√ Ö St	earch Control Panel		Q
Control Panel Home	View your basic net	work information	and set up conr	nections		
Change adapter settings	View your active network	5				
Change advanced sharing settings	Private network		Access type: Connections:	Internet Ethernet		
	Unidentified networ Public network	k	Access type: Connections:	No network acce Ethernet 2	55	
	Ethernet Status		×	7		
			^			
	General					
	Connection IPv4 Connectivity:		Internet			
	IPv6 Connectivity:	No net	twork access			
	Media State:		Enabled			
	Duration:		02:49:00			
	Speed:		1.0 Gbps			
	Details					
	Activity					
	Sent	· — 💵 —	Received			
	Bytes: 2,3	42,175	85,557,584			
	Properties Dis	sable Diagnose				
			Close			

This opens the 'Status' dialog for the selected connection.

- 6. Click 'Properties' in the status dialog
 - At this point, Windows might ask for your permission to continue or request that you enter an administrator password.
 - Once you have granted permission/entered an admin password, the 'Connection Properties' dialog appears:



Ethernet Properties	×
Networking Sharing	
Connect using:	
Intel(R) PRO/1000 MT Desktop Adapter	
Configure. This connection uses the following items:	
 Client for Microsoft Networks File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks COMODO Internet Security Firewall Driver COS Packet Scheduler Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Microsoft Network Adapter Multiplexor Protocol Microsoft LLDP Protocol Driver 	~
Install Uninstall Properties Description Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. The default wide area network protocol that provides communication across diverse interconnected networks.	\supset
OK Car	ncel

- 7. Scroll down the list and select 'Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IP)' then click the 'Properties' button as shown above.
- 8. Enable 'Use the following DNS server addresses'.
- 9. Enter the addresses listed below:

Preferred DNS: 8.26.56.26

Alternate DNS : 8.20.247.20



Internet P	Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties					×
General	Alternate Configuration					
You can get IP settings assigned automatically if your network supports this capability. Otherwise, you need to ask your network administrator for the appropriate IP settings.						
⊙ Ob	tain an IP address automaticall	у				
Use	e the following IP address:					
IP add	dress:					
Subne	et mask:					
Defau	ılt gateway:					
Oob	tain DNS server address autom	atically				٦
- O Use	e the following DNS server add	resses:				Ш
Prefe	rred DNS server:	8	. 26 .	56 . 26	5	L
Altern	nate DNS server:	8	. 20 .	247.20	D	J
Va	lidate settings upon exit			Adv	vanced	
		[OK	(Cancel	

- 10. Click 'OK' to save your settings
- 11. Click 'OK' in the connection properties dialog to activate your settings
- Your computer will now use Comodo DNS as it's default domain name resolution service for all applications that connect to the internet.

Disable Comodo DNS

You can revert to the DNS servers provided by your ISP at anytime by instructing Windows to automatically obtain the address of a DNS servers.

- Follow steps 1 to 7 of the 'Enable Comodo DNS' tutorial to open the IP4 properties dialog
- Enable 'Obtain DNS server address automatically' then click 'OK'.



Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties				
General	Alternate Configuration			
this cap		comatically if your network supp to ask your network administra		
Ot	otain an IP address automatic	ally		
OUs	e the following IP address:			
IP ac	ldress:	a a a		
Subr	iet mask:	· · ·		
Defa	ult gateway:			
	otain DNS server address aut	omatically		
	e the following DNS server a			
Prefe	erred DNS server:	· · · ·		
Alter	nate DNS server:	. × ×		
v	alidate settings upon exit	Advance	d	
		ОК С	ancel	

Note: Alternatively, you can enter the server addresses of a different DNS service before clicking 'OK'